







As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols   or   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 or  is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

 **Safety Labels** P. 97

## A Few Words About Safety


---


Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.


To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.


Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER** You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING** You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING** You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION** You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

## **Event Data Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

## **Service Diagnostic Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.



This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models.

#### ➤ **Safe Driving P. 43**

For Safe Driving P. 44      Seat Belts P. 49      Airbags P. 61

#### ➤ **Instrument Panel P. 99**

Indicators P. 100      Gauges and Displays P. 144

#### ➤ **Controls P. 179**

Clock P. 180      Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 182  
Panoramic Roof\* P. 215  
Seats P. 247      Interior Convenience Items P. 258

#### ➤ **Features P. 287**

Audio System P. 288      Audio System Basic Operation P. 295, 321  
Customized Features P. 390, 398

#### ➤ **Driving P. 485**

Before Driving P. 486      Towing a Trailer P. 490      Off-road Guidelines P. 496  
Multi-View Rear Camera\* P. 616      Refueling P. 618

#### ➤ **Maintenance P. 621**

Before Performing Maintenance P. 622      Service Reminder System\* P. 626  
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 660  
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 678      Cleaning P. 681

#### ➤ **Handling the Unexpected P. 689**

Tools P. 690      If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 691  
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 712      Fuses P. 719

#### ➤ **Information P. 729**

Specifications P. 730      Identification Numbers P. 733

# Contents

Child Safety P. 75

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 96

Safety Labels P. 97

Tailgate P. 195

Security System P. 206

Windows P. 212

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 219

Mirrors P. 243

Climate Control System P. 279

Audio Error Messages P. 383

General Information on the Audio System P. 385

Hands-Free Telephone System P. 426, 447

Emergency Call (eCall)\* P. 479

When Driving P. 498

Honda Sensing P. 539

Braking P. 595

Parking Your Vehicle P. 604

Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions P. 620

Maintenance Schedule\* P. 631

Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 639

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 655

Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 665

12-Volt Battery P. 670

Remote Transmitter Care P. 676

Accessories and Modifications P. 686

Power System Won't Start P. 703

If the Battery Is Dead P. 706

Overheating P. 709

Emergency Towing P. 726

If You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 727

Devices that Emit Radio Waves P. 734

Declaration of Conformity Content Outline\* P. 766

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Safe Driving P. 43

Instrument Panel P. 99

Controls P. 179

Features P. 287

Driving P. 485

Maintenance P. 621

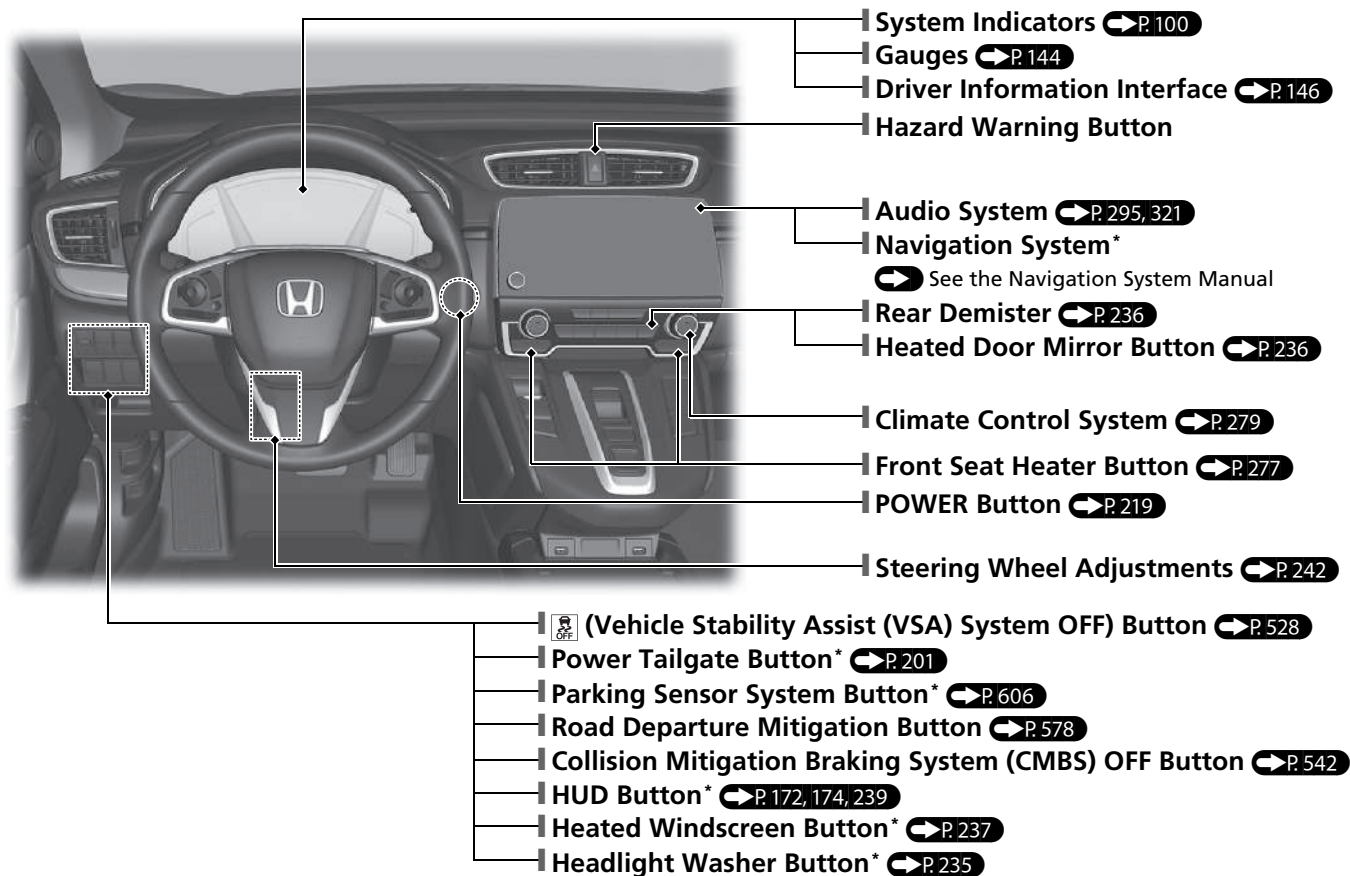
Handling the Unexpected P. 689

Information P. 729

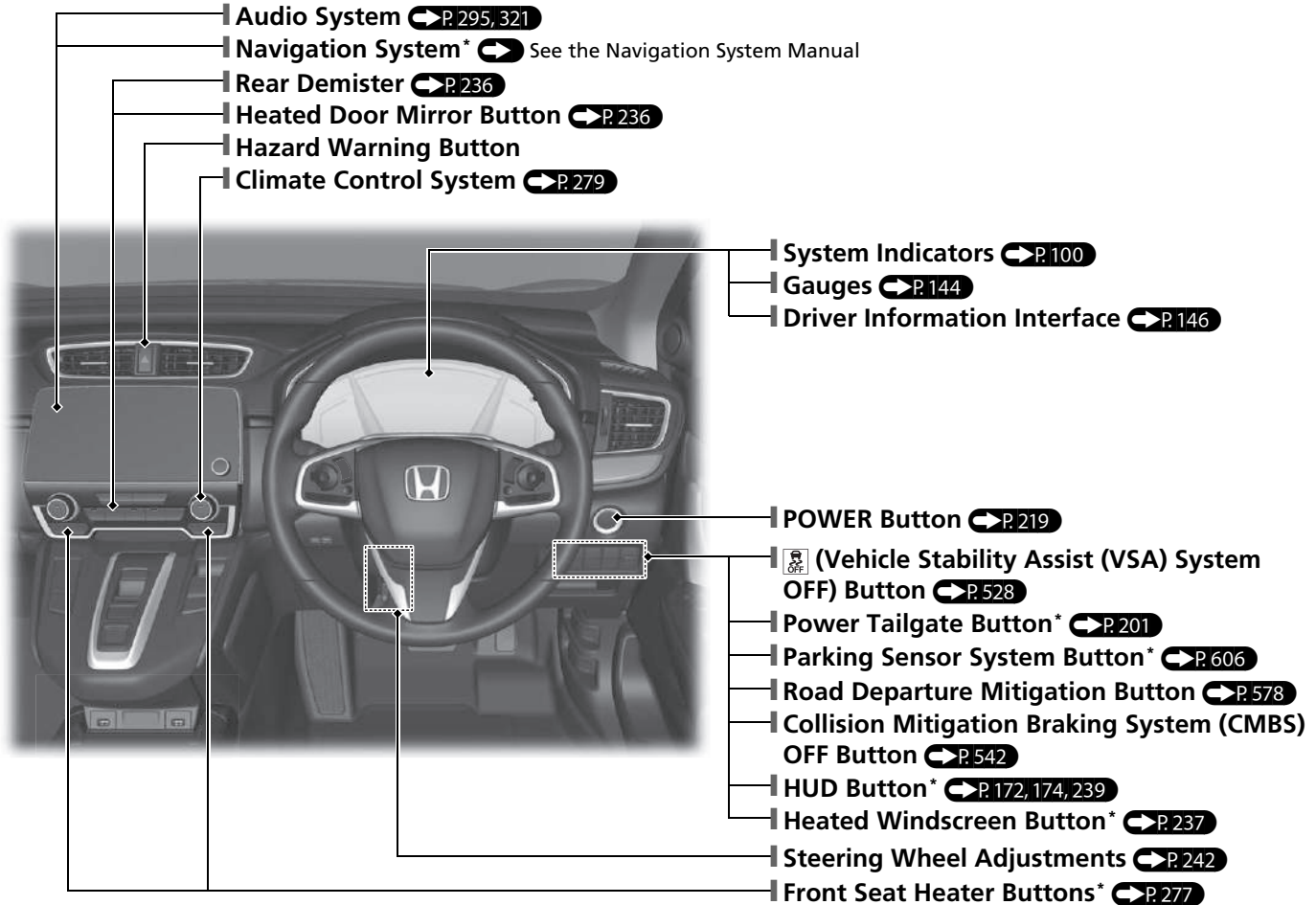
Index P. 771

# Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type

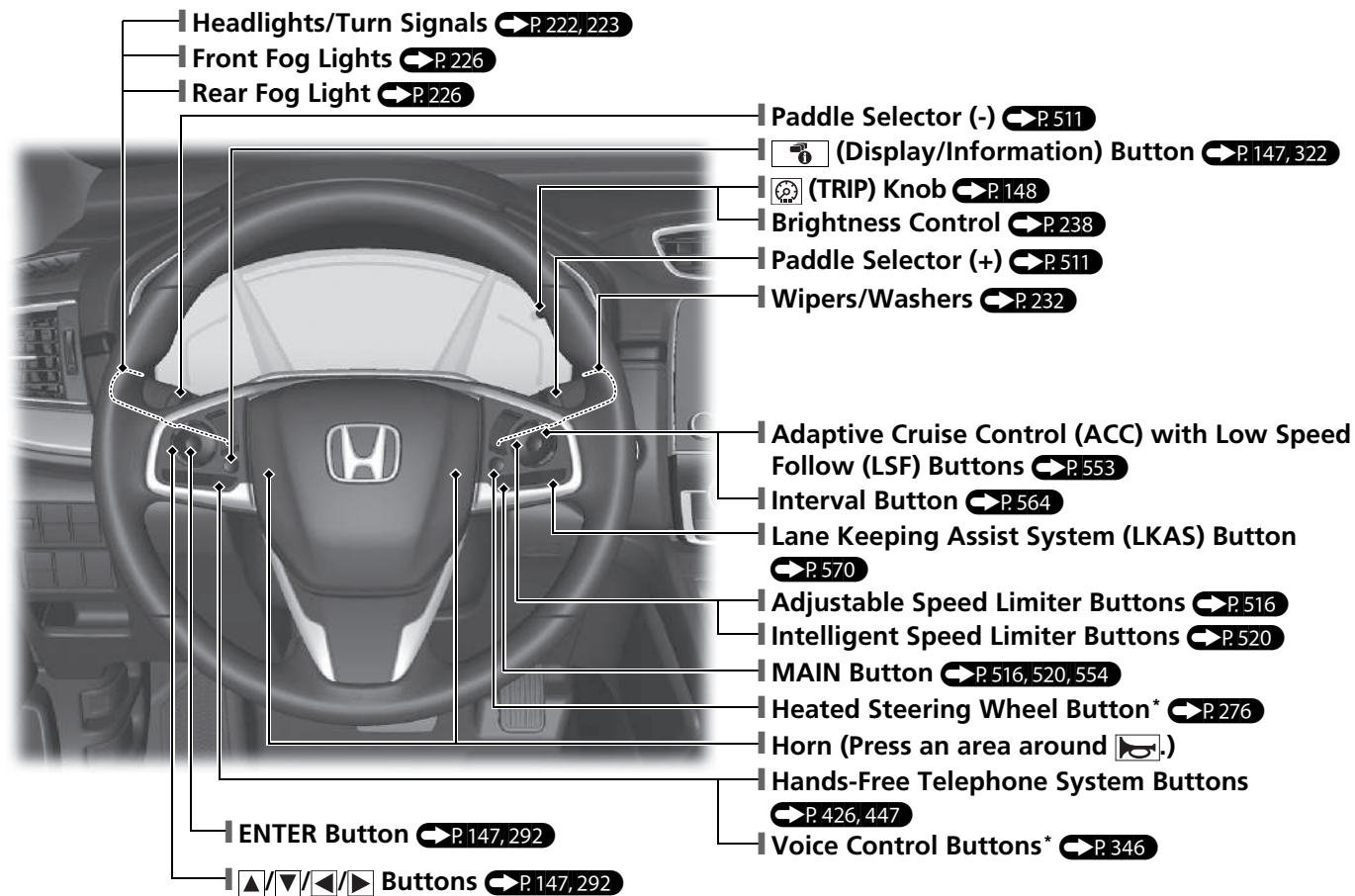


Right-hand Drive Type

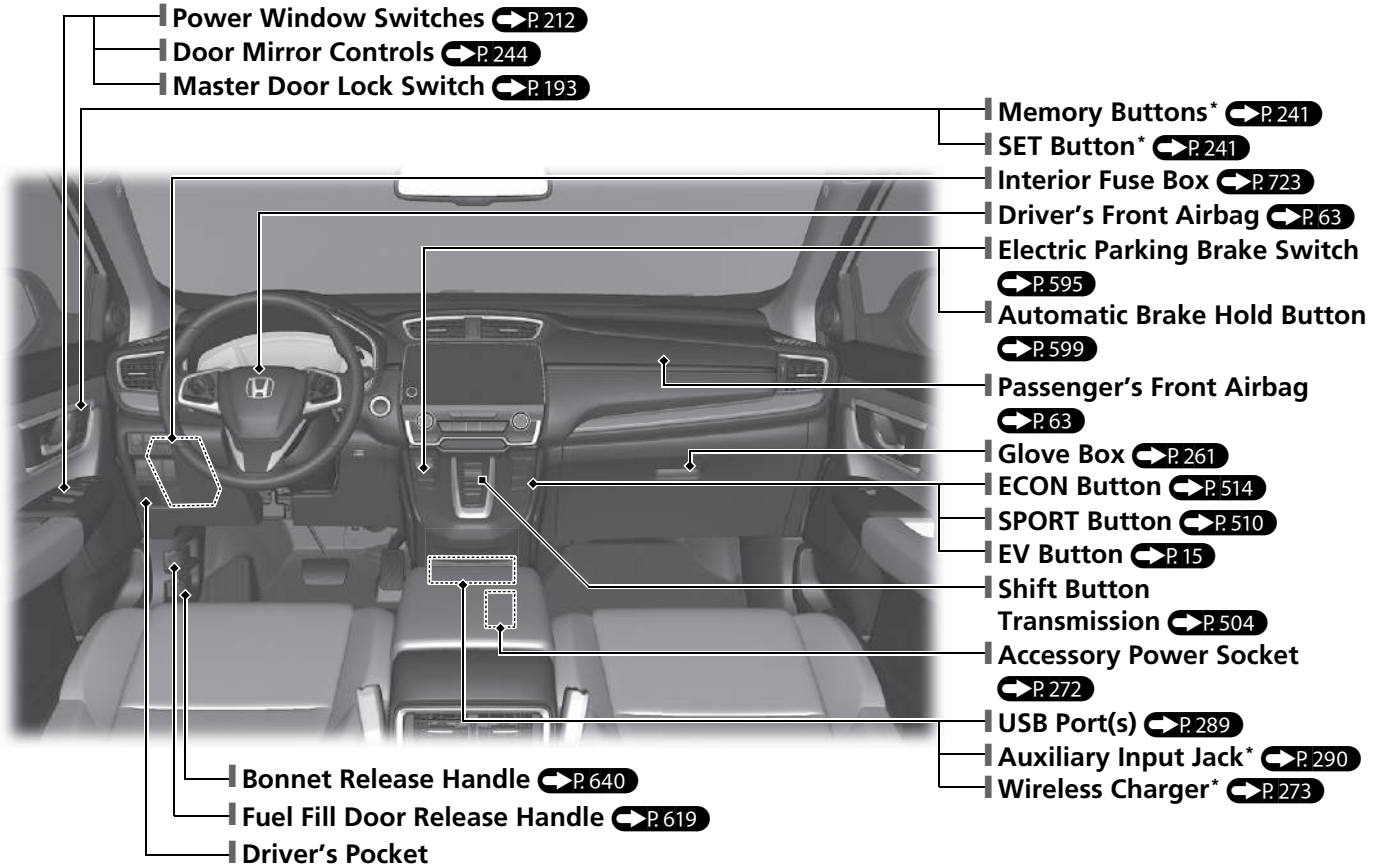


\* Not available on all models

# Visual Index



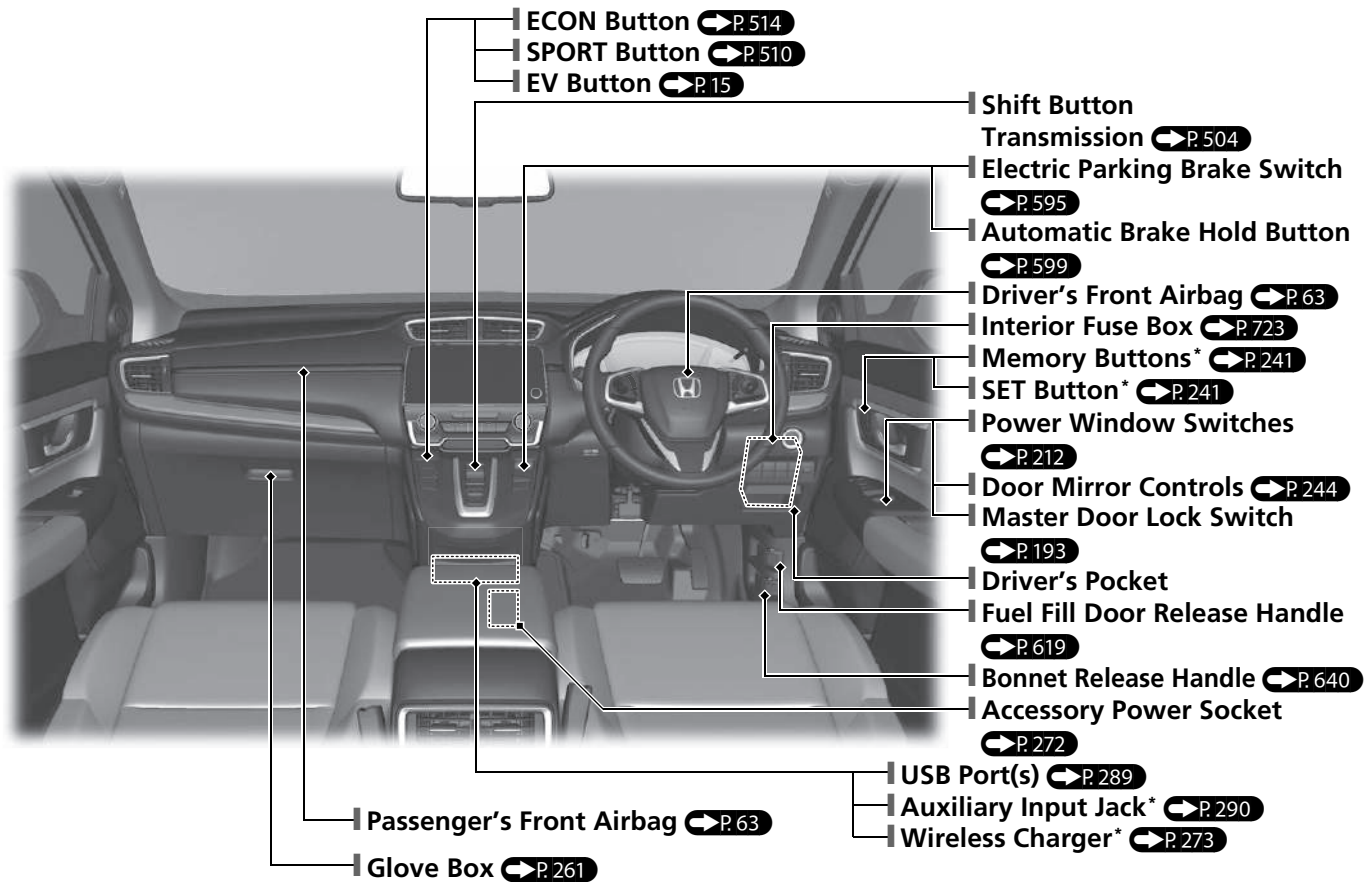
## Left-hand Drive Type

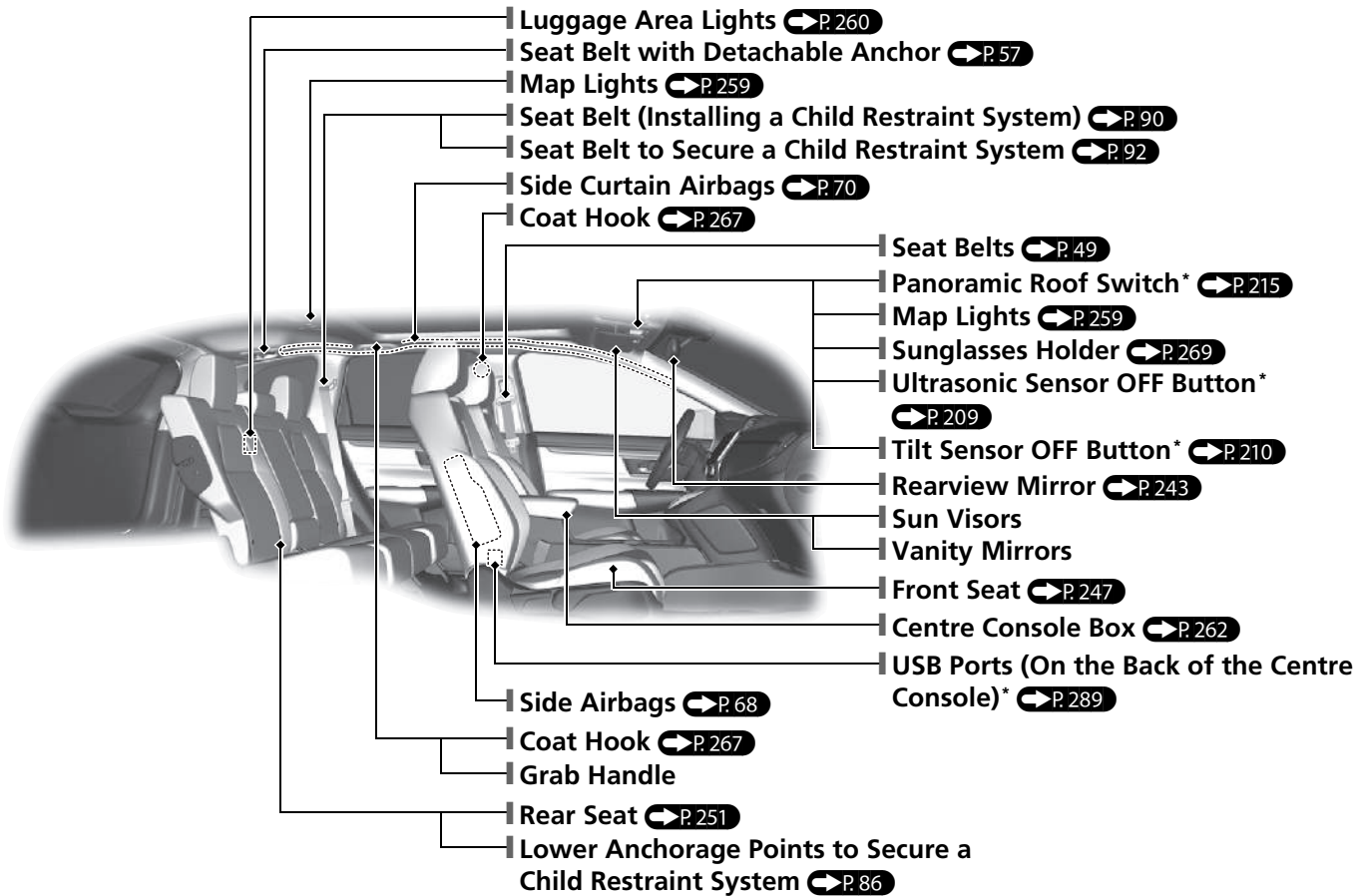


\* Not available on all models

# Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type

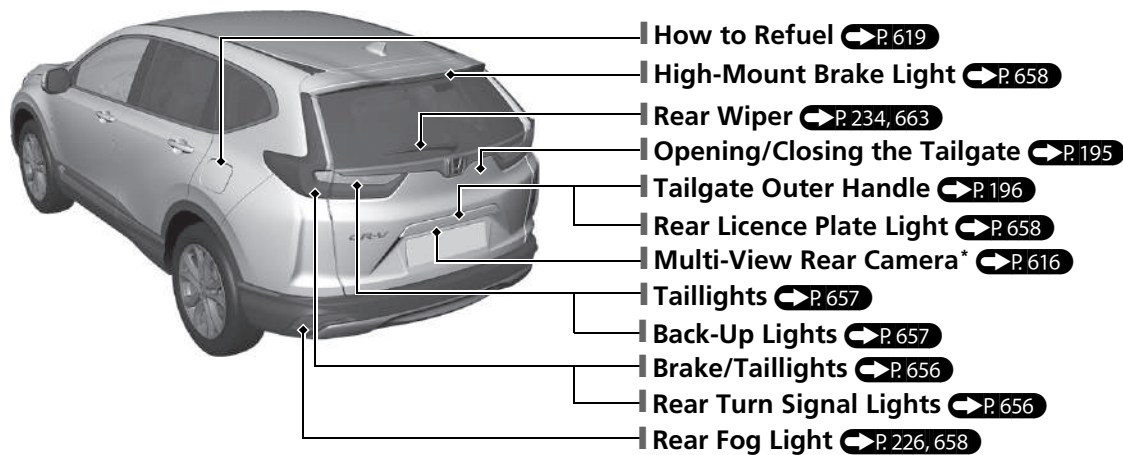
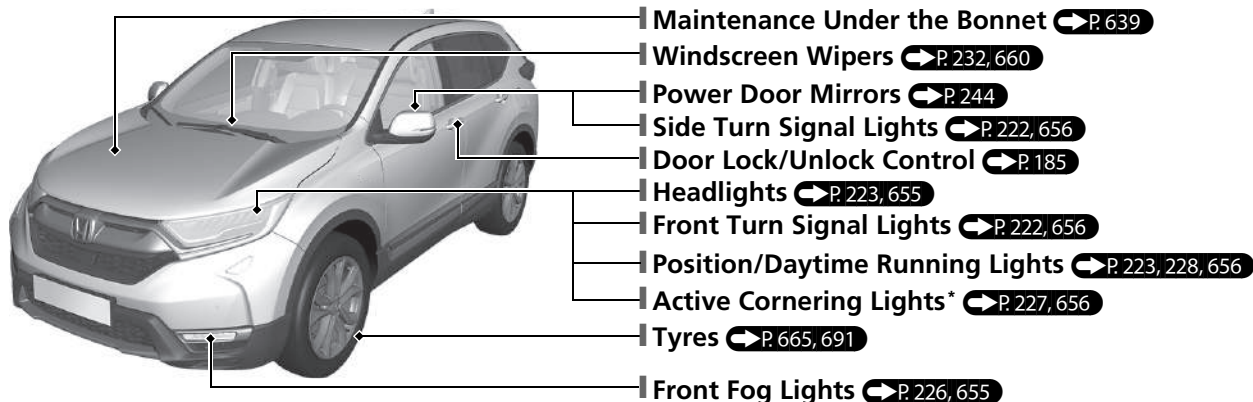




\* Not available on all models



# Visual Index



# e:HEV

Your e:HEV vehicle uses both an electric motor and a petrol engine as propulsion sources, with the electric motor receiving electricity from an internal High Voltage battery or internal generator. The High Voltage battery can be charged from the generator driven by the engine or regenerative braking.

When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the petrol engine, or by a combination of the two. The system selects which propulsion source is most appropriate and automatically switches to it. Under certain circumstances, pressing the **EV** button can manually enable EV (driven only on electricity) mode.

- **Energy efficiency**

As with a petrol-powered vehicle, hybrid vehicle fuel efficiency and driving range is most impacted by your driving style. Aggressive acceleration and high-speed driving can easily trigger the system to switch the propulsion source to the petrol-powered engine. In addition, heavy climate control system use negatively affects vehicle range and efficiency. Either of these use patterns will more quickly reduce the High Voltage battery's state of charge.

- **Battery types**

There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle; a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems; and a High Voltage battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

## e:HEV MAIN COMPONENTS

**Petrol Engine**– Provides propulsion to drive the wheels under certain driving conditions, and turns the generator.

**Generator**– Starts the engine and generates electric power when driven by the petrol engine to supply electricity to power the electric motor and/or to charge the High Voltage battery.

**Electric Motor**– Provides propulsion to drive the wheels in conjunction with the petrol engine in certain conditions, and provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.

**High Voltage Battery**– Provides electrical storage and serves as a power source for the electric motor. Learning about the High Voltage battery's characteristics will help you get the best handling and maximize the range of your electric vehicle. ➔ P.537

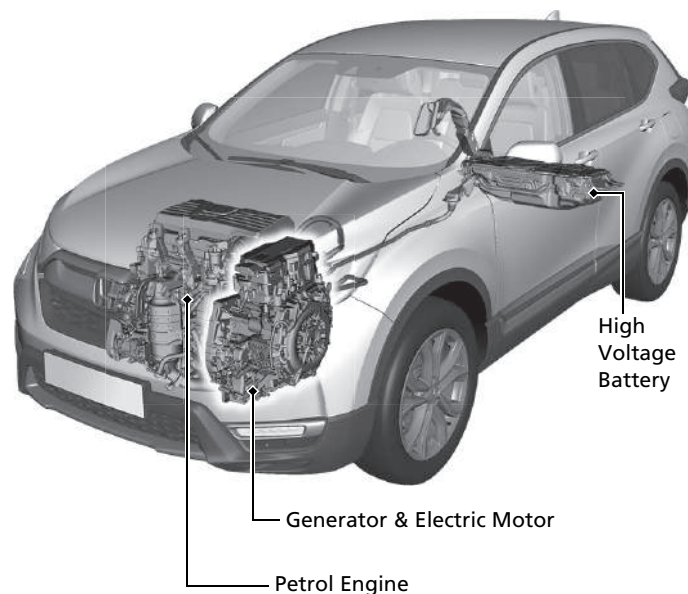
**High Voltage Battery Charge Level Indicator**– Displays battery state of charge.

When the indicator:

- Displays two or less segments, EV mode is no longer available.
- Displays ten segments, battery charge level is full.

### Do not cover the air intake

If the air intake is obstructed during vehicle operation, the High Voltage battery can become too hot. To protect the battery, the system may start to limit the battery's output and cause the power system and 12-volt battery charging system indicators to come on.



2WD models


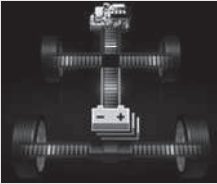
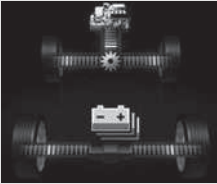
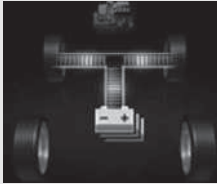


Operating mode	Electric Vehicle (EV)	Hybrid (HV)	Engine (Direct Drive)	Regeneration
Driving state	Stopped or driven at low speeds: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Only the electric motor provides propulsion to the wheels.</li> </ul>	Driven in high-load conditions (e.g., when accelerating, going uphill): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Electric Motor provides propulsion to the wheels.</li> <li>• The petrol engine drives the generator, supplying electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion or to the High Voltage battery for charging.</li> </ul>	Driven in high-speed, low-load conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The petrol engine provides propulsion to the wheels.</li> <li>• The High Voltage battery supplies electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion.</li> <li>• The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.</li> </ul>	The accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is decelerating. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.</li> </ul>
Power Flow Monitor				
Electric motor	Stopped/Running	Running	Generating/Running	Regenerating
Generator	Stopped	Generating	No Output	Stopped/No Output
Engine	Stopped	Running	Running	Stopped/No Output
High Voltage battery	Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging

AWD models

Vehicle  
Speed

Time

Operating mode	Electric Vehicle (EV)	Hybrid (HV)	Engine (Direct Drive)	Regeneration
Driving state	Stopped or driven at low speeds: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only the electric motor provides propulsion to the wheels.</li> </ul>	Driven in high-load conditions (e.g., when accelerating, going uphill): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Electric Motor provides propulsion to the wheels.</li> <li>The petrol engine drives the generator, supplying electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion or to the High Voltage battery for charging.</li> </ul>	Driven in high-speed, low-load conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The petrol engine provides propulsion to the wheels.</li> <li>The High Voltage battery supplies electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion.</li> <li>The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.</li> </ul>	The accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is decelerating. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.</li> </ul>
Power Flow Monitor				
Electric motor	Stopped/Running	Running	Generating/Running	Regenerating
Generator	Stopped	Generating	No Output	Stopped/No Output
Engine	Stopped	Running	Running	Stopped/No Output
High Voltage battery	Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging

## EV Button

EV mode is enabled by pressing the **EV** button near the shift button.

The **EV** mode indicator comes on in the instrument panel when EV mode is enabled.

Press the **EV** button again to switch back to HV mode.

Some conditions, such as a low High Voltage battery level and a high vehicle speed, may keep the system from manually switching into EV mode. The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface with the button pressed when EV mode is disabled.

Shifts in vehicle, driving or road conditions may automatically cancel EV mode and switch back to HV mode.

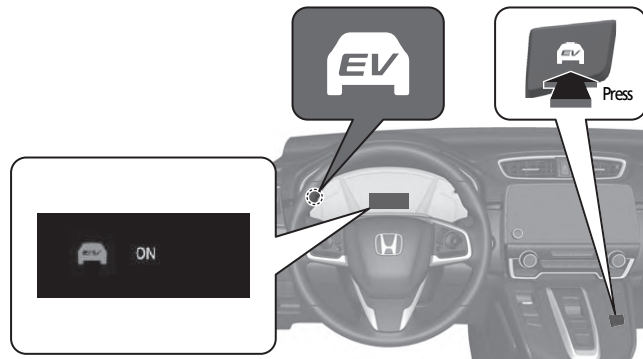
A message will appear on the driver information interface and EV mode may be cancelled automatically when:

- The High Voltage battery charge level is low.
- Your vehicle speed is too high.
- Your vehicle speed is above 40 km/h (25 mph) while the engine is in warming-up operation.
- You fully depress the accelerator pedal.
- You are driving on hilly road.

➤ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** ➔ P. 123

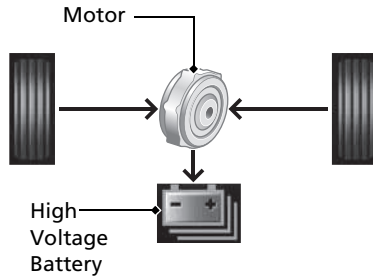
In EV mode, the acoustic vehicle alerting system is on.

➤ **Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System** ➔ P. 515



### ● Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking

When regenerative braking is in operation



When decelerating without the accelerator being depressed or the brake pedal being applied, or while driving downhill, the electric motor acts as a generator that recovers a portion of the electrical energy that was used to accelerate the vehicle. This regenerative braking slows the vehicle in a manner similar to engine braking in a petrol-powered vehicle. You can control the rate of deceleration by using the deceleration paddle selector.

### ● Auto Engine Stop/Start

Your vehicle's petrol engine automatically stops running during vehicle operation or restarts while the vehicle is stationary when it is appropriate.

In the following cases, however, auto engine stop may not activate.

- The vehicle momentarily needs additional power for aggressive acceleration, or driving uphill or at high speed.
- The climate control system is in heavy use.
- The High Voltage battery temperature is high or low.

### ● Sounds Unique to the e:HEV

When you first start driving this vehicle, you will likely hear some unfamiliar sounds, particularly when you turn on the power system, or while you are driving or accelerating from a stop, or when the air is flowing through the High Voltage battery cooling air intake while the High Voltage battery cooling system is activated. Some of these sounds are unique to the powertrain as well as to the fuel, climate control, and High Voltage battery cooling systems; others are similar to sounds generated by conventional automobiles that typically are masked by louder noises absent from a vehicle of this design. These sounds are not a cause for concern, and you will soon recognise them as normal and thus be able to detect any new or unusual noise should one develop.

# Safety Precautions



## Do not touch the High Voltage system

Attempting to take a High Voltage system component apart or disconnect one of its wires can cause severe electrical shock. Make sure that any maintenance or repairs to the High Voltage system is performed by a Honda dealer.

## If a crash occurs

- Be careful of electric shock hazard.
  - ▶ If a severe crash damages your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.
- Avoid contact with High Voltage battery fluid.
  - ▶ The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally come into contact with the electrolyte, rinse the exposed skin or flush your eyes with copious amounts of water for at least five minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.
- Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.
  - ▶ Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with even a small quantity of water, from a garden hose for instance, can be dangerous.
- Anytime the vehicle is damaged in a crash, have it repaired by a dealer.

## Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System

If the vehicle is involved in a crash, the emergency shutdown system will activate depending on the severity of the impact. When the system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and the vehicle can no longer move under its own power. To return the High Voltage system back to normal operation, consult a dealer.

## When the vehicle is disposed

- The High Voltage battery is a Lithium ion battery. Honda collects and recycles used High Voltage batteries – consult with your dealer for proper battery disposal in the event your vehicle is not repairable.



# Eco Assist System P. 514

## Ambient Meter

- With SPORT mode off, the colour of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner.

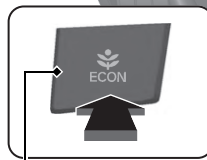


## ECON Mode Indicator P. 113

Comes on when the ECON button is pressed.



The message is displayed for a few seconds when the ECON button is pressed.



## ECON Button P. 514

Helps to maximise fuel economy.

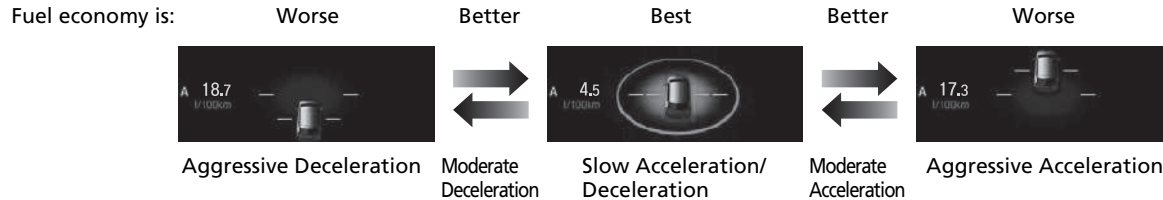
## Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

- Comes on when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.



## Eco Drive Display [P. 152](#)

- Keep the vehicle icon near the centre of the circle.



# Safe Driving P. 43

## Airbags P. 61

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

## Child Safety P. 75

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

## Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 96

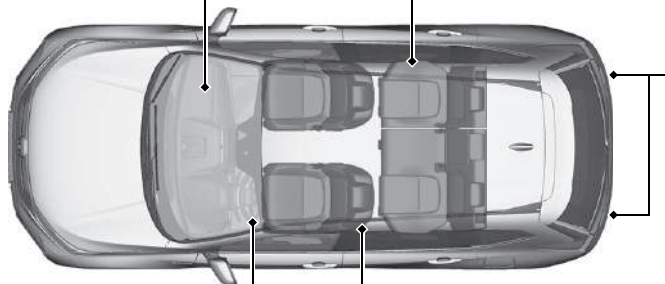
- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

## Seat Belts P. 49

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

## Before Driving Checklist P. 48

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.


















Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.



# Instrument Panel P.99

Indicators  P.100 / Driver Information Interface  P.146 / Gauges  P.144 / Head-Up Display\*  P.172

## System Indicators

-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator
-  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator
-  Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator
-  Automatic Brake Hold Indicator
-  ECON Mode Indicator
- SPORT**  SPORT Mode Indicator
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)
-  System Message Indicator
-  Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator
-  Blind spot information System Indicator\*



## Right-hand Drive Type

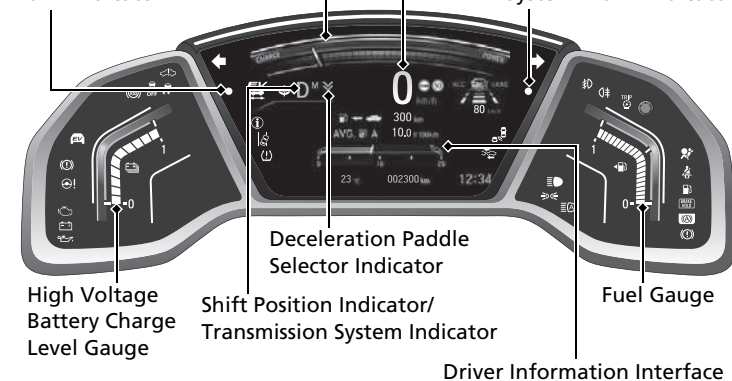
-  Immobilizer System Alarm Indicator
-  Security System Alarm Indicator

## POWER/CHARGE Gauge






## Speedometer

## Left-hand Drive Type





-  Immobilizer System Alarm Indicator
-  Security System Alarm Indicator













## System Indicators

-  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
-  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
-  Low Fuel Indicator
-  Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
-  Supplemental Restraint System Indicator

## Lights Indicators

-  Lights On Indicator
-  High Beam Indicator
-  Front Fog Light Indicator
-  Rear Fog Light Indicator

## System Indicators

-  **LIM** Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator
-   Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator
-   Auto High-Beam Indicator
- ACC** Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Amber/Green)
- LKAS** Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber/Green)
-  Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator
-  Road Departure Mitigation Indicator
-  Ready Indicator
-  Power System Indicator
- EV** EV Indicator
-  **EV** EV Mode Indicator

\* Not available on all models

# Controls P.179






## Clock P.180

### Models with navigation system



The audio system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.

### Models with colour audio system





- 1 Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- 2 Rotate  to change hour, then press .
- 3 Rotate  to change minute, then press .
- 4 Select **SET**, then press .

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

- Rotate  to select.
- Press  to enter.

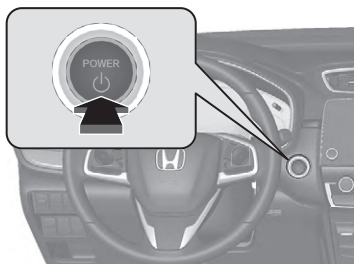
### Models with Display Audio



- 1 Select the  (Home) icon, then select **Settings**.
- 2 Select **Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
- 3 Touch the respective  icon to adjust the hours or minutes up or down.
- 4 Select **OK**.

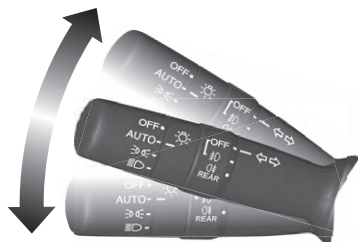
## POWER Button P.219

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



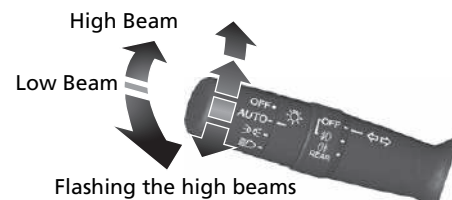
## Turn Signals P.222

Turn Signal Control Lever



## Lights P.223

Light Control Switches



## Wipers and Washers

➔ P.232

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

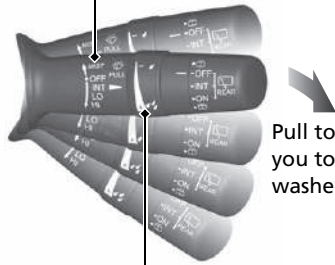
**MIST**  
**OFF**

**AUTO**\*1: Wiper speed varies automatically

**INT**\*2: Low speed with intermittent

**LO**: Low speed wipe

**HI**: High speed wipe



Pull toward you to spray washer fluid.

Adjustment Ring

☐: Low Sensitivity\*1

☐☂: Lower speed, fewer sweeps\*2

☐+: High Sensitivity\*1

☐☂+: Higher speed, more sweeps\*2

\*1: Models with automatic intermittent wipers

\*2: Models without automatic intermittent wipers

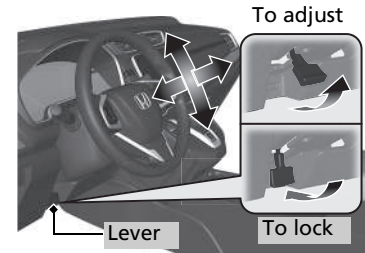
Models with automatic intermittent wipers

**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

## Steering Wheel ➔ P.242

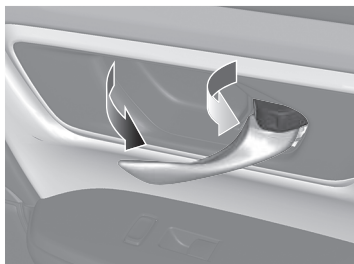
- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



## Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

➔ P.192

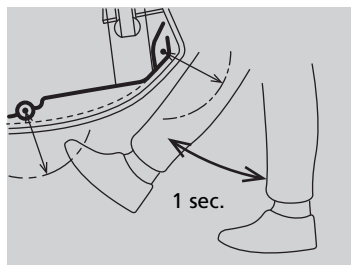
- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



## Tailgate ➔ P.195

Models with power tailgate

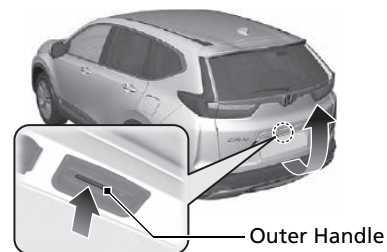
Use a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the keyless remote.



- Press the outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you have the keyless remote on you.

Models with power tailgate

- Press the power tailgate button on the driver's side control panel, or press the remote transmitter.

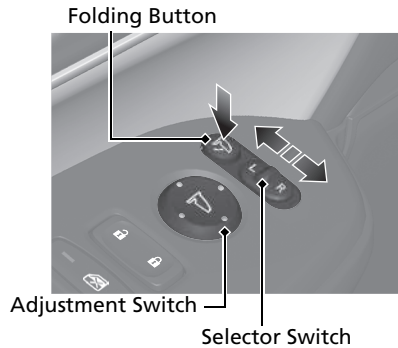




## Power Door Mirrors

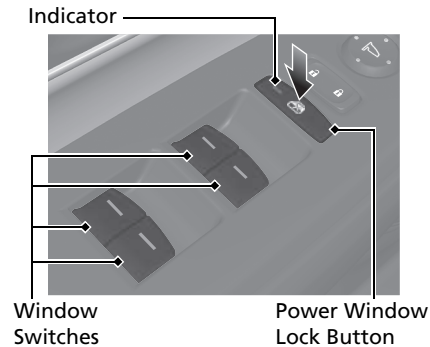
➔ P.244

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.





## Power Windows ➔ P.212

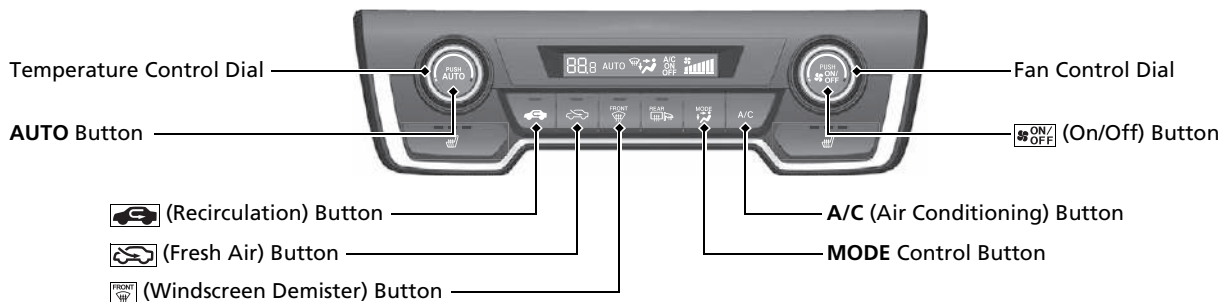
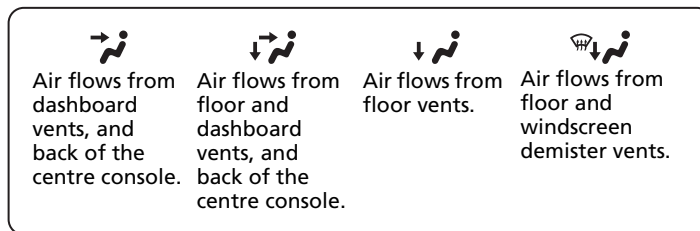
- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



# Climate Control System P.279

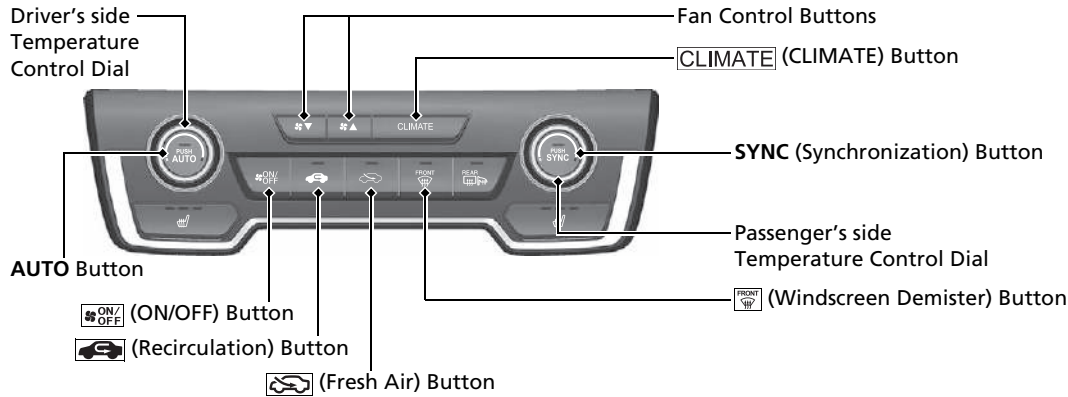
- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the  button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the  button to defrost the windscreen.

Models with colour audio system





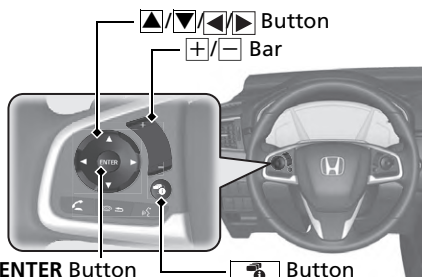
Air flows from dashboard vents, and back of the centre console.	Air flows from floor and dashboard vents, and back of the centre console.	Air flows from floor vents.	Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.



# Features ➔ P.287

## Audio Remote Controls

➔ P.292



- **+/− Bar**  
Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- **▲/▼ Button**  
Press **▲** or **▼** to cycle through the audio mode as follows:

### Models with colour audio system

FM1/FM2/DAB1/DAB2/LW/MW/USB or iPod/*Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Audio/AUX

### Models with Display Audio

FM/DAB/LW/MW/USB/iPod/*Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Audio/Apps/Audio Apps

### Models with Display Audio




- **ENTER Button**
  - When listening to a USB flash drive
- 1 Press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
  - 2 Press **▲** or **▼** to select a folder.
  - 3 Press **ENTER** to display a list of tracks in that folder.
  - 4 Press **▲** or **▼** to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to an iPod

- 1 Press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
- 2 Press **▲** or **▼** to select a category.
- 3 Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.
- 4 Press **▲** or **▼** to select an item, then press **ENTER**.
  - ▶ Press **ENTER** and press **▲** or **▼** repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

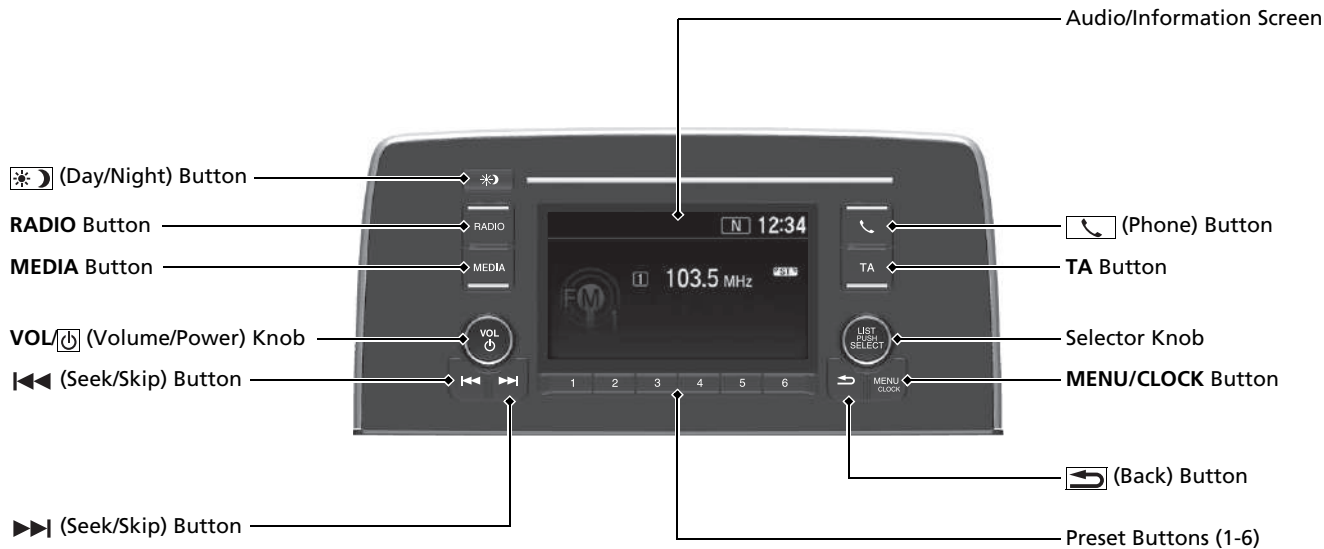
- When listening to *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Audio

- 1 Press **ENTER** to display the track list.
- 2 Press **▲** or **▼** to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

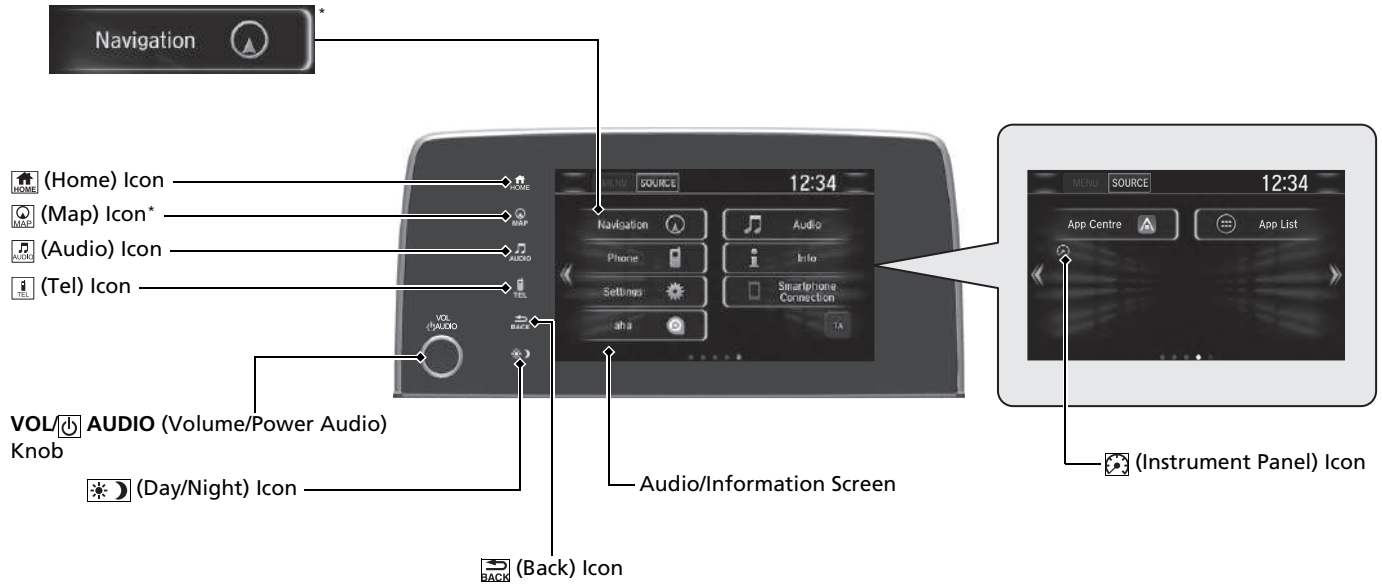
-  Button  
Radio: Press to change the preset station.  
Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.  
USB device:  
Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.  
Press and hold to change a folder.
-  (Display/Information) Button  
Press to change contents.  
➤ **Driver Information Interface**  **P. 146**

# Audio System P.288

Models with colour audio system  P.295



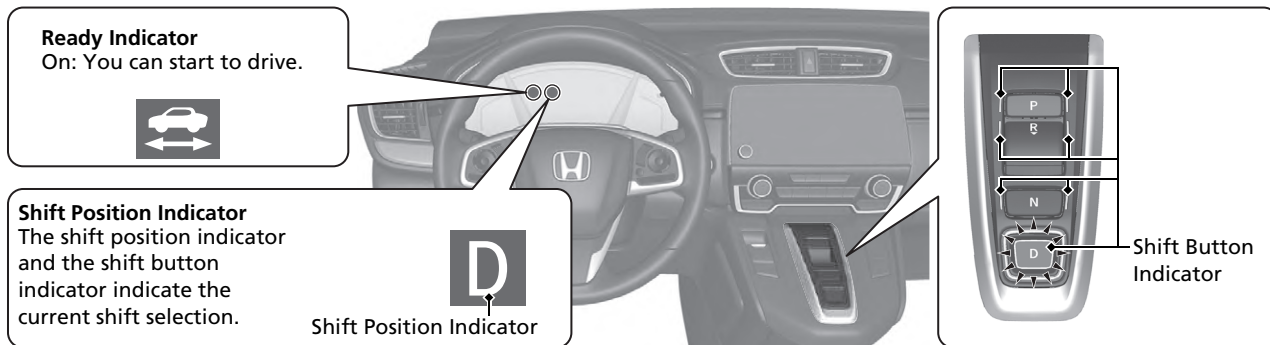
For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



# Driving P.485

## Transmission P.503

- Select **P** and depress the brake pedal when turning on the power.
- Shift selection



**P** **Park**  
Press the **P** button.  
Used when parking or before turning off or starting the power system.  
Transmission is locked.

**R** **Reverse**  
Press back the **R** button.  
Used when reversing.


**N** **Neutral**  
Press the **N** button.  
Transmission is not locked.

**D** **Drive**  
Press the **D** button.  
Used for normal driving.  
The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.  
The deceleration paddle selector can be used when SPORT mode is on.



**Deceleration Paddle Selector** 

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through four stages of deceleration.

Pull the  selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.


- **When SPORT mode is OFF**

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the instrument panel.

- **When SPORT mode is ON**

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the instrument panel.



 Paddle Selector



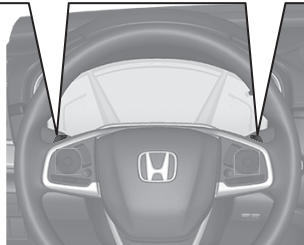
 Paddle Selector

When SPORT mode is OFF, the deceleration stage appears.



Deceleration stage

When SPORT mode is ON, the deceleration stage and **M** appear.



## Adjustable Speed Limiter

➔ P.516

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.

- To use the adjustable speed limiter, press the **MAIN** button. Select the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **LIM** button, then press the **-/SET** when your vehicle reaches the desired speed.
- The vehicle speed limit can be set from 30 km/h (18 mph) to 250 km/h (156 mph).

## VSA On and Off ➔ P.528

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the power system.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## Deflation Warning System ➔ P.531

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The Deflation Warning System is turned on automatically every time you turn on the power system.
- An initialisation procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

## CMBS On and Off ➔ P.546

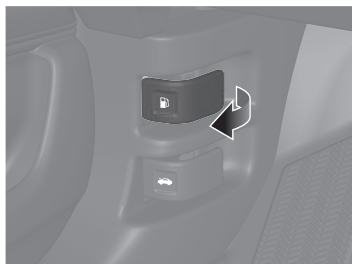
- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the power system.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## Refueling P.618

**Fuel recommendation:** EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel  
Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher

**Fuel tank capacity:** 57 L

- 1 Pull the fuel fill door release handle.



- 2 Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.



- 3 Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.

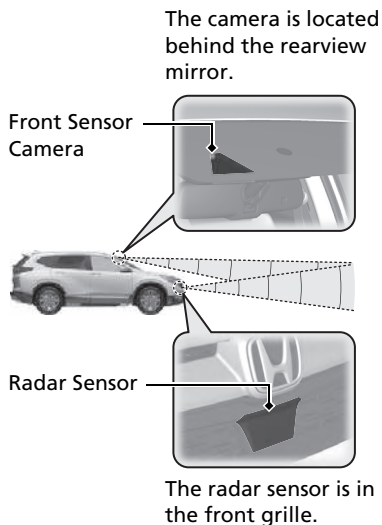
- 4 After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



# Honda Sensing

➔ P. 539

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors, a radar sensor located in the front grille and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.



## Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

➔ P. 542

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of your vehicle. The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimise collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)

➔ P. 553

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

➔ P. 570

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

## Road Departure Mitigation System

➔ P. 578

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

## Traffic Sign Recognition System

➔ P. 584

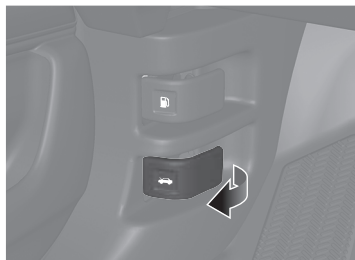
Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit and that overtaking is prohibited, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the driver information interface and the head-up display\*.

# Maintenance P.621

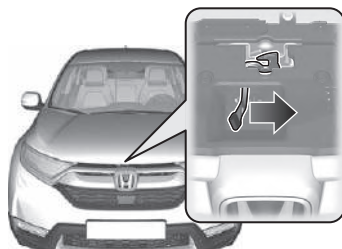
## Under the Bonnet P.639

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, inverter coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the 12-volt battery condition monthly.

- 1 Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.



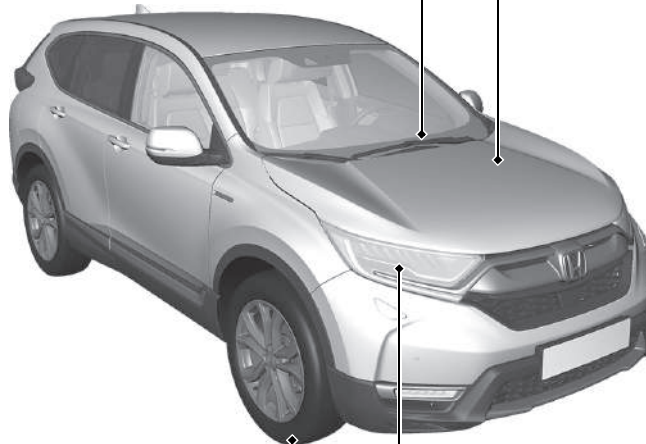
- 2 Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



- 3 When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

## Wiper Blades P.660

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen.



## Tyres P.665

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

## Lights P.655

- Inspect all lights regularly.

# Handling the Unexpected P.689

## Flat Tyre P.691

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the temporary tyre repair kit.



## Power System Won't Start P.703

- If the 12-volt battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



## Overheating P.709

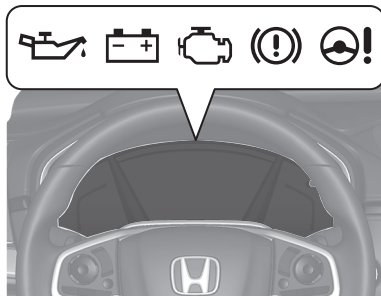
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the power system cool down.



## Indicators Come On

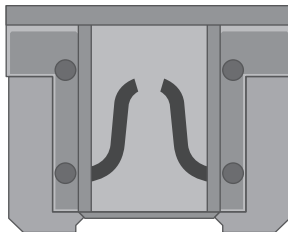
 P.712

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



## Blown Fuse P.719

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



## Emergency Towing P.726

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



# What to Do If

**Q** Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

**A** This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.  
➤ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ➔ P. 601

**Q** The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

**A** Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



**Q** Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

**A** If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.



Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?



The beeper sounds when:

- The exterior lights are left on.
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.



Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?



The beeper sounds when the driver and/or any passengers are not wearing their seat belts.



Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?



Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.



Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?



- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in **P** or **N**. If so, select any other position.



Why does the shift position automatically change to **P** when I open the driver's door to check for parking space lines when reversing?



- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Close the driver's door and manually change the shift position.

➤ When opening the driver's door → **P.507**



---

**Q** Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

**A** The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

---

**Q** I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?

**A** The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to reinitialise the system.  
➤ Deflation Warning System ➔ P. 531

---

**Q** Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or higher on this vehicle?

**A** Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded petrol with a research octane of 95 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher may be used temporarily. The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

---

# Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

## For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions.....	44
Important Handling Information.....	46
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	47
Safety Checklist .....	48

## Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts .....	49
Fastening a Seat Belt .....	55
Seat Belt Inspection.....	59
Anchorage Points.....	60

## Airbags

Airbag System Components.....	61
-------------------------------	----

Types of Airbags .....	63
Front Airbags (SRS) .....	63
Side Airbags.....	68
Side Curtain Airbags .....	70
Airbag System Indicators.....	72
Airbag Care .....	74

## Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers .....	75
Safety of Infants and Small Children...	78
Safety of Larger Children .....	93

## Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas .....	96
---------------------------	----

## Safety Labels

Label Locations .....	97
-----------------------	----

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

## Important Safety Precautions

### ■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

### ■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

### ■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### ■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

### 📞 For Safe Driving

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

**■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

**■ Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

**■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

**■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle**

Children, pets and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

## Important Handling Information

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-road driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a higher centre gravity making it more susceptible to tipping or roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

### ► Important Handling Information

For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read:

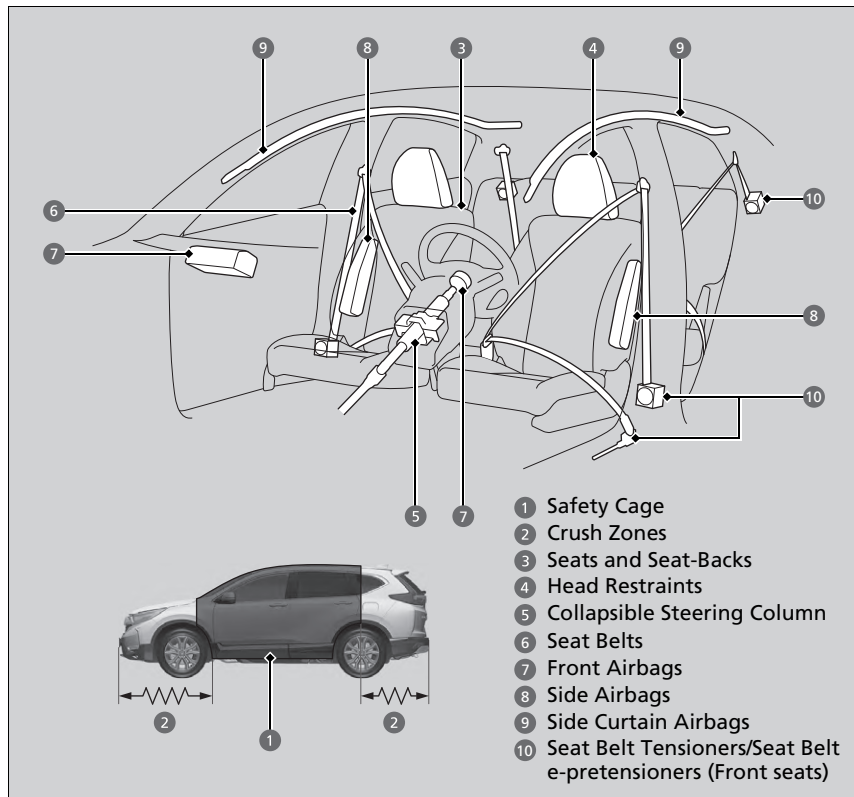
► **Precautions While Driving** P. 501

► **Off-road Guidelines** P. 496

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

In many countries, the law prohibits off-road driving, e. g. driving in forests, trailblazing, etc. Please check your local laws and regulations before commencing any off-road driving activity.

## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

### ▣ Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

## Safety Checklist

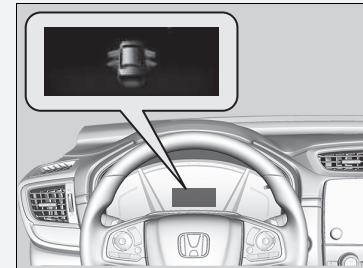
For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  - **Seats** P. 247
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  - **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 254
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  - **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 55
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.
  - **Child Safety** P. 75

### ► Safety Checklist

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.

#### ➤ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 123



## About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

### ⓘ About Your Seat Belts

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.**

**Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.**

**WARNING:** Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

**WARNING:** Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

**WARNING:** Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

**WARNING:** Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.



### ■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

➤ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 90

### ■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

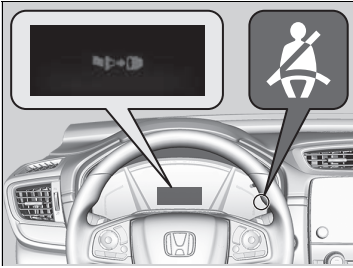
### ➤ About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

## Seat Belt Reminder



### Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

### Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



### ■ Rear seats

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. A driver information interface notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are not used.

The display appears when:

- Any of the rear passengers' seat belts are unfastened when the power mode is set to ON.
- A rear door is opened and then closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fastens or unfastens their seat belt.

The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unlatched while driving.

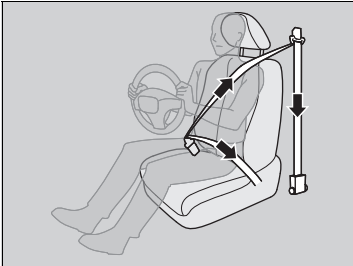
To see the display:

Press the  (display/information) button.

## Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats and the outer rear seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.

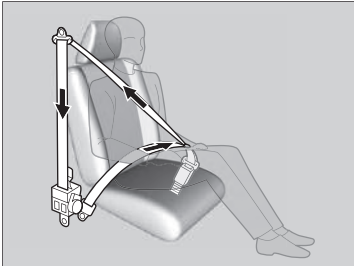


### Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

## ■ Seat Belt e-pretensioners



Are the motor-powered pretensioners that start to retract the front seat belts when the CMBS, brake assist system, or VSA system is in operation. They may also activate when you steer the vehicle hard, or the vehicle is impacted. After retracted, the seat belts are slackened to their original positions. As convenient features, the e-pretensioners slightly retract the seat belts when you latch the seat belt buckle, depress the brake pedal more aggressively than you normally do, or make a sharp turn, and fully retract when you release the seat belt buckle.

## ▣ Seat Belt e-pretensioners

If only the e-pretensioners were activated, no components need to be replaced.

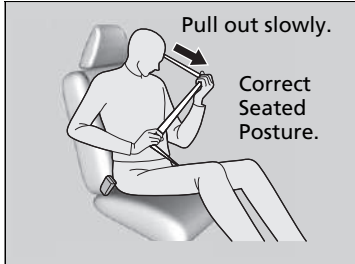
The e-pretensioners may not work if:

- Supplemental Restraint System Indicator is on.
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator is on.
- A warning message for e-pretensioners appears on driver information interface.

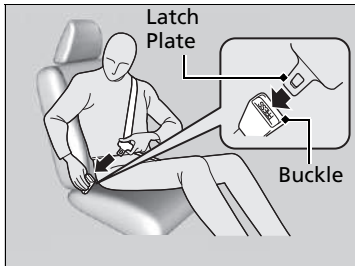
## Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

➤ **Seats** P. 247



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

When you or the front passenger insert the latch plate into the buckle, the front seat belt retracts automatically.

➤ **Seat Belt e-pretensioners** P. 54

### Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.

Then smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

➤ **About Your Seat Belts** P. 49

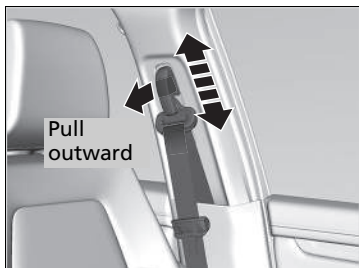
➤ **Seat Belt Inspection** P. 59



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

### ■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while pulling the shoulder anchor outward.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

### ⊗ Fastening a Seat Belt

## ⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

**Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.**

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

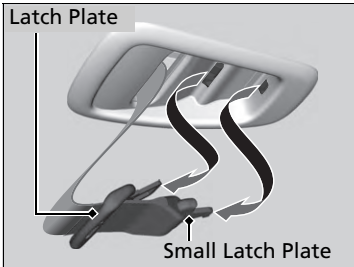
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

### ⊗ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

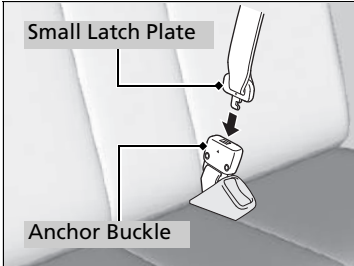
The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

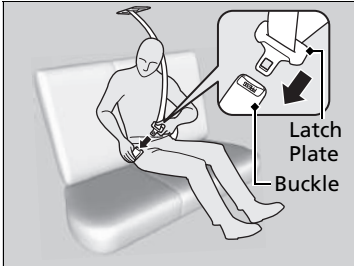
## Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor



1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.



2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchor buckle.



3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

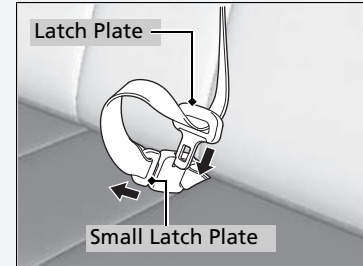
## Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor

**⚠ WARNING**

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.





## ■ Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

## ▣ Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

## Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

### Seat Belt Inspection

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

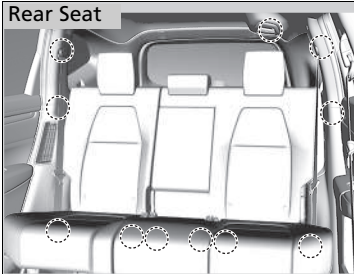
**WARNING:** It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

**WARNING:** Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

## Anchorage Points



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

## Airbag System Components

The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for the front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the vehicle is on, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.
- Automatic seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats.
- The front seat belt tensioners also include the e-pretensioners.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the front passenger's front airbag has been turned off.

## ■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

**Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.**

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

## ▣ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

## Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

### Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

**SRS** (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

#### Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

#### Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

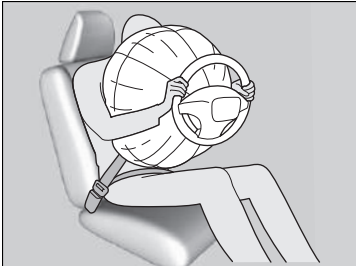
After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

## ■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

## ■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

### ■ When front airbags should not deploy

**Minor frontal crashes:** Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

**Side impacts:** Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

**Rear impacts:** Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

**Rollovers:** Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

### ■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

### ■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

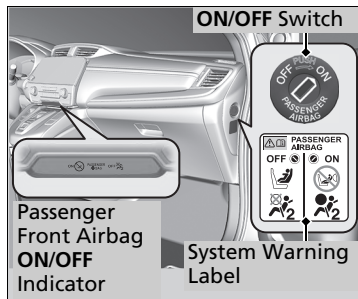
Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.



## ■ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

If it is unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you must manually deactivate the passenger front airbag system, using the key.

### ■ Passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch



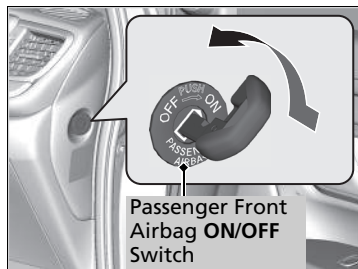
When the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch is in:

**OFF:** The passenger front airbag is deactivated. The passenger front airbag does not inflate during a frontal crash that inflates driver's front airbag.

The passenger front airbag off indicator stays on as a reminder.

**ON:** The passenger front airbag is activated. The passenger front airbag on indicator comes on and remains on for about 60 seconds.

### ■ To deactivate the passenger front airbag system



1. Set the parking brake, and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Open the front passenger's door.
3. Insert the key to the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch.
  - ▶ The switch is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.
4. Turn the key to **OFF**, and remove it from the switch.

### ▶▶ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

## ⚠ WARNING

The passenger front airbag system must be turned off, if it is not avoidable to put a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with enough force to kill or cause a very serious injury to the infant.

## ⚠ WARNING

Make sure to turn on the passenger front airbag system when a rear-facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat.

Leaving the passenger front airbag system deactivated can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

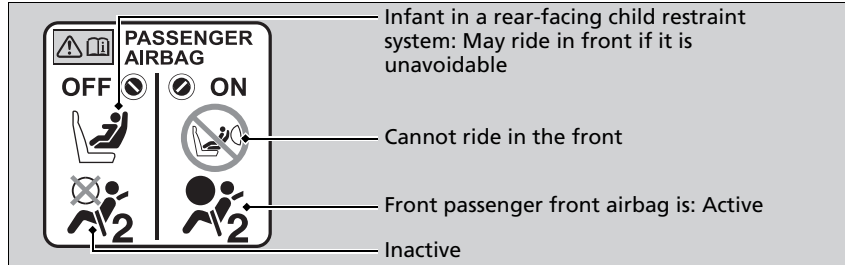
### ■ Passenger front airbag off indicator

When the passenger front airbag system is activated, the indicator goes off after a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON.

When the passenger front airbag system is deactivated, the indicator stays on, or goes off momentarily and comes back on.

### ■ Passenger front airbag off system label

The label is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.



### ▶▶ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

#### NOTICE

- Use your vehicle's key to turn the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. If you use a different key, the switch can be damaged, or the passenger front airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not close the door or apply an excessive load on the key while the key is in the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. The switch or the key can be damaged.

We strongly recommend that you do not install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

#### ▶▶ Protecting Infants P. 78

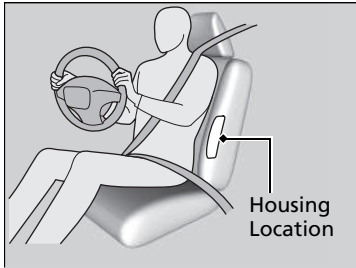
It is your responsibility to change the setting of the passenger front airbag system to **OFF** when you put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, turn the system back on.

## Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

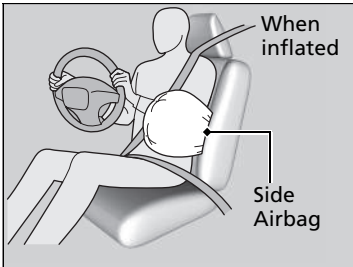
Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

### Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

## ■ Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

### ■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

### ■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

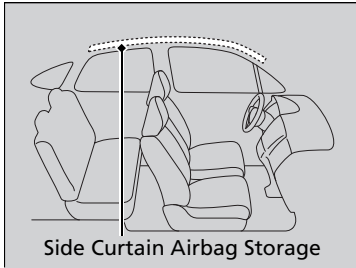
## ⌘ Side Airbags

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

## Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

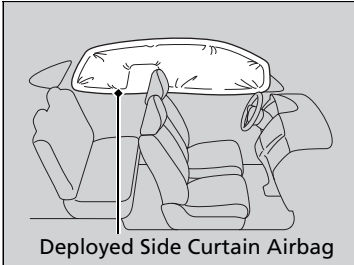
### Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

## ■ Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

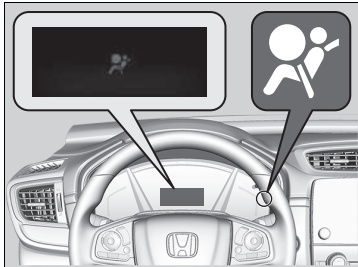
### ■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

## Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

### ■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



#### ■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

### ▶ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

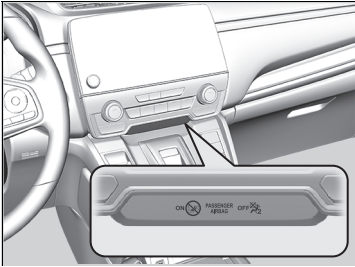
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Remove the rear-facing child restraint system immediately from the front passenger seat if the SRS indicator comes on. Even if the passenger front airbag has been deactivated, do not ignore the SRS indicator.

The SRS system may have a fault which could cause the passenger front airbag to be activated, causing serious injury or death.

## ■ Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator



### ■ When the passenger front airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator stays on while the passenger's front airbag system is deactivated.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, manually turn the system back on. The indicator should go off.



## Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

### ■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

### ■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

### ⓘ Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

## Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

### Protecting Child Passengers

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm (60 inches) be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

#### European models

Child restraint systems must meet UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

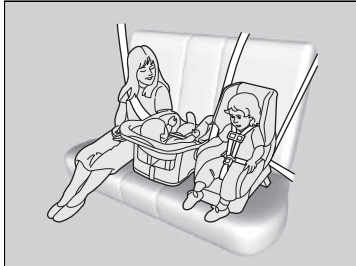
➔ **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 81

#### Except European models

We recommend that child restraint systems meet UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

➔ **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 81

**Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat.** This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

▶▶ Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

**⚠ WARNING**



**NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

#### ▶▶ Protecting Child Passengers

**WARNING:** Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

▶ **Opening/Closing the Power Windows**  
P. 212

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor.

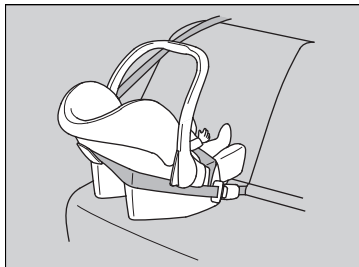
Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

▶ **Safety Labels** P. 97

## Safety of Infants and Small Children

### ■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



#### ■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it. If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

### ► Protecting Infants

#### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

As required by UN Regulation No. 94:

#### ⚠ WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

#### ⊗ Protecting Infants

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

If it is absolutely unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, manually turn off the passenger front airbag system.

➤ **Passenger Front Airbag Off System** P. 66

## ■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



### ■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

## ▶▶ Protecting Smaller Children

### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

## ■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

### ■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

### ▶▶ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

*Continued*

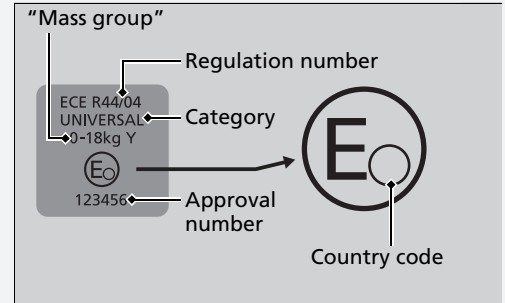


### ■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

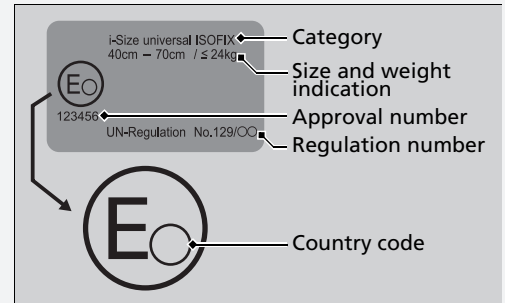
If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

#### ▶▶ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



## Locations for Child Restraint System Installation



	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

\*1 : When installing a child seat, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position and adjust the seat back angle to the most upright position.

\*2 : If you can not fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchor.

\*3 : If you attach a child seat, you can not attach the seat belt of the left side seat.

Seat position number	Seating position				
	①		②	③	④
	Front passenger		2nd row		
	Passenger Airbag ON/OFF switch		Left	Centre	Right
ON	OFF				
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	yes* <sup>1</sup> Forward facing only	yes* <sup>1</sup>	yes	yes	yes
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	no	no	yes	no	yes
Seating position suitable for recommended child seat (yes/no)	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	no	no	no	no	no
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	no	no	R3	no	R3
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F1/F2X/F2/F3)	no	no	F3	no	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	B3	B3	B3	no	B3

\*1: When installing a child seat, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position and adjust the seat back angle to the most upright position.

The child seat with the support legs can also be attached for non i-size seating position.

►► Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

**Europe Genuine CRS List**

**R44**

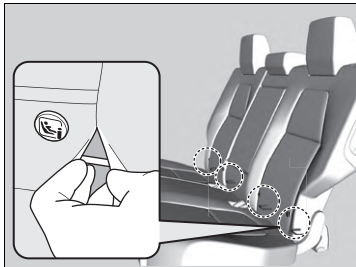
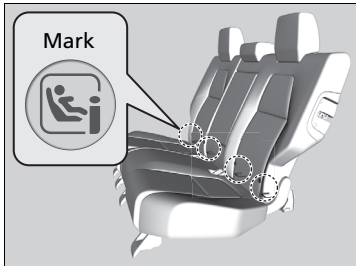
Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10kg	—	—
Group 0+ up to 13 kg	—	—
Group I 9 to 18kg	—	—
Group II, III 15 to 36 kg	Honda KIDFIX XP SICT	Universal Semi-universal

**R129**

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
40 to 83cm up to 13kg (Birth - 15 months)	Honda baby safe	Infant carrier module
	Honda baby safe ISOFIX	Base for i-Size
76 to 105cm 8 to 22kg (15 months - 4 years)	Honda ISOFIX	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

## ■ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



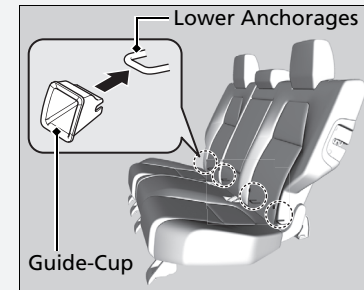
1. Locate the lower anchorages beside the marks.

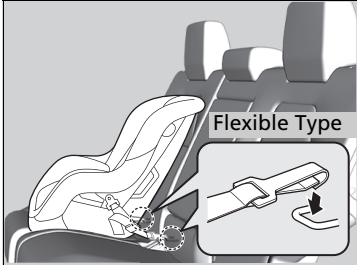
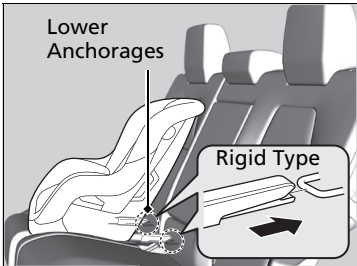
## ►► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.**

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.





2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

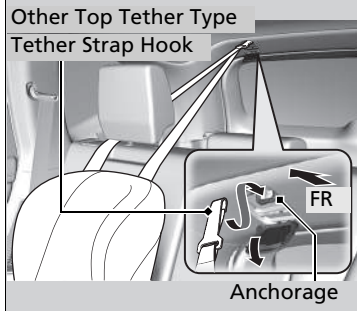
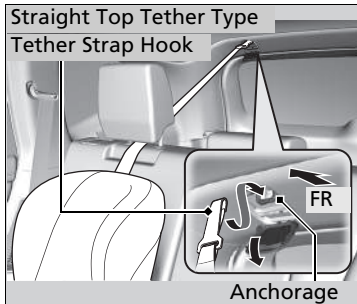
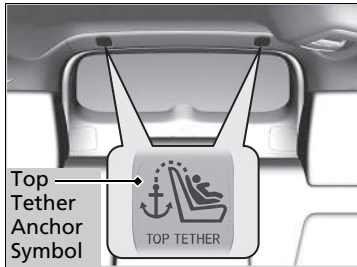
▶ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

▶▶ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

For your child’s safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.



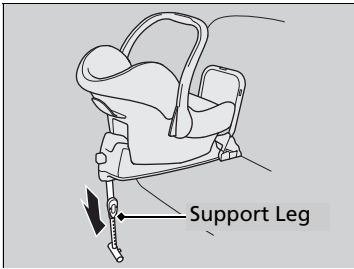
3. Open the tether anchorage cover.

**Child restraint system with tether strap**

4. Pull up the head restraint, and push it behind until it latches, then route the tether strap outside/through the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

▶▶ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

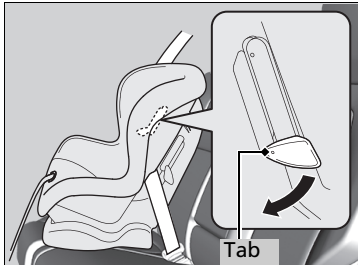
**WARNING:** Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether anchor symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

**Child restraint system with support leg**

4. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
  - ▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.
  - ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.



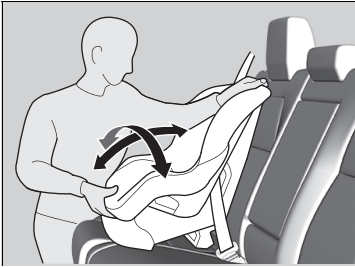
## ■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
  - Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
  - When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
  - When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

## ►► Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

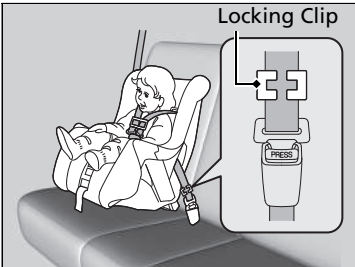


6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

**Except European models**

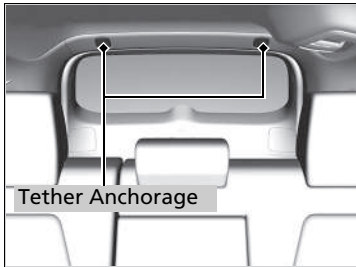
If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

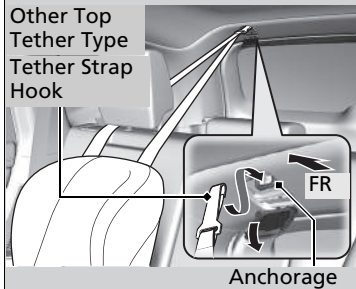
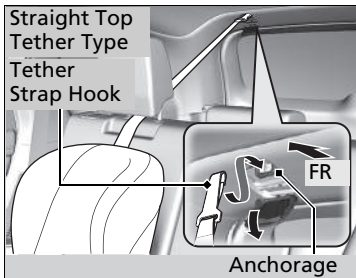


3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
4. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

## ■ Adding Security with a Tether



A tether anchorage point is provided in the ceiling for the outer rear seating position. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.



1. Open the tether anchorage cover.
2. Pull up the head restraint and push rearward until it latches, then route the tether strap outside/through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

## ▣ Adding Security with a Tether

**WARNING:** Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system when using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

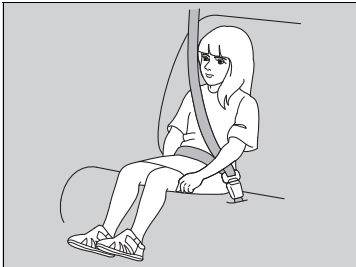
## Safety of Larger Children

### ■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

### ■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



#### ■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

### ▶▶ Safety of Larger Children

## ⚠ WARNING

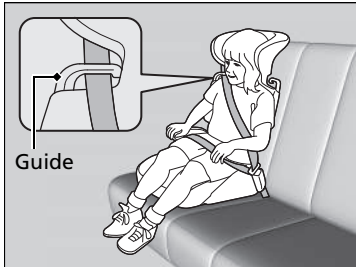
Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

## ■ Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

## ▣ Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

## ■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

## ■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.


## Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

### ■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

### ⓘ Carbon Monoxide Gas

## WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

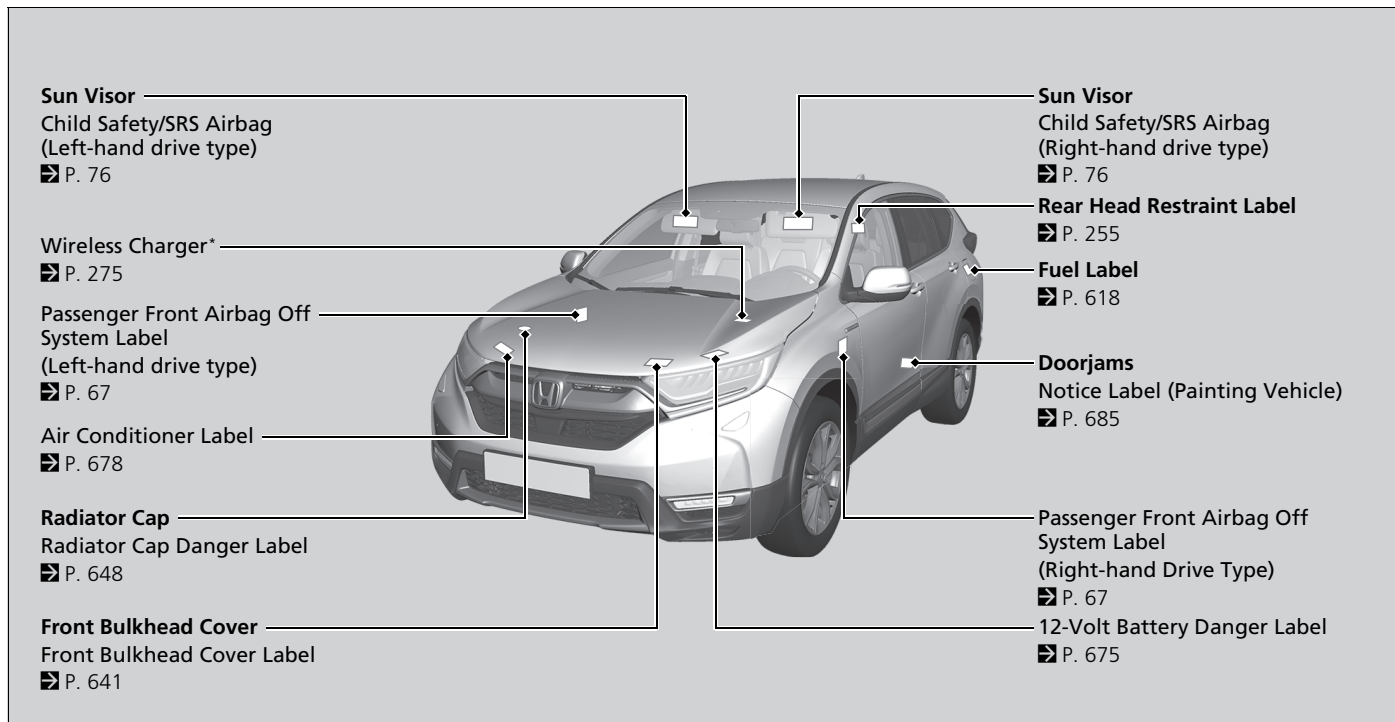
An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.

Do not turn the power system on with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after turning the power system on.

## Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



\* Not available on all models







# Instrument Panel





This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.



















<b>Indicators</b> .....	100
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages.....	123
<b>Gauges and Displays</b>	
Gauges.....	144
Driver Information Interface .....	146
Head-Up Display* .....	172







\* Not available on all models










Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off if the parking brake has been released.</li> <li>• Comes on when the parking brake is applied and goes off when it is released.</li> <li>• Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.</li> <li>• The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>What to do when the indicator comes on while driving</b> P. 714</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Comes on along with the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber)</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do.</li> <li>• <b>Comes on along with the ABS indicator</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks</b> P. 714</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 <p>(Red)</p>	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for about 15 seconds when you pull the electric parking brake switch while the power mode is in OFF.</li> <li>• Stays on for about 15 seconds when you set the power mode to OFF, while the electric parking brake is set.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Blinks and the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on at the same time</b> - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> <li>➤ <b>If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On</b> P. 715</li> </ul>	—
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.</li> </ul>	➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 599	
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.</li> </ul>	➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 599	—


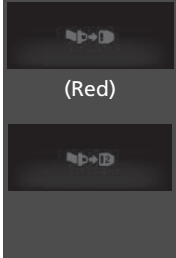

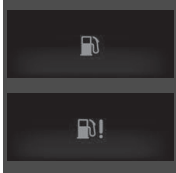


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 (Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system or the automatic brake hold system.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the cooperative control with regenerative braking, the electric servo brake system, or the hill start assist system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>	     
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the radar sensor.</li> <li>• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit.   <b>Load Limit</b> P. 489</li> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	







Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Power System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>	
	Ready Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the vehicle is ready to drive.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Turning on the Power</b> P. 498</p>	
	EV Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the vehicle is moved by the motor, and the engine is not operating.</li> </ul>	—	—
	EV Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the vehicle is in EV mode.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>e:HEV</b> P. 11</p>	









Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the power system starts.</li> <li>• Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place.                      ➤ <b>If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On</b> P. 712</li> </ul>	
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off either when the power system is on, or after several seconds if the power system did not turn on.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.</li> <li>• Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• <b>Blinks while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the power system for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take your vehicle to a dealer.                      ➤ <b>If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks</b> P. 713</li> </ul>	
	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the power system is on.</li> <li>• Comes on when the 12-volt battery is not charging.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Turn off the climate control system and rear demister in order to reduce electricity consumption.                      ➤ <b>If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 712</li> </ul>	





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Shift Position Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates the current shift position.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Shifting</b> P. 504</p>	
	Transmission System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The indicated current shift position blinks if there is a problem with the transmission system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Avoid sudden start and acceleration, and stop in a safe place immediately. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The indicated current shift position or all the shift positions blink if you cannot select <b>P</b> due to the transmission system failure.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set the parking brake when parking.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>	
	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the paddle selector is pulled.</li> <li>Blinks when the effective of deceleration does not change while pulling the paddle selector.</li> <li>Comes on with <b>M</b> when <b>SPORT</b> mode is selected and pulling the paddle selector.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Deceleration Paddle Selector</b> P. 511</p>	
	<b>SPORT</b> Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>SPORT</b> button.</li> <li>The ambient meter remains lit up in red as long as sport mode is on.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>SPORT Mode</b> P. 510</p>	













Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON.</li> <li>• If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later.</li> <li>• Blinks while driving if either you or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts.</li> <li>• <b>Stays on after you or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt</b> - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 51</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	 <p>(Red)</p>
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 8.0 litres/1.76 Imp gal left).</li> <li>• Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on</b> - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.</li> <li>• <b>Blinks</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)</b> P. 601</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	<p>Supplemental Restraint System Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Supplemental restraint system</li> <li>- Side airbag system</li> <li>- Side curtain airbag system</li> <li>- Seat belt tensioner</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
<p>ON </p> <p>OFF </p>	<p>Passenger Front Airbag On/Off Indicators</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Both indicators come on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off after a system check up.</li> </ul> <p>When the passenger front airbag is active: The on indicator comes back on and remains on for about 60 seconds.</p> <p>When the passenger front airbag is inactive: The off indicator comes back on and stays on. This is a reminder that the passenger front airbag is deactivated.</p>	<p> <b>Passenger Front Airbag Off System</b> P. 66</p>	





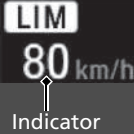
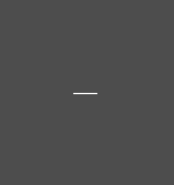

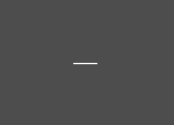
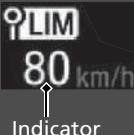
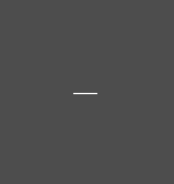
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Blinks when VSA is active.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system or brake assist system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System</b> P. 527</li> <li>➤ <b>Hill start assist system</b> P. 500</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when you partially disable VSA.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>VSA On and Off</b> P. 528</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the power system is on.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS System.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 716</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the initialisation process is not yet complete.</li> <li>• Comes on and stays on when:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low.</li> <li>- The system has not been initialised.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary.</li> <li>• <b>Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures</b> - The system needs to be initialised.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Deflation Warning System Initialisation</b> P. 531</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Blinks and remains on</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	




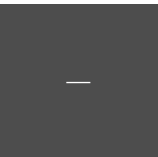
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	System Message Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• While the indicator is on, press the  (display/information) button to see the message again.</li> <li>• Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message.</li> <li>• The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the  button is pressed.</li> </ul>	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.</li> </ul>	 <b>Auto High-Beam</b> P. 229	—






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever.</li> <li>• Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Does not blink or blinks rapidly</b>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Replacing Light Bulbs P. 656</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blink along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Emergency Stop Signal</b> P. 603</li> </ul>	
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.</li> </ul>	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on whenever the light switch is on, or in <b>AUTO</b> when the exterior lights are on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.</li> </ul>	—
	Front Fog Light Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the front fog lights are on.</li> </ul>	—	—
	Rear Fog Light Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the rear fog light is on.</li> </ul>	—	—




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 <p>Indicator</p>	<p>Immobilizer System Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks</b> - You cannot start the power system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Right-hand drive type</b> Depress and hold the brake pedal before setting the power mode to ON.</li> <li><b>All models</b></li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Repeatedly blinks</b> - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.</li> </ul>	
 <p>Indicator</p>	<p>Security System Alarm Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Security System Alarm P. 207</b></p>	


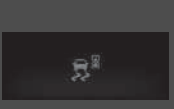


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	ECON Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when ECON mode is on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>ECON Mode</b> P. 514</li> </ul>	
	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the <b>LIM</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adjustable Speed Limiter</b> P. 516</li> </ul>	
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Adjustable Speed Limiter Set Speed Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you have set a speed for adaptive cruise control.</li> <li>Comes on when you have set a speed for adjustable speed limiter.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> <li>➤ <b>Adjustable Speed Limiter</b> P. 516</li> </ul>	
	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the <b>LIM</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Intelligent Speed Limiter</b> P. 520</li> </ul>	
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Intelligent Speed Limiter Set Speed Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.</li> <li>Comes on when you have set a speed for intelligent speed limiter.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> <li>➤ <b>Intelligent Speed Limiter</b> P. 520</li> </ul>	





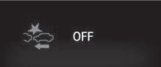



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the road departure mitigation system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if the road departure mitigation system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Load Limit</b> P. 489</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the road departure mitigation system shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as a tunnel.</li> <li>The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the sensor cover.   <b>Radar Sensor</b> P. 594</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.   <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 592</li> </ul>		




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the road departure mitigation system shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.   <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 592</li> </ul>	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with LSF.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if the ACC with LSF is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.</li> <li>ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit.  <b>➤ Load Limit</b> P. 489</li> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Green)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul>	


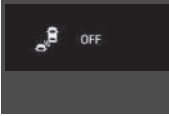



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button.</li> </ul>	<p> <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> P. 570</p>	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS. A driver information interface message appears for five seconds.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly without the CMBS off</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.   <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)</b> P. 542</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if the CMBS is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit.   <b>Load Limit</b> P. 489</li> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the CMBS shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 592</li> </ul> </li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the camera.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)</b> P. 542</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 592</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	<p>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the CMBS shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as a tunnel.</li> <li>• The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned.</li> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the sensor cover.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Radar Sensor</b> P. 594</p>	



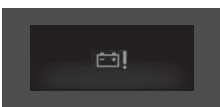


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Blind spot information System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• Stays on while the blind spot information system is turned off.</li> </ul>	—	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of sensor.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of sensor.   <b>Blind spot information System*</b>                      P. 534</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	

## Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages






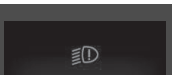

The following messages appear only on the driver information interface. Press the  (display/information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.



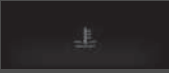

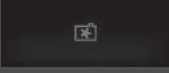



Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the vehicle is no longer able to run due to a malfunction.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Immediately stop in a safe place.</li> </ul>
 (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when there is a risk that the vehicle will move unexpectedly after you have stopped due to a malfunction with the vehicle.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>While the vehicle is stopped, apply the parking brake.  <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 595</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if any door or the tailgate is not completely closed.</li> <li>Appears if any door or the tailgate is opened while driving. The beeper sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Goes off when all doors and the tailgate are closed.</li> </ul>


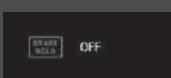


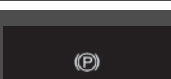

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<p><b>Models with parking sensor system</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system.</li> <li>• If there is a problem with any of the sensors, the all sensor indicator(s) comes on in red.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on or the beeper does not stop even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if there is a problem with the acoustic vehicle alerting system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the 12-volt battery.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Checking the 12-Volt Battery</b> P. 670</li> </ul> </li> </ul>





\*1:Driver information interface

\*2:Audio/Information screen




Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears once if the outside temperature is below 3°C while the power mode is in ON.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There is a possibility that the road surface is icy and slippery.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the engine oil level is low while the engine is running.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place.   <b>If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears</b> P. 718</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the engine is running, there is a system problem in the engine oil level sensor.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when there is a problem with the headlights.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem a problem with the e-pretensioner system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the shutter grill, and the radiator coolant temperature is too high.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Power output will be reduced, so you may not be able to accelerate or maintain your current speed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
 (White)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the engine coolant temperature is near its upper limit.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Drive slowly to prevent overheating.</li> </ul>
 (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.</li> </ul>	<p> <b>Overheating</b> P. 709</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the radiator system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Drive slowly to prevent overheating and have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.</li> </ul>
 (White)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you set the power mode to ON, without fastening the driver's seat belt.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fasten the seat belt properly before you start to drive.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Models with colour audio system</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears while you are customizing the settings and change the shift position from <b>P</b> to another position.</li> </ul>	<p> <b>Customized Features</b> P. 161</p>


Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Immediately depress the brake pedal.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 599</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver's seat belt.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fasten the driver's seat belt.</li> <li>➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 599</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.</li> <li>➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 599</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while it is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 599</li> <li>➤ <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 595</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.</li> <li>➤ <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 595</li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>(White)</p>  <p>(Amber)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Driver Attention Monitor</b> P. 155</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched, or either rear door is opened and closed.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 51</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the vehicle speed reaches the set speed. You can set two different speeds for the alarm.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Speed Alarm</b> P. 159</p>

Models with service reminder system







Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when any of the service items is required in less than 30 days.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The remaining days will be counted down per day.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Service Reminder System</b> * P. 626</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when any of the service items is required in less than 10 days.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have the indicated service performed as soon as possible.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Service Reminder System</b> * P. 626</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the indicated maintenance service is still not done after the remaining time reaches 0.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Your vehicle has passed the service required point. Immediately have the service performed and make sure to reset the service reminder.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Service Reminder System</b> * P. 626</li> </ul> </li> </ul>




Models with headlight washer




Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when washer fluid gets low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Refill washer fluid.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Refilling Window Washer Fluid</b> P. 653</li> </ul> </li> </ul>



\* Not available on all models








Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you close the door with the power mode on without the keyless remote inside the vehicle.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The message goes away when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle, and close the door.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Keyless Remote Reminder</b> P. 221</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the keyless remote battery becomes weak.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Replace the battery as soon as possible.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Replacing the Button Battery</b> P. 676</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.</li> <li>Appears after you unlock and open the driver's door.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Turning on the Power</b> P. 498</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the power mode is ACCESSORY.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is ACCESSORY.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the <b>POWER</b> button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.</li> </ul>





Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if the keyless remote's battery is too weak to turn on the power system or the key is not within operating range to turn on the power system. The beeper sounds six times.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bring the keyless remote in front of the <b>POWER</b> button to be touched with.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 704</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if you press the <b>POWER</b> button while the vehicle is moving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Emergency Power System Off</b> P. 705</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when you change to <b>N</b>, and press the <b>POWER</b> button within five seconds.</li> <li>• Appears when the vehicle is stopped with the driver's seat belt unfastened and there is a chance that the vehicle may roll unintentionally.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The shift position remains in <b>N</b> for 15 minutes, then automatically switches to <b>P</b>.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>If you want to keep the transmission in N position (car wash mode)</b> P. 508</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Press the <b>P</b> button before release the brake pedal when idling, parking or exiting the vehicle.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Shift Operation</b> P. 506</li> </ul> </li> </ul>





Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the power system temperature is high.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.</li> <li>• Park in a safe place, and cool the system down.   <b>Overheating</b> P. 709</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the High Voltage battery temperature is low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.</li> <li>• Goes off once you start driving as the High Voltage battery warms up.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears after the 12-volt battery charging system indicator comes on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.</li> <li>• Contact a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if the power system is in diagnostic mode.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You may notice a decrease in available power. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• As a result of diagnostics, the power system indicator may come on.   <b>Power System Indicator</b> P. 103</li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the High Voltage battery temperature is too low to operate (approx. -30°C or below).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can start the engine and use the climate control system to warm up the interior, which will also warm the High Voltage battery enough for you to drive the vehicle.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the High Voltage battery and other system control temperatures are too low to operate (approx. -40°C or below).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature or move the vehicle to a warmer location.</li> <li>• Consult a dealer.</li> </ul>




Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when you have met following situations and EV mode is unabled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <b>Battery Temperature Limits Exceeded.</b></li> <li>- <b>Battery Charge Too Low.</b></li> <li>- <b>Engine Too Cold.</b></li> <li>- <b>Cabin Being Heated.</b></li> <li>- <b>Speed Too High.</b></li> <li>- <b>Hard Acceleration Requested.</b></li> </ul> </li> <li>• Appears when you have met following situations and EV mode has been automatically cancelled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When the High Voltage battery charge is low.</li> <li>- When the velocity of your vehicle is high.</li> <li>- When your vehicle's speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph) before the engine warms up enough.</li> <li>- When depressing the accelerator pedal deeply.</li> <li>- When driving on a slope.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Appears if the engine needs to be started when you press the EV button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EV mode is available once the condition is improved or the cause that cancelled EV mode is cleared.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">—</p>





Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the High Voltage battery is running extremely low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contact a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you depress the accelerator pedal while the shift position is in <b>[N]</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remove your foot off the accelerator pedal. When driving, depress the brake pedal and operate the shift position.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you repeatedly change the shift position between <b>[P]</b> and other positions in short period.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take some time before changing the shift position.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you set the power mode to OFF while driving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Immediately stop in a safe place, set the parking brake, then restart the power system. If the message disappears, continue driving.</li> </ul>




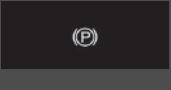
Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when you try to change the shift position without releasing your foot off the accelerator pedal.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Release your foot off the accelerator pedal, then select a shift button.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the <b>P</b> button is pressed while the vehicle is moving.</li> <li>• Appears if you put the transmission into <b>R</b> while the vehicle is moving forward, or into <b>D</b> while the vehicle is reversing.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that the vehicle comes to a stop before operating the shift button.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when you try to change the shift position without depressing the brake pedal.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Depress the brake pedal, then select a shift button.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the temperature of the transmission is starting to get too hot.</li> <li>• The performance of the vehicle may be reduced.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Until the message disappears, reduce your speed and allow the system to cool down.</li> </ul>




Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if there is a problem with the auto high-beam.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manually operate the headlight switch.</li> <li>• If you are driving with the high beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front.</li> <li>• May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. The message may take some time to go off.</li> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Radar Sensor</b> P. 594</li> <li>▶ <b>Honda Sensing</b> P. 539</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high and some driver assist systems cannot be activated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the climate control system to cool down the camera.</li> <li>• <b>Disappears</b> - The camera has been cooled down and the systems are activated normally.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 592</li> <li>▶ <b>Honda Sensing</b> P. 539</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if the area around the front sensor camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. and be prevented from detecting a vehicle in front.</li> <li>• May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the front window gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you cleaned the area around the camera.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 592</li> <li>▶ <b>Honda Sensing</b> P. 539</li> </ul> </li> </ul>







Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the system predicts the vehicle cutting in in front of you from the right and decrease your vehicle speed according to the cut-in vehicle.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The system automatically keeps a safe distance from the cut-in vehicle when the system predicts the cutting in.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>How the system activates</b> P. 569</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the system predicts the vehicle cutting in in front of you from the left and decrease your vehicle speed according to the cut-in vehicle.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The system automatically keeps a safe distance from the cut-in vehicle when the system predicts the cutting in.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>How the system activates</b> P. 569</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC with LSF to cancel improves. Press the <b>RES/+</b> button.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close while ACC with LSF is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>–/SET</b> button while the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 (White)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC with LSF.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>–/SET</b> button while the driver's seat belt is unfastened.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the VSA or traction control function operates while ACC with LSF is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too high for you to set ACC with LSF.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reduce the speed, then set ACC with LSF.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when ACC with LSF is cancelled due to excessive high vehicle speed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reduce the speed, then reset ACC with LSF.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul> </li> </ul>


Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the vehicle ahead of you resumes driving, after your vehicle has been stopped automatically by ACC with LSF.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the <b>RES/+</b> or <b>-/SET</b> button or depress the accelerator pedal to resume.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the shift position is changed to any position other than <b>D</b> while ACC with LSF is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>-/SET</b> button while the shift position is in any position other than <b>D</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope while ACC with LSF is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>-/SET</b> button while the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while ACC with LSF is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> <li>➤ <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 595</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>-/SET</b> button while the parking brake is applied.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> <li>➤ <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 595</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>-/SET</b> button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if ACC with LSF is cancelled while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC with LSF.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Immediately depress the brake pedal.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. The beeper sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> P. 553</li> <li>➤ <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)</b> P. 542</li> </ul> </li> </ul>



Message	Condition	Explanation
 (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the vehicle is about to veer out of the detected lane.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take direct control of the steering and keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. The message will disappear after a while.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> P. 570</li> <li>➤ <b>Road Departure Mitigation System</b> P. 578</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the driver is merely resting his or her hands on the steering wheel or is not holding the steering wheel at all and the vehicle is about to veer out of the detected lane. A beeper will also sound.</li> <li>Blinks if the driver is merely resting his or her hands on the steering wheel or is not holding the steering wheel at all. A beeper will also sound. If the driver continues to drive in this manner, the beeper will turn to a single long beep and LKAS will be deactivated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take direct control of the steering and keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. The message will disappear after a while.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> P. 570</li> </ul> </li> <li>Take direct control of the steering; the message will disappear.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> P. 570</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 (White)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the vehicle is likely to drive out of a detected lane. The Road Departure Mitigation system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take direct control of the steering and keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. The message will disappear after a while.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Road Departure Mitigation System</b> P. 578</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but there is a problem with a system related to the LKAS. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If any other system indicators come on, such as the VSA, ABS and brake system, take appropriate action.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Indicators</b> P. 100</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Models with power tailgate

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when there is a problem with the power tailgate system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Manually open or close the power tailgate.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

Models with real time AWD with intelligent control system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the real time AWD with intelligent control system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The engine drives the front wheels only in this state. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the differential temperature is too high.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stop in a safe place, change to <b>[P]</b>, and idle the engine until the message disappears. If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System*</b> P. 530</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

\* Not available on all models

## Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, high voltage battery charge level gauge, **POWER/CHARGE** gauge, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.



### Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h or mph.

### Fuel Gauge


Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

#### Speedometer

Press the  (display/information) button repeatedly until the  icon is shown on the driver information interface. Press **ENTER**, then press and hold it again. The speedometer reading and the displayed measurements will switch between km/h and mph.

#### Fuel Gauge

##### NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches . Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

## ■ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Shows the remaining High Voltage battery charge level.

## ■ POWER/CHARGE Gauge

### ■ Electric motor

The degree to which the electric motor is being powered is displayed by the readings on the **POWER** side.

### ■ Battery charge in progress

The degree to which the High Voltage battery is being charged is displayed by the readings on the **CHARGE** side.

## ⊠ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

The High Voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:

- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the High Voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

Changes in the temperature of the High Voltage battery can increase or decrease the battery's charging capacity. If temperature changes cause the battery's capacity to change, the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge may also change, even if the amount of charging remains the same.



## Driver Information Interface

---

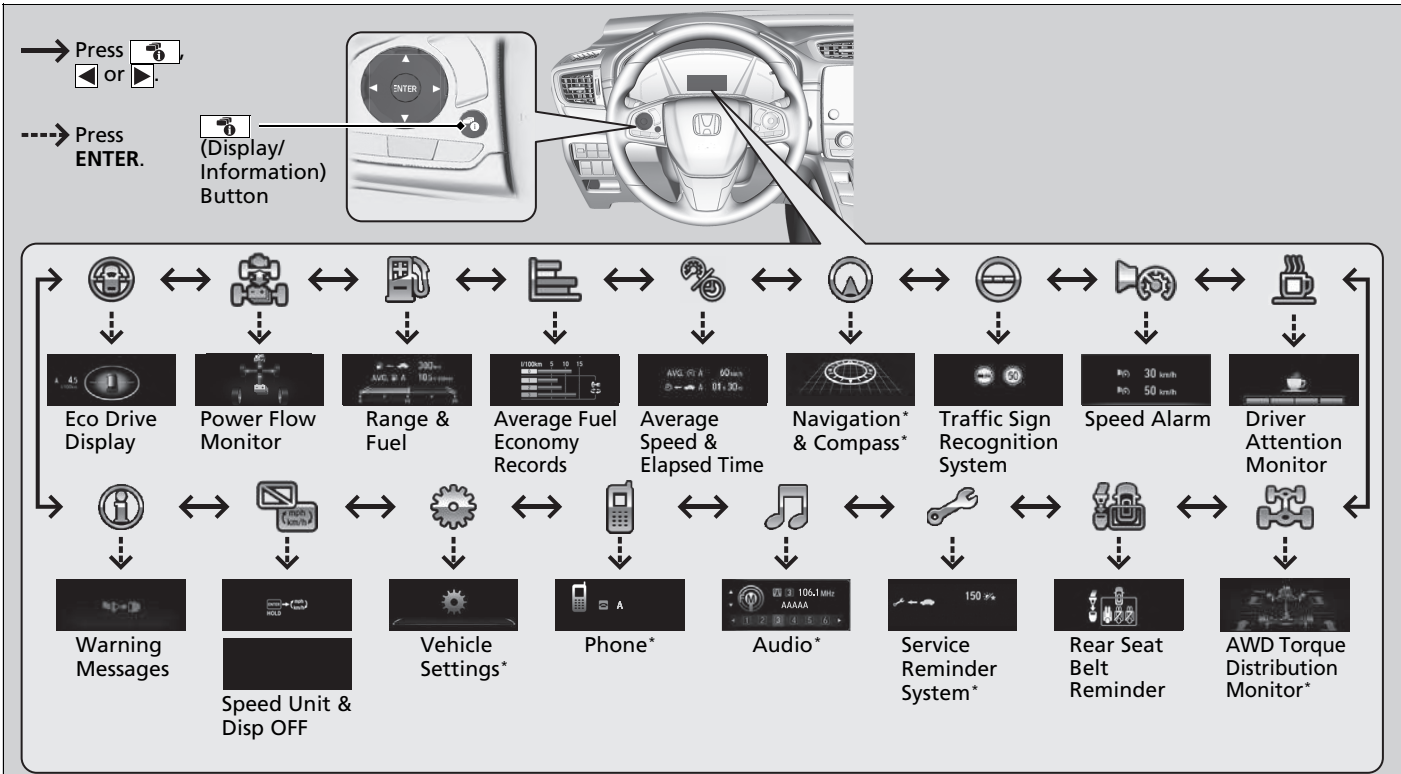
The driver information interface shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.

It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

## Switching the Display


### Main displays

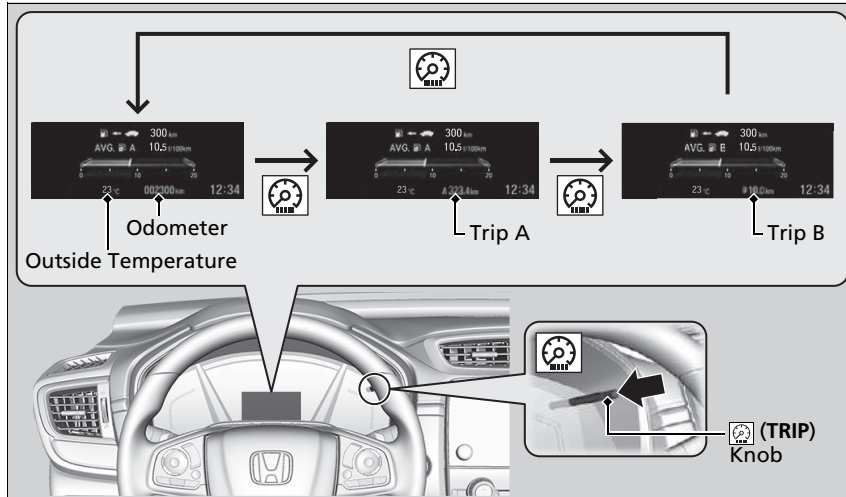
Press the  (display/information) button, and then press  or  to change the display. Press **ENTER** to see detailed information.



\* Not available on all models

### ■ Trip computer

Press the  (TRIP) knob to change the display.




### ■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles that your vehicle has accumulated.

## ■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### ■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the  knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

## ■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km or mpg. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

## ■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.


## ■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

## ■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h or mph since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

### » Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the  knob.

### » Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 161, 398

### » Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 161, 398

### » Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 161, 398

## ■ Instant Fuel Economy Gauge

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km or mpg.

## ■ Service Reminder System\*

Shows the service reminder system.

➤ **Service Reminder System** \* P. 626

## ■ Rear Seat Belt Reminder

Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched.

## ■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the outside temperature indicator blinks for ten seconds.

### ■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

## ⊗ Outside Temperature

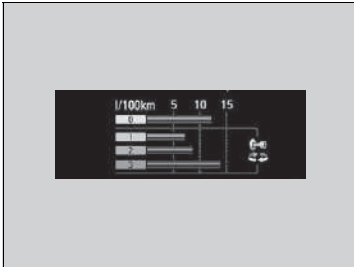
The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Use the driver information interface or audio/information screen's customized features to correct the temperature.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 161, 398

## ■ Average Fuel Economy Records



Shows the average fuel economy for the last three driving cycles (1-3), and the current driving cycle (0) in l/100 km or mpg.

Each time you set the power mode to ON, the display is updated, and the oldest record is deleted.

## ■ Eco Drive Display/Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

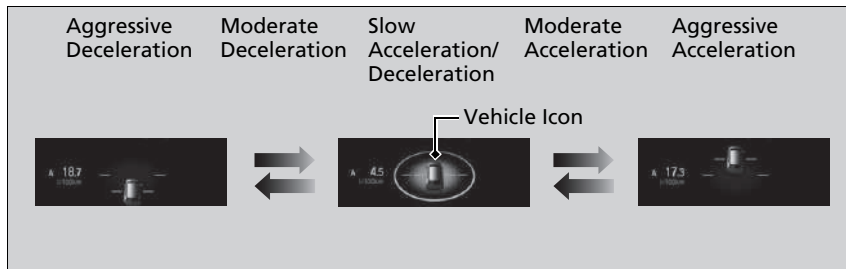
### ■ Eco Drive Display

The vehicle icon on the display moves forward or backward while driving.

The more aggressive the acceleration is, the further the icon moves forward.

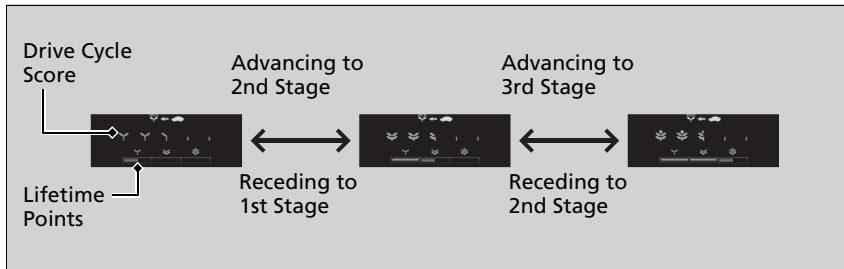
The more aggressive the deceleration is, the further the icon moves backward.

Keep the icon near the centre of the circle for better fuel economy while driving.



### ■ Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

Appear for a few seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Each has three stages. Depending on your driving style, the leaf icon(s) and the gauge increase or decrease to indicate that you have reached a different stage of fuel economy.



### ■ Resetting the Drive Cycle Score

1. Make sure the shift position is in **P**. Turn the power mode to ON.
2. If **ECON** mode is on, press the **ECON** button to turn it off.
3. Turn the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
4. Turn the power mode to ON again.
  - ▶ Make sure to complete steps from 4 through 6 within 30 seconds.
5. Depress the brake pedal twice.
6. Press the **ECON** button twice.
  - ▶ The colour of the ambient meter will turn to monochrome.
7. Turn the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.



## ■ Power Flow Monitor

Displays the power flow of the motor and engine, indicating the vehicle's power source and whether the battery is being charged.

Power Flow\*1

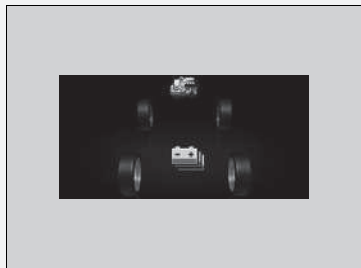
Engine

Engine ON  
 Engine OFF

<p><b>Hybrid (HV)</b> Power is supplied by the motor and the engine.</p>	<p><b>Electric Vehicle (EV)</b> Power is supplied by the motor.</p>	<p><b>Engine (Direct Drive)</b> The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.</p>
<p><b>Regeneration</b> The motor is charging the High Voltage battery.</p>	<p>Power is being supplied by only the engine.</p>	<p>The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.</p>

## ▶▶ Power Flow Monitor

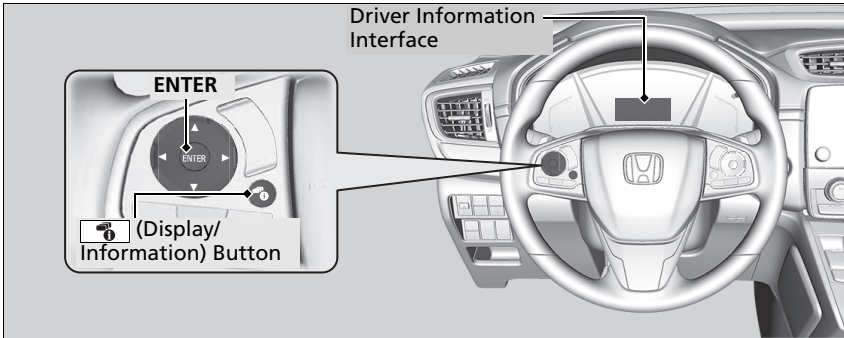
While the vehicle is stationary with the engine running, the following may appear on the driver information interface.




\*1:AWD models also display the power flow of the rear wheels.

## Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention in the Driver Information Interface.



When the  (display/information) button is pressed, bars in the Driver Information Interface light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

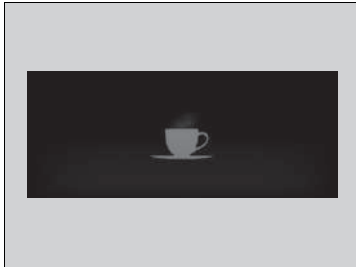
 **Switching the Display** P. 147

## Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive. Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.



If the number of bars drops to two, the Driver Attention Monitor will display the white coffee cup (without the bars) to warn the driver that his or her attention level is low.



If the number of bars drops to one, a beep will sound, the steering wheel will vibrate, and the coffee cup will turn to amber to warn the driver that he or she needs a break as his or her attention level is too low.

If the coffee cup lights up in amber, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed. The amber coffee cup warning will disappear when the **ENTER** button is pressed or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.

If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the coffee cup will light up in amber again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.

The warnings do not appear when the travelling time is 30 minutes or less.

### ■ The Driver Attention Monitor resets when

- the power system is turned off.
- the driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

### ■ For the Driver Attention Monitor to function

- the vehicle must be travelling above 40 km/h (25 mph).
- the electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

### ■ Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances.

- the steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active.
  - ☒ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 570
- the condition of the road is poor, e.g. the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- it is windy.
- the driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner such as changing lanes or accelerating.

### ■ Customizing

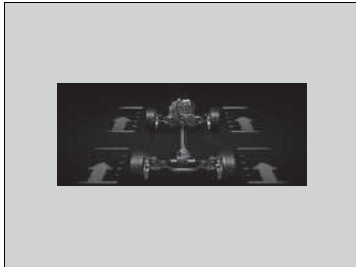
You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile And Audible Alert, Tactile Alert Only**, or **OFF**.

- ☒ **Customized Features** P. 161, 398

### ☒ For the Driver Attention Monitor to function

The bars in the Driver Information Interface remain greyed out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

## ■ AWD Torque Distribution Monitor\*



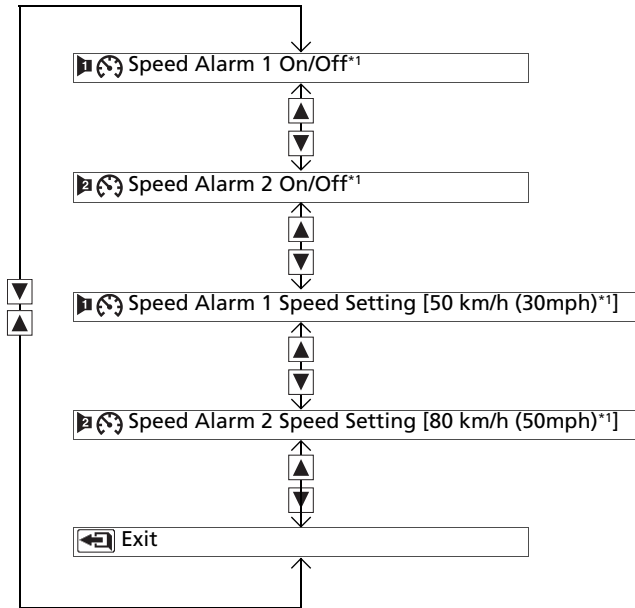
The indicators on the display show the amount of torque being transferred to the right front, left front, right rear, and left rear wheels.

▶ **Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System\*** P. 530

## ■ Speed Alarm

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Each time you press the ▲/▼ button, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



\*1:Default Setting

## ■ Turn-by-Turn Directions\*

Shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination linked with the navigation system.

➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

## ■ Traffic Sign Recognition System

Shows the traffic sign recognition system.

➤ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 584

## ■ Audio\*

Shows the current audio information.

➤ **Audio System Basic Operation** P. 321

## ■ Phone\*

Shows the current phone information.

➤ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 447

## ▶▶ Turn-by-Turn Directions\*

The driver information interface shows a compass when the route guidance is not used.

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on or not during the route guidance.





➤ **Customized Features** P. 398

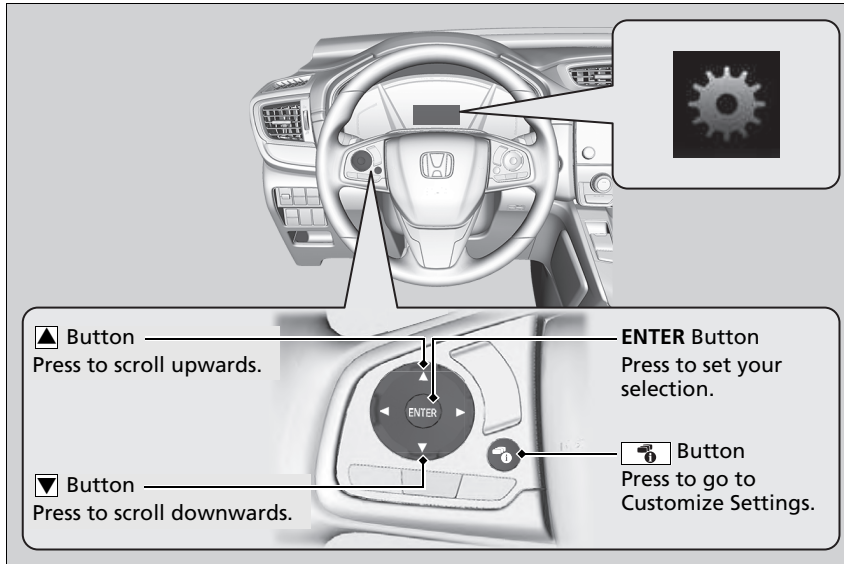
Models with colour audio system

**Customized Features**


Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

**How to customize**


Select the  screen by pressing the  button while the power mode is in ON, the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift position is in . Select , then press the **ENTER** button.




Customized Features

To customize other features, press the  button.

 **List of customizable options** P. 165

 **Example of customization settings** P. 170

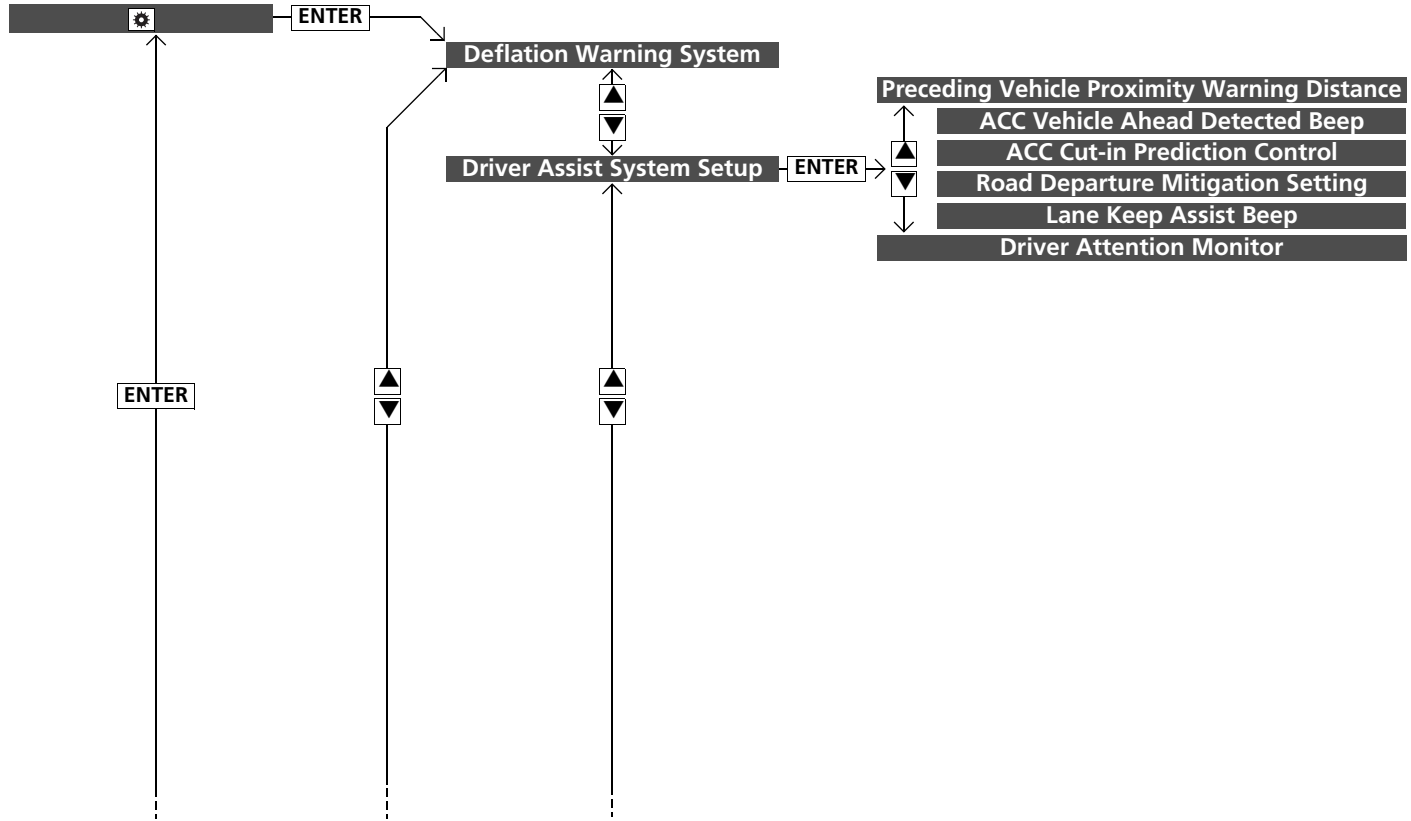
When you customize settings, shift to .

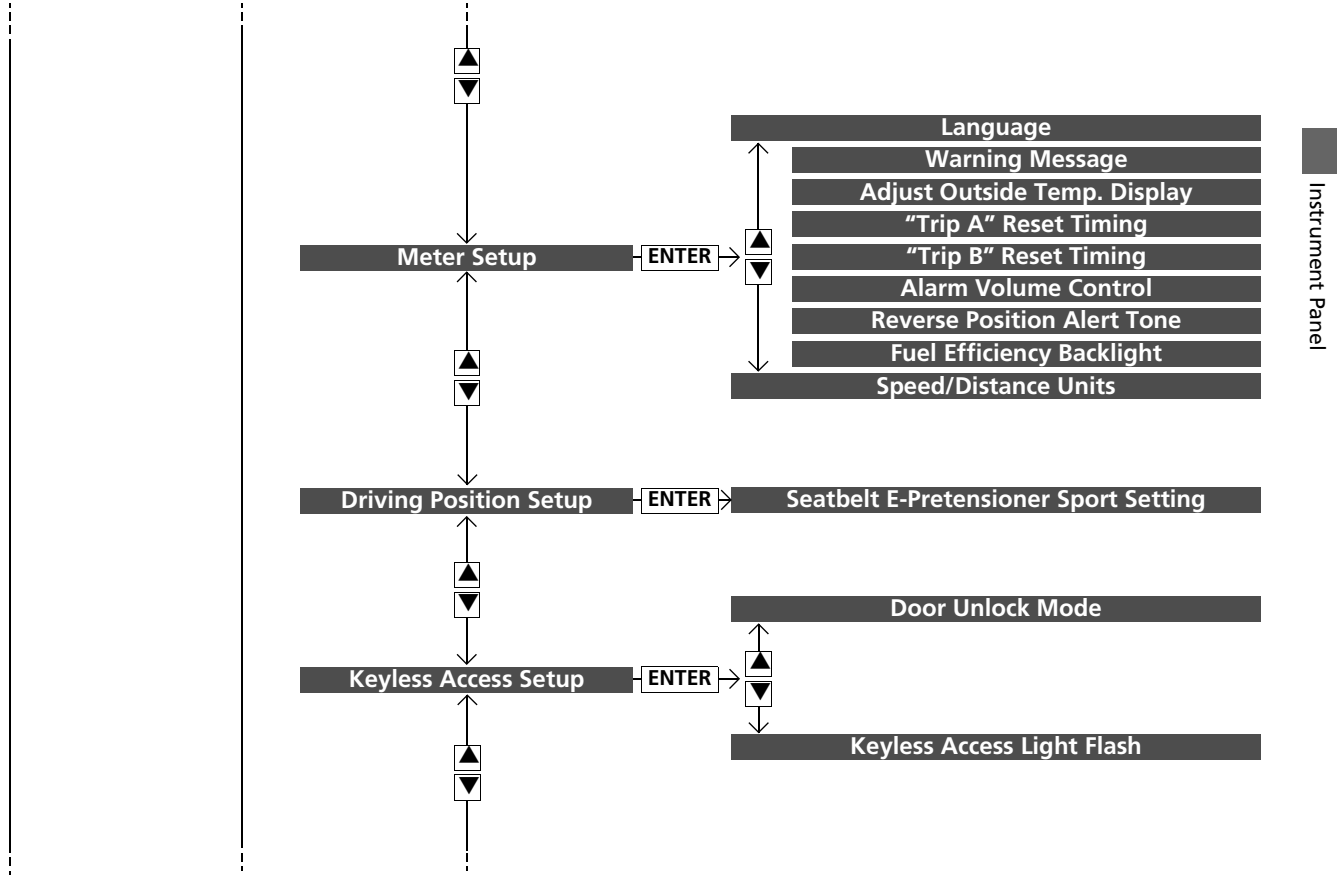


### ■ Customization flow

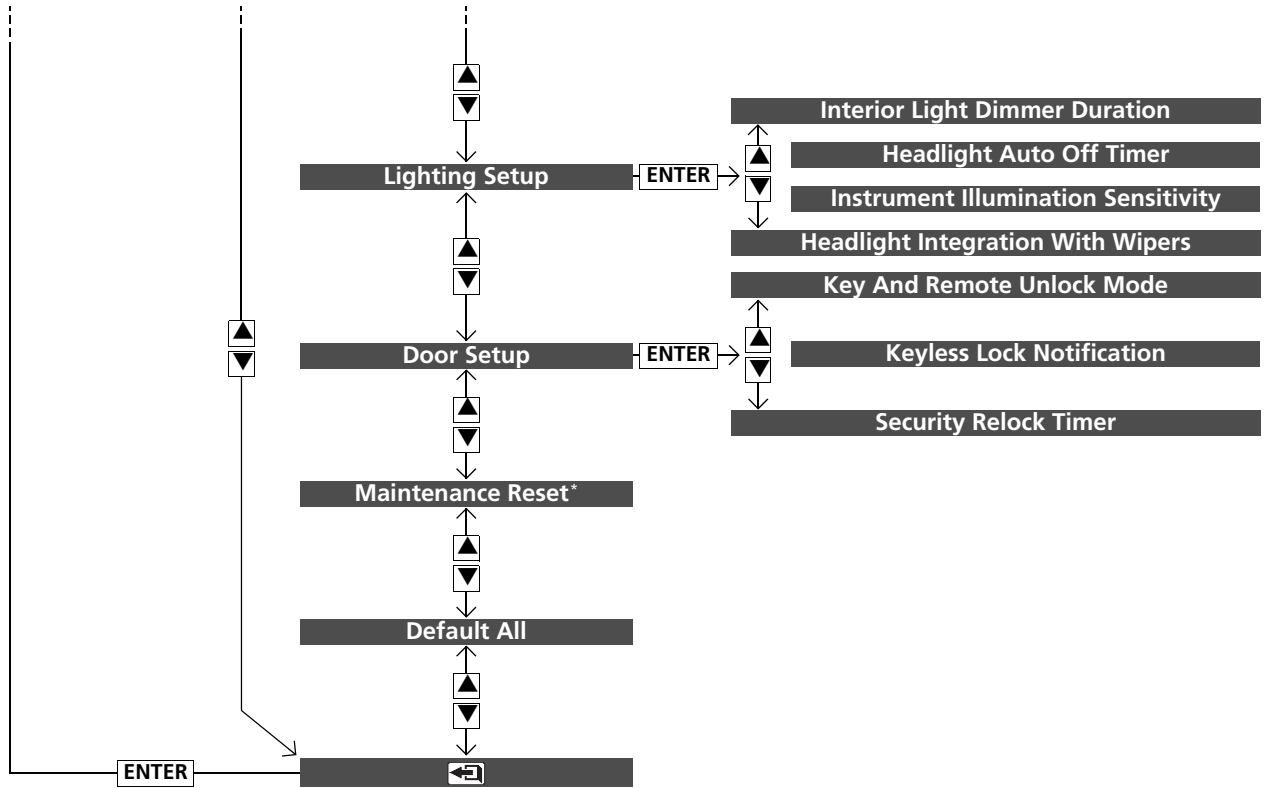
Press the  button.

Instrument Panel





Instrument Panel



■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Deflation Warning System</b>	—	Initialises the deflation warning system.	<b>Initialise/Cancel</b>
	<b>Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance</b>	Changes the distance at which CMBS alerts.	<b>Far/Normal<sup>*1</sup>/Near</b>
<b>Driver Assist System Setup</b>	<b>ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep</b>	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of ACC range.	<b>ON/OFF<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>ACC Cut-in Prediction Control</b>	Turns the ACC cut-in prediction control feature on and off.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Road Departure Mitigation Setting</b>	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	<b>Normal/Delayed<sup>*1</sup>/Warning Only/Early</b>
	<b>Lane Keep Assist Beep</b>	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	<b>ON/OFF<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>Driver Attention Monitor</b>	Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor.	<b>Tactile And Audible Alert<sup>*1</sup>/Tactile Alert Only/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Meter Setup</b>	<b>Language</b>	Changes the displayed language.	<b>English<sup>*1</sup>/French/Spanish/ German/Italian/ Portuguese/Russian/ Finnish/Norwegian/ Swedish/Danish/Dutch/ Polish/Turkish</b>
	<b>Warning Message</b>	Switches warning message to be displayed or not.	<b>ON/OFF<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>Adjust Outside Temp. Display</b>	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	<b>-3°C ~ ±0°C<sup>*1</sup> ~ +3°C</b>
	<b>“Trip A” Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	<b>When Fully Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>“Trip B” Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	<b>When Fully Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset<sup>*1</sup></b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Meter Setup</b>	<b>Alarm Volume Control</b>	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	<b>Max/Mid<sup>*1</sup>/Min</b>
	<b>Reverse Position Alert Tone</b>	Turns the reverse alert tone on and off.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Fuel Efficiency Backlight</b>	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Speed/Distance Units</b>	Selects the trip computer units.	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Left-hand drive type</div> <b>mph·miles/km/h·km<sup>*1</sup></b> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Right-hand drive type</div> <b>mph·miles<sup>*1</sup>/km/h·km</b>
<b>Driving Position Setup</b>	<b>Seatbelt E-Pretensioner Sport Setting</b>	Turns the auto seat belt tension setting for the seat belt e-pretensioner on and off.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Keyless Access Setup</b>	<b>Door Unlock Mode</b>	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	<b>Driver Door Only*<sup>1</sup>/All Doors</b>
	<b>Keyless Access Light Flash</b>	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Interior Light Dimmer Duration</b>	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	<b>60sec/30sec*<sup>1</sup>/15sec</b>
<b>Lighting Setup</b>	<b>Headlight Auto Off Timer</b>	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	<b>60sec/30sec/15sec*<sup>1</sup>/0sec</b>
	<b>Instrument Illumination Sensitivity</b>	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the <b>AUTO</b> position.	<b>Max/High/Mid*<sup>1</sup>/Low/Min</b>
	<b>Headlight Integration With Wipers</b>	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the <b>AUTO</b> position.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Door Setup</b>	<b>Key And Remote Unlock Mode</b>	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first operation of the remote or built-in key.	<b>Driver Door Only<sup>*1</sup>/All Doors</b>
	<b>Keyless Lock Notification</b>	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Security Relock Timer</b>	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	<b>90sec/60sec/30sec<sup>*1</sup></b>
<b>Maintenance Reset<sup>*</sup></b>	—	Cancels/Resets the service reminder display when you have performed the maintenance service.	<b>Cancel/All Due Items/Item A Only/Item B Only/Item 0 Only/Item 1 Only/Item 2 Only/Item 3 Only/Item 4 Only/Item 5 Only/Item 6 Only/Item 7 Only/Item 8 Only/Item 9 Only</b>
<b>Default All</b>	—	Cancels/Resets all the customized settings as default.	<b>OK/Cancel</b>

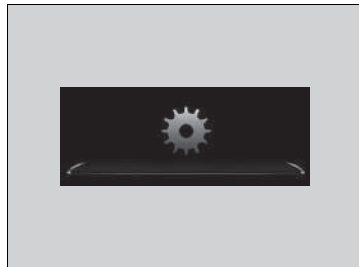
\*1:Default Setting



\* Not available on all models



### ■ Example of customization settings

The steps for changing the “Trip A” Reset Timing setting to **When Fully Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for “Trip A” Reset Timing is **Manual Reset**.








1. Press the  button to select , then press the **ENTER** button.



2. Press the  button until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the **ENTER** button.
  - ▶ **Language** appears first in the display.



4. Press the  button until **"Trip A" Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the **ENTER** button.
  - The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Fully Refueled, When Ignition Is Turned Off, Manual Reset,** or  (Exit).
5. Press the  button and select **When Fully Refueled**, then press the **ENTER** button.
  - The **When Fully Refueled** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.
6. Press the  button until  appears on the display, then press the **ENTER** button.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

## Head-Up Display\*

Shows the **POWER/CHARGE** gauge, shift position indicator, traffic sign recognition system, or current mode for ACC with LSF along with the vehicle speed. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

**To turn the head-up display on and off:** Press the **HUD** button.

The display can be moved up and down to come level with your eyes.

The head-up display will be displayed automatically when setting the power mode to ON, if it was displayed while you previously set the power mode to OFF.

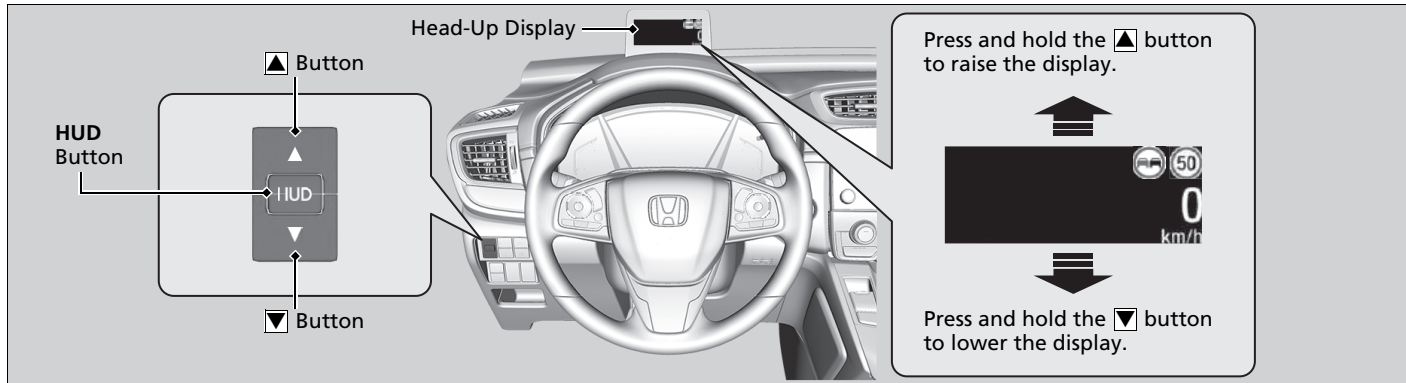
**To raise or lower the head-up display:** Press and hold the ▲ or ▼ button until the desired position is reached.

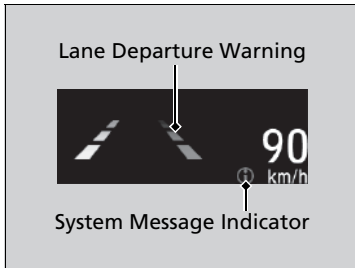
### Head-Up Display\*

If the head-up display was displayed while you set the power mode to OFF on your previous drive, when you set the power mode to ON, the angle of the head-up display is automatically adjusted according to the setting stored in the driving position memory system.


Avoid touching the screen of the head-up display as it is coated with a unique agent.

When you clean the screen, first blow away any debris or dust with a blower suited for cleaning camera lenses. Then gently wipe the lens with a lens cleaning cloth or other soft fine-grained cloth: Do not use a cleaner or detergent.



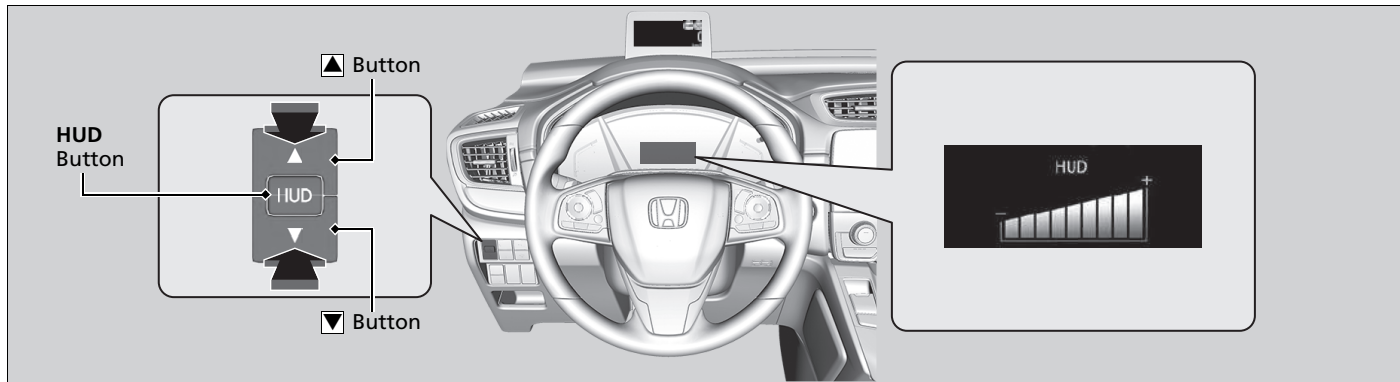


The display also shows the following warnings.

- **System Message Indicator:** Appears when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.
  - **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 123
- **Lane Departure Warning:** When your vehicle is too close to the traffic lane lines, the lane departure warning appears.
  - **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 570
- **Head-Up Warning Lights:** Flash when the  message appears on the driver information interface.
  - **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 542
  - **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)** P. 553

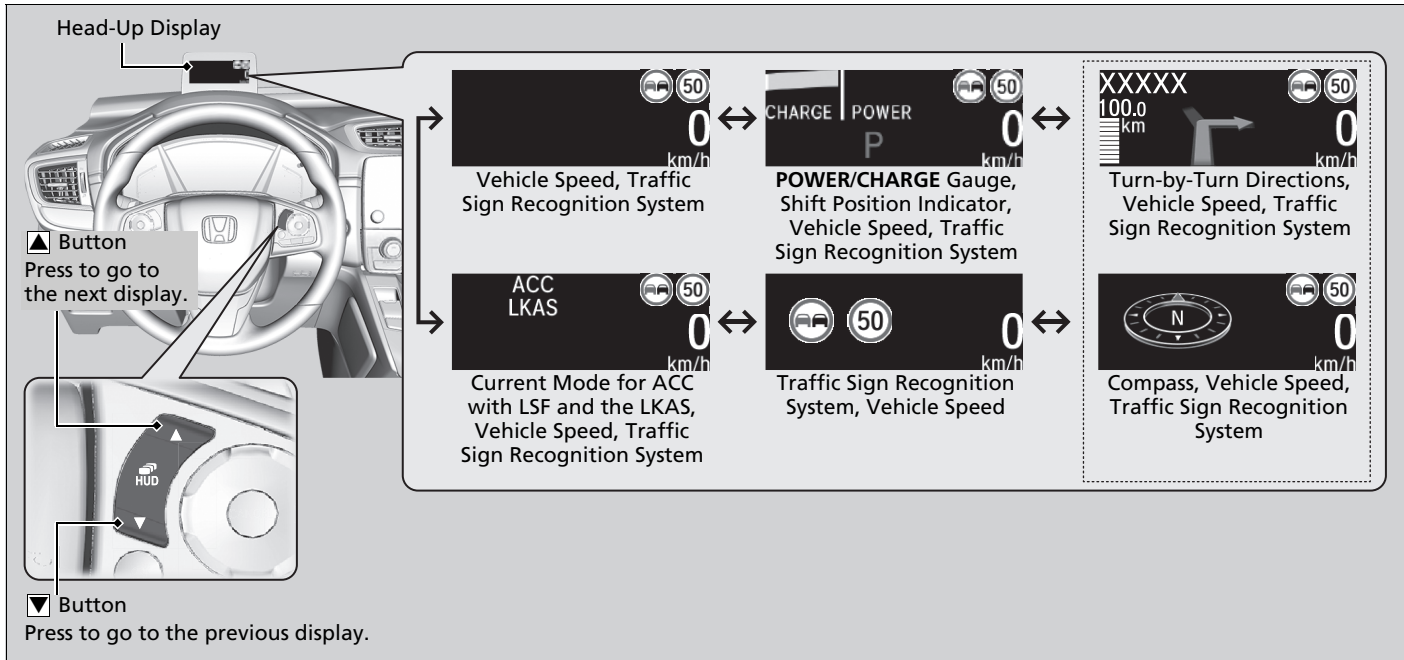
### ■ Adjusting the Head-Up Display Brightness

Pressing and holding the **HUD** button for few seconds enters the head-up display brightness adjusting mode. Use ▲ or ▼ button to adjust.



## ■ To Change Head-Up Display Content

To change the number of items that come on along with the vehicle speed on the head-up display, do the following:  
 Select the head-up display contents by pressing the ▲/▼ button to change the display.



Instrument Panel

## ■ Vehicle Speed

Shows your driving speed in km/h or mph.

## ■ POWER/CHARGE Gauge

### ■ Electric motor

The degree to which the electric motor is being powered is displayed by the readings on the **POWER** side.

### ■ Battery charge in progress

The degree to which the High Voltage battery is being charged is displayed by the readings on the **CHARGE** side.

## ■ Shift Position Indicator

Shows the current shift position.

➤ **Shift Position Indicator** P. 105

## ■ Traffic Sign Recognition System

Shows the traffic sign recognition system.

➤ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 584

## ■ Current Mode for ACC with LSF and the LKAS

Shows the current mode for ACC with LSF and the LKAS.

➤ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)** P. 553

➤ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 570

## ■ Turn-by-Turn Directions

Shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination linked with the navigation system.

➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

### ☒ Turn-by-Turn Directions

The head-up display shows a compass when the route guidance is not in use.

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on or not during the route guidance.

➤ **Customized Features P. 398**





# Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

<b>Clock</b> .....	180	Ultrasonic Sensors* .....	209	Auto High-Beam .....	229
<b>Locking and Unlocking the Doors</b>		Tilt Sensor* .....	210	Wipers and Washers .....	232
Key .....	182	Super Locking* .....	211	Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button ....	236
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength....	184	<b>Windows</b> .....	212	Heated Windscreen Button* .....	237
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the		<b>Panoramic Roof*</b> .....	215	Brightness Control .....	238
Outside .....	185	<b>Operating the Switches Around the</b>		Driving Position Memory System* ....	240
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the		<b>Steering Wheel</b>		Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	242
Inside .....	192	POWER Button.....	219	<b>Mirrors</b>	
Childproof Door Locks .....	194	Turn Signals .....	222	Interior Rearview Mirror .....	243
<b>Tailgate</b> .....	195	Light Switches.....	223	Power Door Mirrors .....	244
<b>Security System</b>		Fog Lights .....	226	<b>Seats</b> .....	247
Immobilizer System .....	206	Active Cornering Lights* .....	227	<b>Interior Convenience Items</b> .....	258
Security System Alarm .....	207	Daytime Running Lights .....	228	<b>Climate Control System</b> .....	279

\* Not available on all models

## Adjusting the Clock

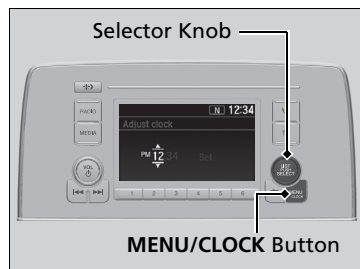
### Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the navigation system, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

### All models

You can adjust the time manually in the audio/information screen, with the power mode in ON.

## Adjusting the Time



### Models with colour audio system

#### ■ Using the MENU/CLOCK button

1. Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.  
▶ **Adjust clock** is selected.
2. Rotate ⌚ to change hour, then press ⌚.
3. Rotate ⌚ to change minute, then press ⌚.
4. To enter the selection, rotate ⌚ and select **Set**, then press ⌚.

### ▶▶ Adjusting the Clock

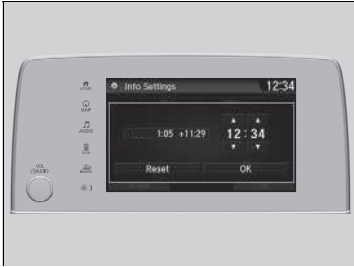
The clock in the driver information interface is automatically adjusted along with the audio system's clock display.

### ▶▶ Using the MENU/CLOCK button

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.  
Rotate ⌚ to select.  
Press ⌚ to enter.






You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 390



#### Models with Display Audio

### ■ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen





1. Select the  (Home) icon, then select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
4. Select  or  to change hour.
5. Select  or  to change minute, then select **OK**.

#### ☒ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock and turn the clock display on and off.

➤ **Customized Features P. 398**

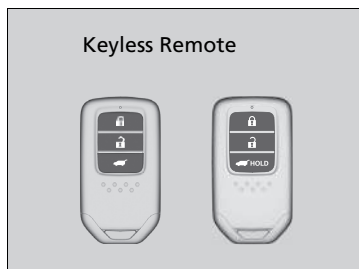
You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the upper right or left corner of the display.

1. Touch the clock on the display for a few seconds.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock**.
4. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
5. Select  or  to change hour.
6. Select  or  to change minute, then select **OK**.

You cannot adjust the time while the vehicle is moving.

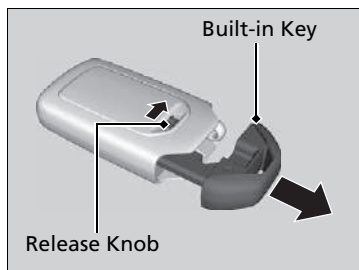
## Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys:



Use the keys to turn on and off the power system, and to lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.

### Built-in Key



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

### Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

➤ **Immobilizer System** P. 206

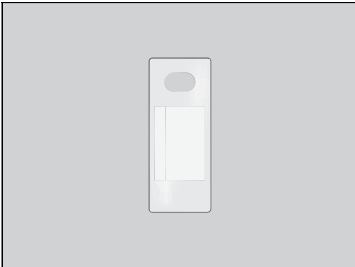
Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the power system may not activate, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

## ■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

## ▣ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.  
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.

## Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate, or to activate the power system.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate, or activating the power system may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

### ⓘ Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

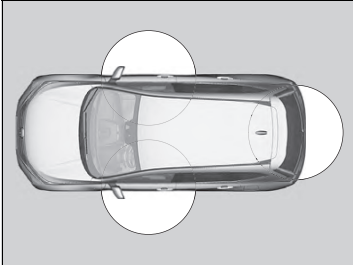
Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery.

Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

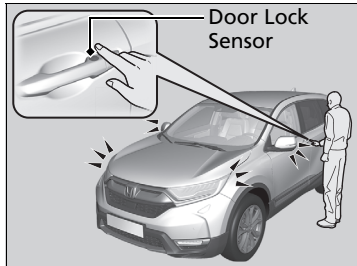
The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

### ■ Using the Keyless Access System



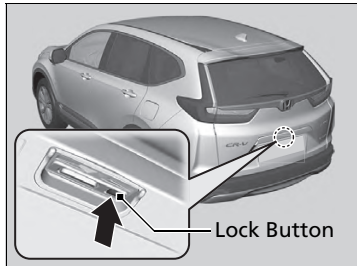
When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the tailgate. You can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.



### ■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.



### ☒ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

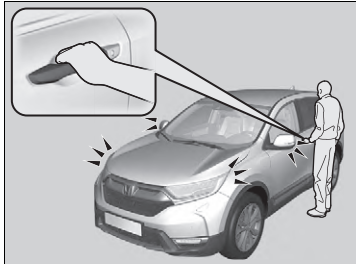
➤ **Interior Lights** P. 258

### ☒ Using the Keyless Access System

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).





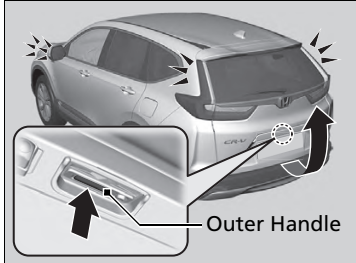
### ■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Grab the driver's door handle:

- ▶ The driver's door unlocks.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

- ▶ All the doors and tailgate unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once.



Press the outer handle:

- ▶ The tailgate unlocks.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once.

▣ **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 196

### ▣ Using the Keyless Access System

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be locked or unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

» Using the Keyless Access System

The light flash setting and unlock mode setting can be customized using the driver information interface or audio/information screen.

Models with colour audio system

➤ **Customized Features** P. 161

Models with Display Audio

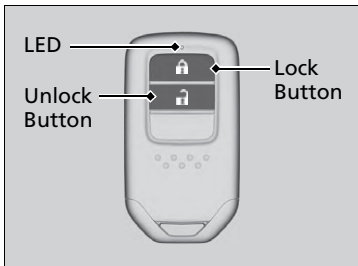
➤ **Customized Features** P. 398

Models with power tailgate

You can also unlock and open with the power tailgate.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 398

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter



### ■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the lock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system sets.

### ■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

#### Once:

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once, and the driver's door unlocks.

#### Twice:

- ▶ The remaining doors and tailgate unlock.

## ▶▶ Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock. You can change the relock timer setting.

**Models with colour audio system**

▶ **Customized Features** P. 161

**Models with Display Audio**

▶ **Customized Features** P. 398

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low. If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

▶ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 676

The remote transmitter will not work when:

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.

» Using the Remote Transmitter

**Right-hand drive type**

You cannot lock any doors from the outside when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle, and the beeper sounds. If you want to lock a door while the remote is still in the vehicle, do any of the following four times:

- Press the lock button on the keyless remote.
- Turn the key in the cylinder to lock.
- Press the door lock button on the door handle or the tailgate.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

**Models with colour audio system**

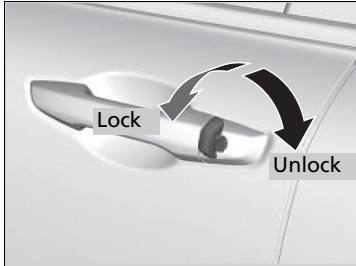
➤ **Customized Features** P. 161

**Models with Display Audio**

➤ **Customized Features** P. 398

## ■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the remote does not work, use the key instead.  
Fully insert the key and turn it.



## ▣ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turning the key a second time within a few seconds does not unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

**Models with colour audio system**

➤ **Customized Features** P. 161

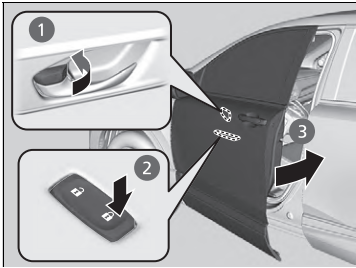
**Models with Display Audio**

➤ **Customized Features** P. 398

Unlocking the doors with the key causes the security system to alarm. Always unlock the doors with the keyless access system or remote transmitter.

## ■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



### ■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

### ■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

### ■ Lockout prevention system

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

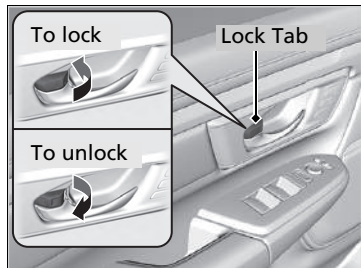
## ☒ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

### ■ Using the Lock Tab



■ **Locking a door**  
Push the lock tab forward.

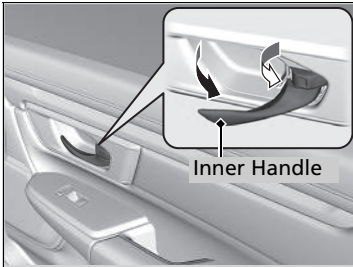
■ **Unlocking a door**  
Pull the lock tab rearward.

### ☞ Using the Lock Tab

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

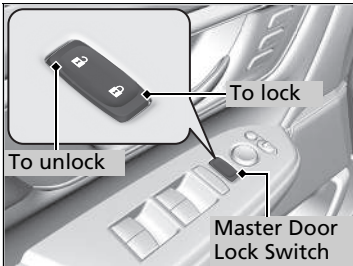
## ■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



Pull the front door inner handle.

- ▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

## ■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate.

### ⊗ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

➤ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 194

### ⊗ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

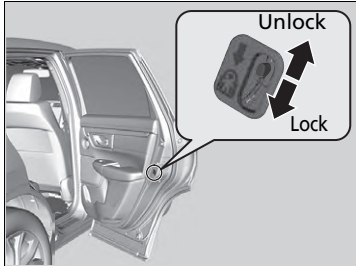
When you lock/unlock either front door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.



## Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

### ■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

### ■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

### ☒ Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

### Models without power tailgate

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  - ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

### All models

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.
  - ➔ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 96

### Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

#### **WARNING**

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

**Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.**

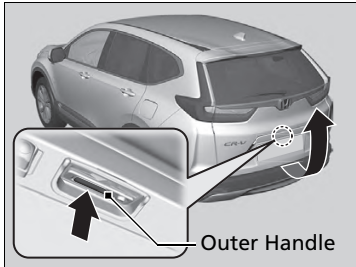
Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area, or using a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access\*, while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

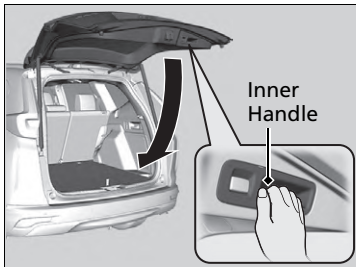
\* Not available on all models

## Opening/Closing the Tailgate



When all the doors are unlocked or press the tailgate unlock button on the remote transmitter, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.



To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

If you close the tailgate when the driver's door is locked, the tailgate locks automatically.

- Some exterior lights flash three times.

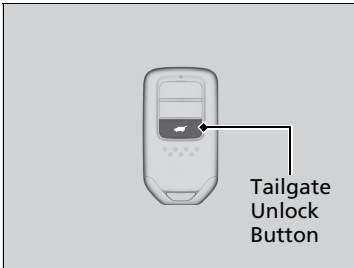
### ►► Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Do not leave the key in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.

Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

Do not leave the keyless remote inside the luggage area and close the tailgate. The beeper sounds and the tailgate cannot be locked.

### ■ Using the Remote Transmitter\*



Press the tailgate unlock button to unlock the tailgate.

### ☒ Using the Remote Transmitter\*

If you have unlocked and opened the tailgate using the remote transmitter or keyless remote, when closing, the tailgate locks automatically.

\* Not available on all models

## Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button in the driver's side control panel, pressing the outer handle or button on the tailgate, or by raising and lowering your foot under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access.

The power tailgate can be opened/closed when the transmission is in **P**.

### ▶▶ Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

#### **WARNING**

Opening or closing a power tailgate while any part of a passenger is in the tailgate's operating path can cause serious injury.

Make sure all passengers or objects are clear of the tailgate operating range before opening or closing the tailgate.

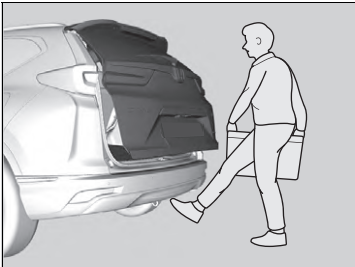
**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

#### **NOTICE**

Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed. Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

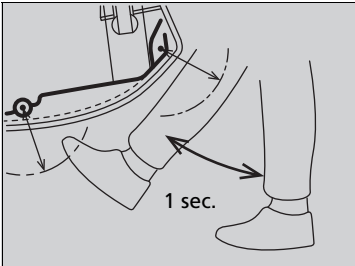
When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

## ■ Using the Hands Free Access



Use a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the keyless remote.

- Some exterior lights will flash, then the tailgate begins to move.



## ▣ Using the Hands Free Access

During rain or in other instances when the vehicle becomes wet, the sensor may not properly detect your foot motion.

When performing work on or around the rear section of the vehicle, you may inadvertently open or close the tailgate.

To prevent this from happening, select Customized Features on the audio/information screen and then select OFF for the feature.

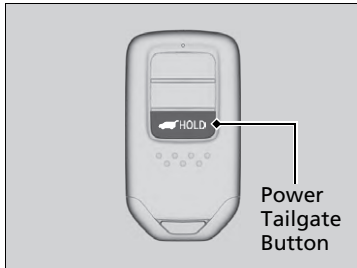
► **Customized Features** P. 398

If you hold your foot under the bumper for too long, the power tailgate does not open or close.

This function will not operate if you don't have the keyless remote on you. Please make sure you have the keyless remote on you.

The duration of the kicking motion should be approximately one second.

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

► Some exterior lights will flash.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.

Press the button for more than one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

## ■ Customizing when to open the tailgate

**Anytime:** The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.

**When Unlocked:** The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked.

► **Customized Features** P. 398

## ►► Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:

- You activate the power system while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

If you close the power tailgate when all the doors are locked, the power tailgate locks automatically and some exterior lights flash.

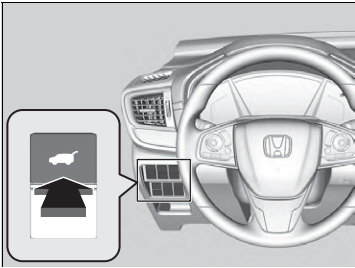
If you replace the 12-volt battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

Installing aftermarket components other than Honda genuine accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your luggage in and out.

The beeper sounds when you start driving while the power tailgate is still open, or closing.

## ■ Using the Power Tailgate Button



To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second.

► Some exterior lights will flash.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press the button for about one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

## ☒ Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. The beeper sounds three times.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

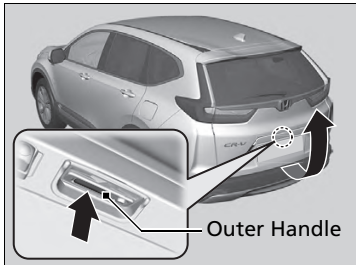
Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Using the Tailgate Outer Handle



If you press the outer handle of the tailgate for no longer than one second, the tailgate opens automatically.

- ▶ If you want to open the tailgate manually, press the button for more than one second.

➤ **Tailgate P. 195**

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

If you press the outer handle again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press the outer handle, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

## ☒ Using the Tailgate Outer Handle

Do not leave the key in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.

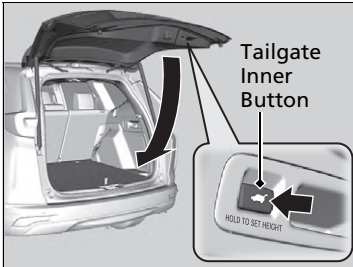
Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

Do not leave the keyless remote inside the luggage area and close the tailgate. The beeper sounds and the tailgate cannot be locked.

You can change the power tailgate operation setting on and off.

➤ **Customized Features P. 398**

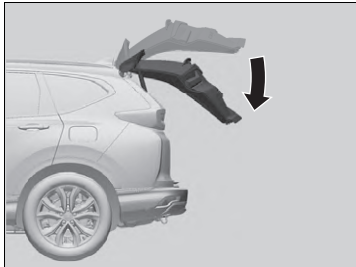
## ■ Using the Tailgate Inner Button



Press the tailgate inner button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

If you press the tailgate inner button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press and release the tailgate inner button again, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

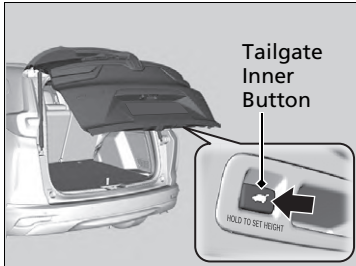
## ■ Programming Tailgate Position



The extent to which the power tailgate automatically opens can be programmed.

To program:

1. Open the tailgate to the desired position.
2. Press and hold the tailgate inner button. You will hear one long beep, followed by two short beeps.



## ▣ Programming Tailgate Position

If the tailgate is only slightly opened, the position cannot be programmed, even if you push the tailgate inner button.

If you want to reprogram the power tailgate to open all the way, manually raise the tailgate to its upper most position and follow the directions in step 2.

## Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

## Power Tailgate Fall Detection

Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, by snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

### Auto-Closer

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you push the tailgate outer handle while the power tailgate is closing.

#### NOTICE

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

### Power Tailgate Fall Detection

If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may activate

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult at a dealer.

## Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the power system. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **POWER** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **POWER** button.

Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

### Immobilizer System

#### NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

#### Right-hand drive type

Apply and hold the brake pedal before set the power mode to ON the first time after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.

## Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are opened without the remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

### ■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

### ■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

### ■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

#### ▣ Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system alarm deactivates.

The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may activate once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced. If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

### ■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

### ■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

#### » Security System Alarm

##### Models with ultrasonic sensors or tilt sensor

The system may accidentally activate such as when:

- The vehicle is parked in an automated garage.
- The vehicle is being washed with highly pressurized water or being put through an automated car wash.
- The vehicle is being transported by train, ferry or trailer.
- The vehicle is subjected to heavy rain or stormy weather.
- Ice is being removed from the vehicle.

You can use ultrasonic sensor **OFF** button and Tilt sensor **OFF** button not to accidentally activate the security system alarm.

➤ **Ultrasonic Sensors\*** P. 209

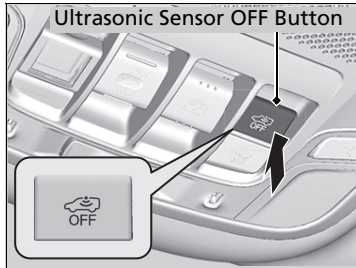
➤ **Tilt Sensor\*** P. 210

## Ultrasonic Sensors\*

The ultrasonic sensors activate only when the security system alarm is set. If the sensors detect an intruder moving around inside or entering the interior of the vehicle through a window, the sensor will activate the alarm.

### ■ To set the security system alarm without activating the ultrasonic sensors

You can set the security system alarm without activating the ultrasonic sensors.



To turn off the ultrasonic sensor system, press the ultrasonic sensor OFF button after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).


▶ The  is on in red.


To turn it on again, press the ultrasonic sensor OFF button.


Ultrasonic sensors is turned on every time you set the security system alarm, even if you turned it off the last time.


### ▶▶ Ultrasonic Sensors\*

Whether the ultrasonic sensors has been activated or not, the security system can only be turned off by the remote transmitter or keyless access system, not the key.

It is possible to confirm whether the vehicle security system was activated without your knowledge. If the security system has been activated, the  will blink for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.

If, however, you turn the power system on, the  will stop blinking after 5 seconds.

If the ultrasonic sensor is malfunctioning or there is another problem, the  will come on for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.

If, however, you turn the power system on, the  will shut off.

The security system may accidentally activate by ultrasonic sensors such as when:

- Someone is in the vehicle
- A window is open
- Accessories or clothes are hanging in the vehicle

\* Not available on all models

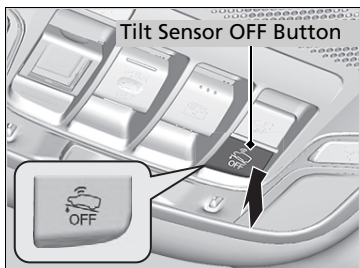


## Tilt Sensor\*


The tilt sensor activates only when the security system alarm is set. If someone raises the vehicle in an attempt to tow the vehicle or remove the wheels etc., the sensor will activate the alarm.

### ■ To set the security system alarm without activating the tilt sensor

You can set the security system without activating the tilt sensor.



To turn off the tilt sensor system, press the tilt sensor OFF button after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).


▶ The  is on in red.


To turn it on again, press the tilt sensor OFF button.


Tilt sensor is turned on every time you set the security system alarm, even if you turned it off the last time.


### ⌘ Tilt Sensor\*

Whether the tilt sensor has been activated or not, the security system can only be turned off by the remote transmitter or keyless access system, not the key.

It is possible to confirm whether the vehicle security system was activated without your knowledge. If the security system has been activated, the  will blink for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.

If, however, you turn the power system on, the  will stop blinking after 5 seconds.

If the tilt sensor is malfunctioning or there is another problem, the  will come on for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.

If, however, you turn the power system on, the  will shut off.

Do not set the tilt sensor when the vehicle is lifted or jacked up.

## Super Locking\*

The super locking function disables the lock tabs on all doors.

### ■ To activate the super locking function

- Turn the key in the driver's door towards the vehicle front twice within five seconds.
- Press the lock button on the remote transmitter twice within five seconds.
- Touch the door lock sensor on the door handle or press the lock button on the tailgate twice within five seconds.

### ■ To cancel the super locking function

Unlock the driver's door with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

#### Super Locking\*

### ⚠ WARNING

No one must be inside the vehicle with the super locking set. Persons locked in can get seriously sick or die from the heat built inside the vehicle if left in the sun.

Make sure there is no one inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

Once the super locking function has been enabled, it will remain enabled even if you unlock the tailgate.

\* Not available on all models

## Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is switched on (pushed in, indicator on), you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

### Opening/Closing the Power Windows

#### **WARNING**

**Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.**

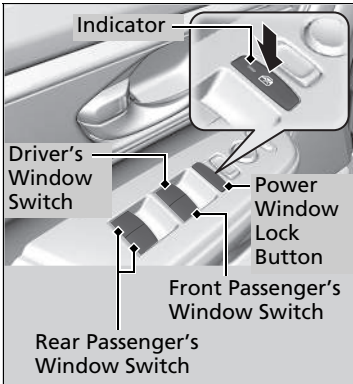
**Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.**

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

## ■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



### ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

### ■ Automatic operation

**To open:** Push the switch down firmly.

**To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

## ☒ Opening/Closing the Power Windows

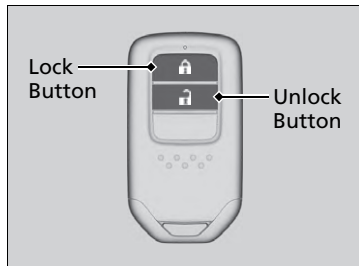
### Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

## ■ Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote

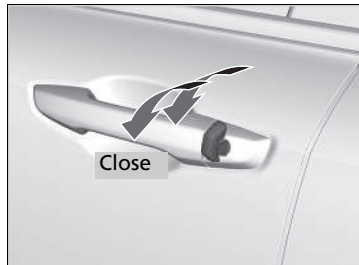


**To open:** Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

**To close:** Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

## ■ Closing the Windows with the Key



**To close:** Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

## ►► Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote

### Models with panoramic roof

If you open/close the windows with the remote, the panoramic roof will open/close automatically along with them.

## ►► Closing the Windows with the Key

### Models with panoramic roof

If you close the windows with the key, the panoramic roof will close automatically along with them.

### Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

You can only operate the panoramic roof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the panoramic roof.

#### Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

### WARNING

Opening or closing the panoramic roof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the panoramic roof before opening or closing it.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

#### NOTICE

Opening the panoramic roof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the panoramic roof panel or motor.

The panoramic roof and sunshade can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to OFF (LOCK).  
Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

#### ▶▶ Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

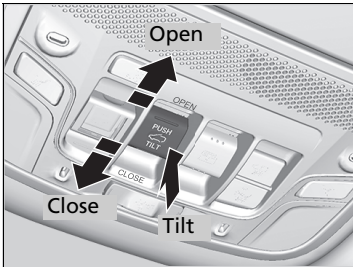
When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the panoramic roof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the panoramic roof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the panoramic roof.

▶ **Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote** P. 214

▶ **Closing the Windows with the Key** P. 214

## ■ Using the Panoramic Roof Switch



### ■ Automatic operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The panoramic roof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the panoramic roof midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

### ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

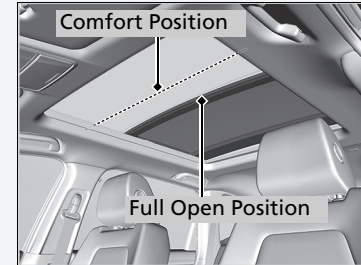
### ■ Tilting the panoramic roof up

**To tilt:** Push on the centre of the panoramic roof switch.

- ▶ The sunshades will open automatically and the panoramic roof will start to tilt up.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

## ▶▶ Using the Panoramic Roof Switch



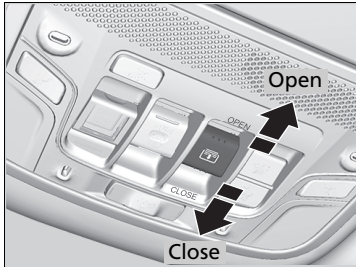
The panoramic roof cannot be fully opened in a single operation. The panoramic roof has a “comfort” position or wind noise reduction position at which the roof first stops. To open fully, pull the switch back again after the roof has stopped at this position.

Whenever the panoramic roof is opening, the sunshade moves along with it. However, when the panoramic roof is closing, the sunshade does not move.

When you tilt open the panoramic roof, the sunshade opens slightly to let in fresh air. When you close the panoramic roof from this position, the sunshade returns to its closed position.



## ■ Using the Sunshade Switch



### ■ Automatic operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunshade automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunshade midway, push the switch briefly.

### ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

## ☒ Using the Sunshade Switch

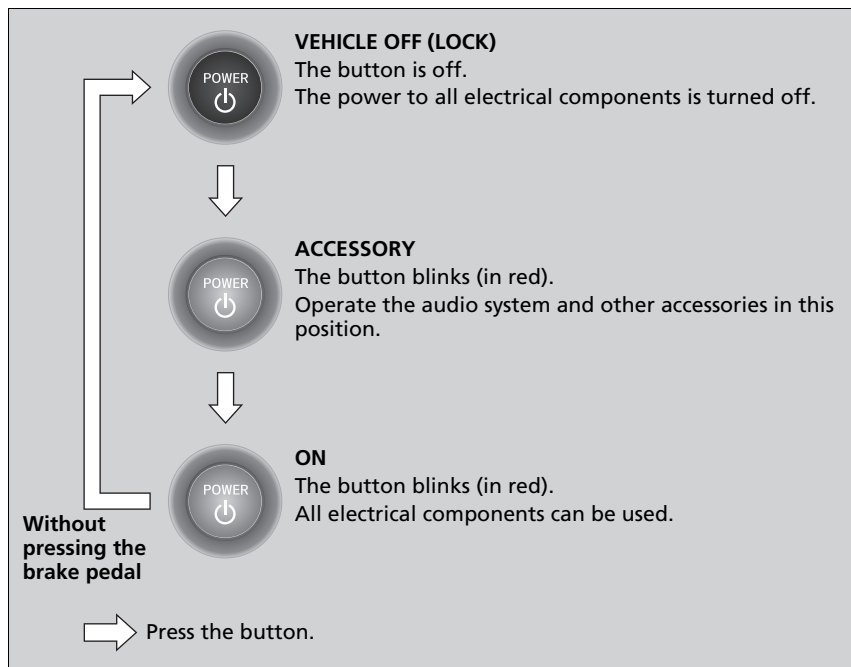
The sunshade can be opened or closed to adjust the amount of light that enters the cabin.

When you use the sunshade switch to open the sunshade, the panoramic roof does not move.

The sunshade cannot be fully closed if the panoramic roof is open. When you close the sunshade with the panoramic roof open, the sunshade stops close to the panoramic roof glass. When you push the switch forward again, the sunshade and the panoramic roof close together.

## POWER Button

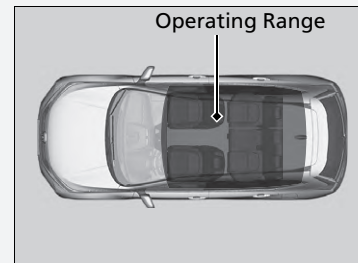
### Changing the Power Mode



### POWER Button

#### POWER Button Operating Range

You can start the power system when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.



If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the power system may not start when you push the **POWER** button. If the power system does not start, refer to the following link.

**➤ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 704

The power system may also run if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:

The **POWER** button is on (in red), if the power system is on.

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

## ■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in **P** and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

## ■ Keyless Remote Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

### ■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

### ■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

## ⌘ Keyless Remote Reminder

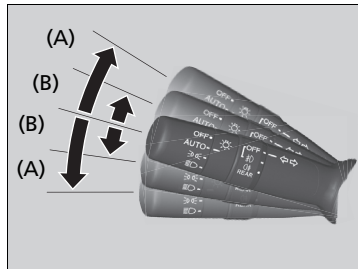
When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and all the doors are closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been turned on, you can no longer change the **POWER** button mode or restart the power system. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to activate. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also activate even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

## Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ (A): Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

### ■ (B): One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

- ▶ If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

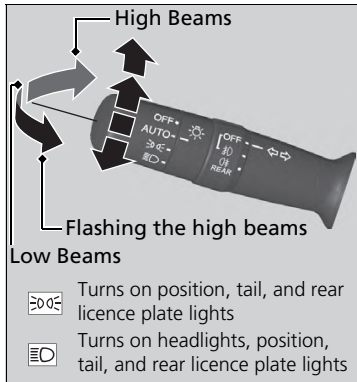
### ▶ Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

▶ Indicators P. 100

# Light Switches

## Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting.

### High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

### Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

### Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

### Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The transmission is in **P**.
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to **OFF** to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The transmission is taken out of **P** and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

## Light Switches

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

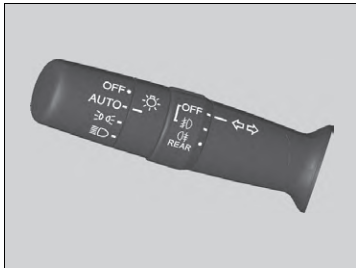
When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

▶ Indicators P. 111

Do not leave the lights on when the power system is off because it will cause the 12-volt battery to discharge.

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)



Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

The headlights come on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

- ▶ Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

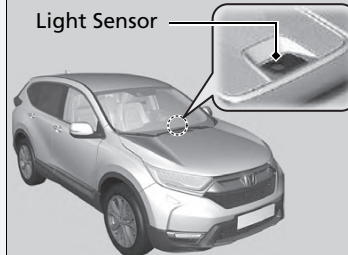
## ▶▶ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.

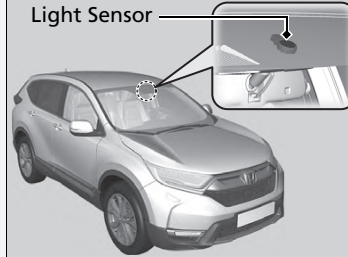
### Models without automatic intermittent wipers

Light Sensor



### Models with automatic intermittent wipers

Light Sensor




## ■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.  
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

## ■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF(LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver’s door.

However, when the switch is in , the position lights remain on.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver’s door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver’s door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

### ⌘ Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.

**Models with colour audio system**

➤ **Customized Features** P. 161

**Models with Display Audio**

➤ **Customized Features** P. 398

### ⌘ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

**Models with colour audio system**

➤ **Customized Features** P. 161

**Models with Display Audio**

➤ **Customized Features** P. 398



## Fog Lights

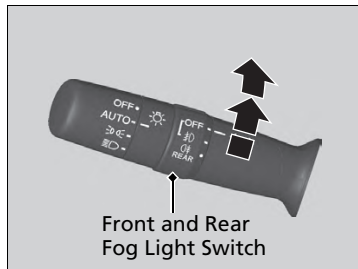
### ■ Front fog lights

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

### ■ Rear fog light

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights are on.

### ■ Front and Rear Fog Lights



#### ■ To turn the front fog lights on

Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the 30 position. The 30 indicator comes on.

#### ■ To turn the front and rear fog lights on

Rotate the switch one position up from the 30 position. The 30 and 03 indicators come on.

#### ■ To turn the rear fog light on

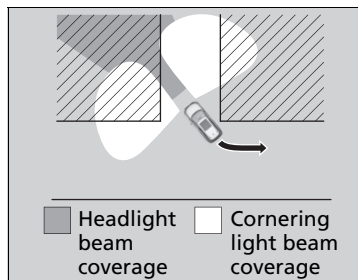
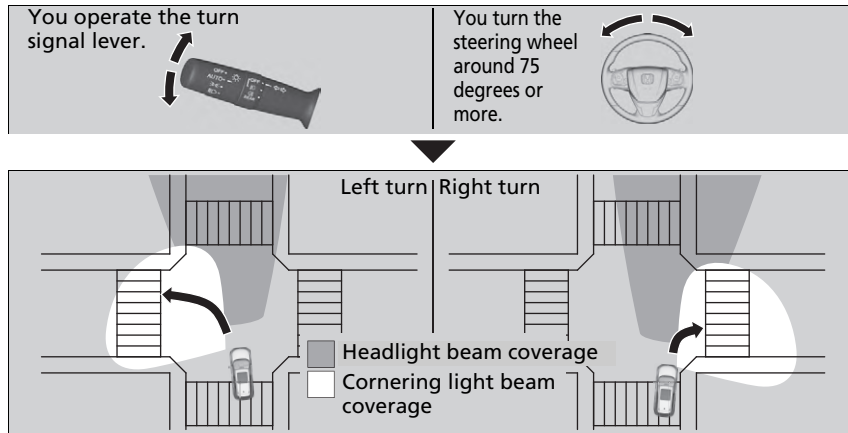
Rotate the switch one position up from the 30 position and then rotate the switch one position down from the 30 position. The 03 indicator stays on.

To turn the rear fog light off, turn the headlight switch to the **OFF** position.

## Active Cornering Lights\*

Enhance the visibility of the corner(s) when making a turn. With the power mode in ON, the headlights on, and the vehicle speed at less than 40 km/h (25 mph), the cornering light(s) comes on either when operating the turn signals or the steering wheel, or put the transmission into **R**.

■ **The corner where you are making a turn is illuminated when:**

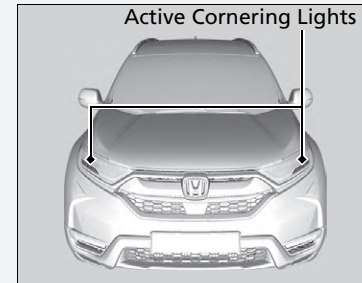


■ **Both front corners are illuminated when:**

You put the transmission into **R**.

### ⚠ Active Cornering Lights\*

The active cornering lights go off automatically after five minutes. To resume the lights on, recreate the same condition; putting the turn signal lever or steering wheel in the centre position, then operate it again, or if the transmission has been in **R**, move it to another position momentarily.



\* Not available on all models

## Daytime Running Lights

---

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

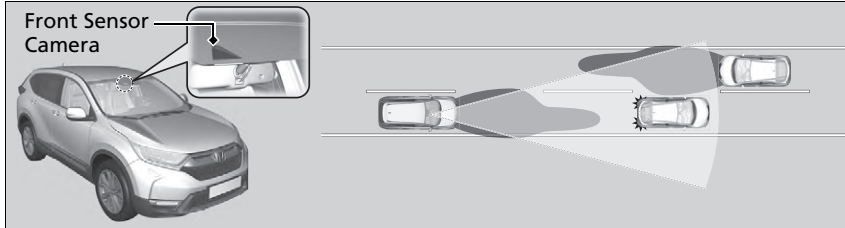
- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO** or **OFF**.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the headlight switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) will turn off the daytime running lights.

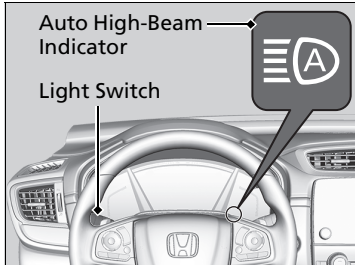
## Auto High-Beam

The front sensor camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.




### How to Use the Auto High-Beam

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and the auto high-beam is activated.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.


- Pull the lever towards you and hold it over two seconds then release it.
- Turn the light switch to  then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

### Auto High-Beam

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

 **Front Sensor Camera** P. 592

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

### ■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When auto high-beam is active, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

#### Switching to high beam:

All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 40 km/h (25 mph) or more.
- There are no preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are few street lights on the road ahead.



#### Switching to low beam:

One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h (15 mph) or less.
- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.


### ■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.


#### Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it or push the lever forward to the high beam position.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and hold it over two seconds then release it.
- Turn the light switch to  and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

#### Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to .

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

### ☒ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

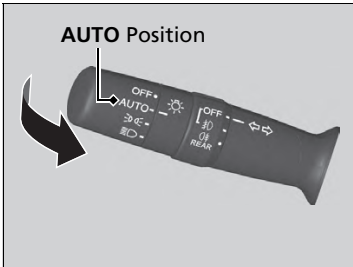
- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected dense fog.

## ■ How to Turn Off the Auto High-Beam

You can turn the auto high-beam system off. If you want to turn the system off or on, set the power mode to ON, then carry out the following procedures while the vehicle is stationary.



### To turn the system off:

With the light switch is in **AUTO**, pull the lever towards you and hold it for at least 40 seconds. After the auto high-beam indicator light blinks twice, release the lever.

### To turn the system on:

With the light switch is in **AUTO**, pull the lever towards you and hold it for at least 30 seconds. After the auto high-beam indicator light blinks once, release the lever.

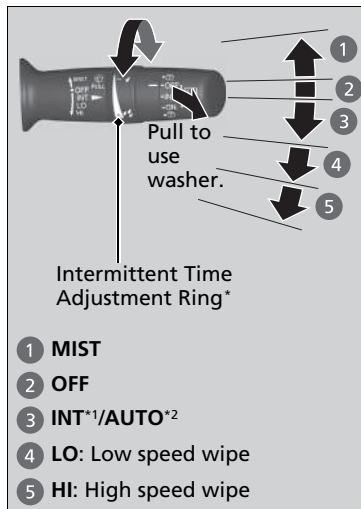
## ☒ How to Turn Off the Auto High-Beam

If you turn the auto high-beam system off, the system does not operate until you turn the system on.

Park in a safe place before turning the system off or on.

## Wipers and Washers

### ■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

#### ■ MIST

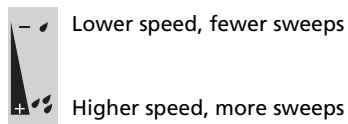
The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

#### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT\*1/AUTO\*2, LO, HI)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

#### ■ Adjusting wiper operation\*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



#### ■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

### » Wipers and Washers

#### NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

#### NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister or heated windscreen\* to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

#### NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

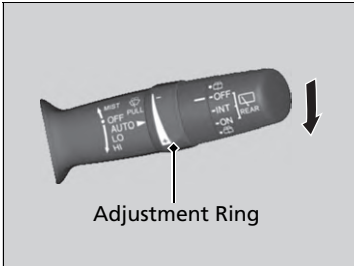
#### Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens. When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting (4) and the LO setting become the same.

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

\*1: Models with manual intermittent operation  
 \*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation  
 \* Not available on all models

## Automatic Intermittent Wipers\*



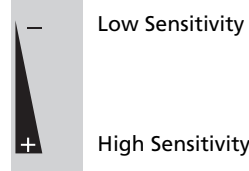
When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windshield wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

### AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rain fall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

### Sensor sensitivity

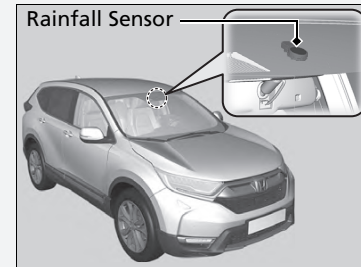


## Wipers and Washers

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

## Automatic Intermittent Wipers\*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



### NOTICE

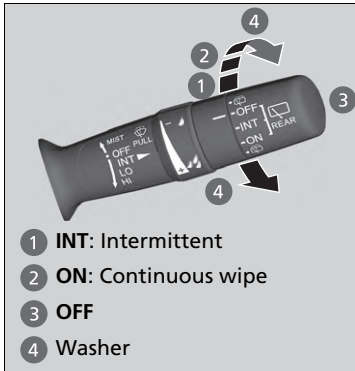
**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Rear Wiper/Washer



The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

### ■ Washer (☒)

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.

Hold it to activate the wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

### ■ Operating in reverse

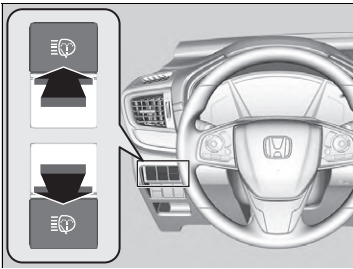
When you shift the transmission to **R** with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
<b>INT</b> *1 (Intermittent) <b>AUTO</b> *2 (Intermittent)	Intermittent
<b>LO</b> (Low speed wipe) <b>HI</b> (High speed wipe)	Continuous

\*1: Models with manual intermittent operation

\*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

## ■ Headlight Washers\*



Turn the headlights on and press the headlight washer button to operate. The headlight washers also operate when you turn the windscreen washers for the first time after the power mode is in ON.

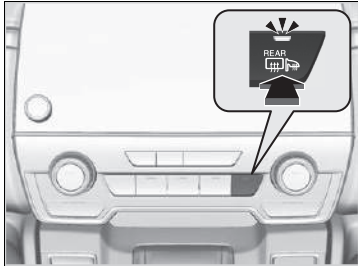
## ▣ Headlight Washers\*

The headlight washers use the same fluid reservoir as the windscreen washers.

\* Not available on all models

## Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button

Press the rear demister and heated door mirror button to demist the rear window and mirrors when the power mode is in ON.



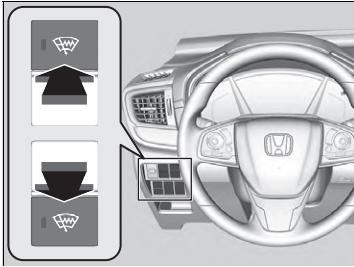
The rear demister and heated door mirror automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

### ⊠ Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted or deiced. Also, do not use the system for a long time when the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

## Heated Windscreen Button\*



Press the heated windscreen button to deice the windscreen at the wiper park area and along the driver's side edge of the windscreen when the power mode is in ON. The heated windscreen will automatically switch off after 15 minutes.

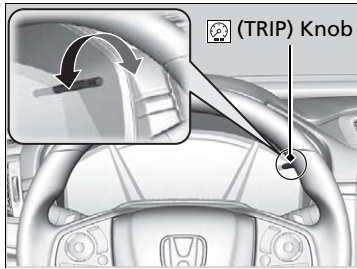
### ⌘ Heated Windscreen Button\*


This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been deiced. Also, do not use the system for a long period when the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

\* Not available on all models

## Brightness Control

### ■ Adjusting the Instrument Panel Brightness



When the brightness of the meter is reduced, you can use the  (TRIP) knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.

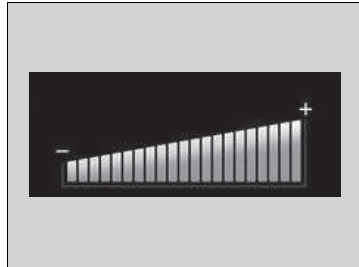
**Brighten:** Turn the knob to the right.

**Dim:** Turn the knob to the left.

Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

### ■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.



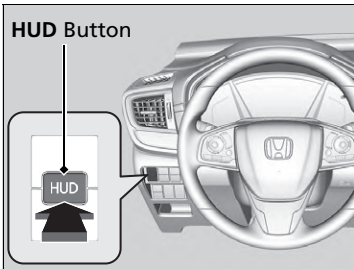
### ☒ Brightness Control

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions have been met:

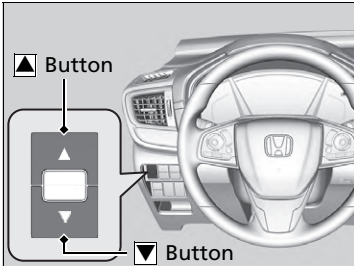
- The power mode is in ON.
- The position lights are turned on.
- The ambient lighting is low.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

## ■ Adjusting the Head-up Display Brightness\*



You can operate the head-up display to press the **HUD** button for about one second when the power mode is in ON.



When the head-up display is on, press and hold the **HUD** button until its brightness level indicator on the driver information interface.

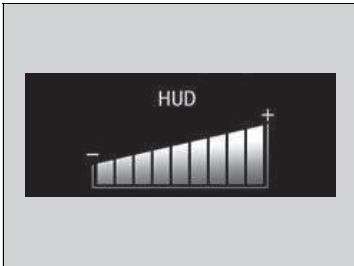
**Brighten:** Press the ▲ button.

**Dim:** Press the ▼ button.

The driver information interface will return to its original state several seconds after you adjust the brightness.

### ■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the driver information interface while you are adjusting it.



\* Not available on all models

## Driving Position Memory System\*

You can store two driver's seat positions (except for power lumbar) with the driving position memory system.

When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote transmitter or the keyless access system, the seat adjusts automatically to one of the two preset positions.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.



### ▶▶ Driving Position Memory System\*

Using the audio/information screen, you can disable the automatic seat adjustment function.

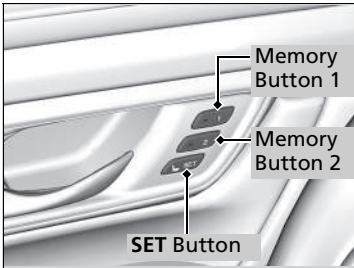
▶ **Customized Features** P. 398

#### System Operation

The system will not operate if:

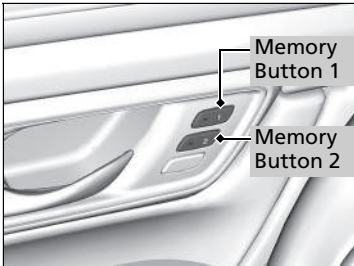
- The vehicle speed is above 5 km/h (3 mph).
- The transmission is out of the **P** position.
- Either memory button is pressed while the seat is in motion.
- The seat position is adjusted while in operation.
- The memory **1** or **2** position is set fully to the rear.

## ■ Storing a Position in Memory



1. Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
2. Press the **SET** button.
  - ▶ The memory button indicator light will blink.
3. Press and hold memory button **1** or **2** within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
  - ▶ Once the seat position has been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on.

## ■ Recalling the Stored Position



1. Put the transmission into **P**.
2. Press a memory button (**1** or **2**).
  - ▶ The indicator light will blink.

The seat will automatically move to the memorized position. When it has finished moving, the indicator light stays on.

### ⊠ Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be cancelled when:

- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

### ⊠ Recalling the Stored Position

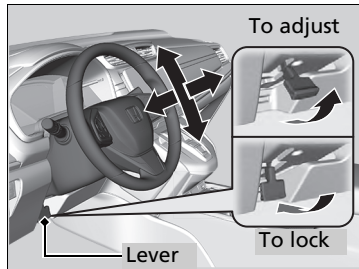
The seat will stop moving if you:

- Press the **SET** button, or a memory button (**1** or **2**).
- Adjust the seat position.
- Put the transmission into a position other than **P**.



## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
  - ▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
  - ▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
  - ▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

### Adjusting the Steering Wheel

#### **WARNING**

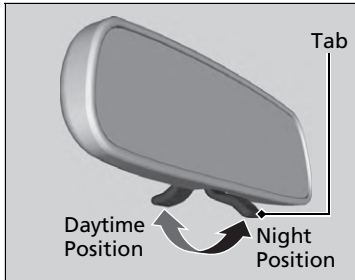
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

## Interior Rearview Mirror

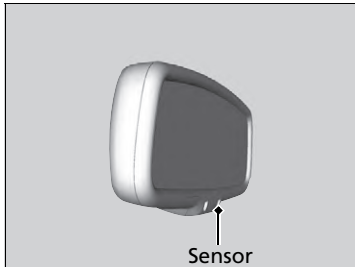
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

### ■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions\*



Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

### ■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based in inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

### ☒ Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

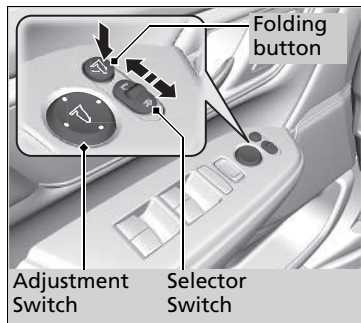
➤ **Front Seats** P. 247

### ☒ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in **R**.

\* Not available on all models

## Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Mirror position adjustment

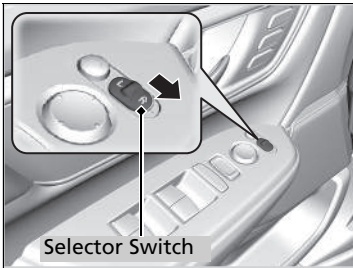
**L/R selector switch:** Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

**Mirror position adjustment switch:** Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

### ■ Folding door mirrors

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

## ■ Reverse Tilt Door Mirror\*



If activated, the passenger side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the transmission into **R**; this improves close-in visibility on the passenger side of the vehicle when backing up. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you take the transmission out of **R**.

To activate this feature, set the power mode to ON, and slide the selector switch to the passenger's side.

## ■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function \*

### ■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the remote transmitter twice within 10 seconds, and hold it.

▶ You can release the button once the mirrors start folding in automatically. Touch the door lock button on either front door or the tailgate twice within 10 seconds.

▶ The mirrors start folding in automatically.

### ■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors and the tailgate using the remote transmitter. Open the driver's door.

▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

Grab the door handle on either front door and unlock all doors. Open the driver's door.

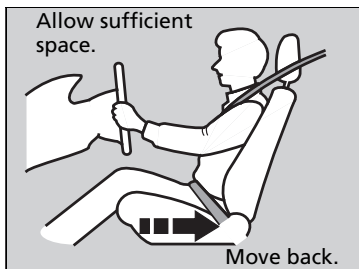
▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

## ⌘ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function \*

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

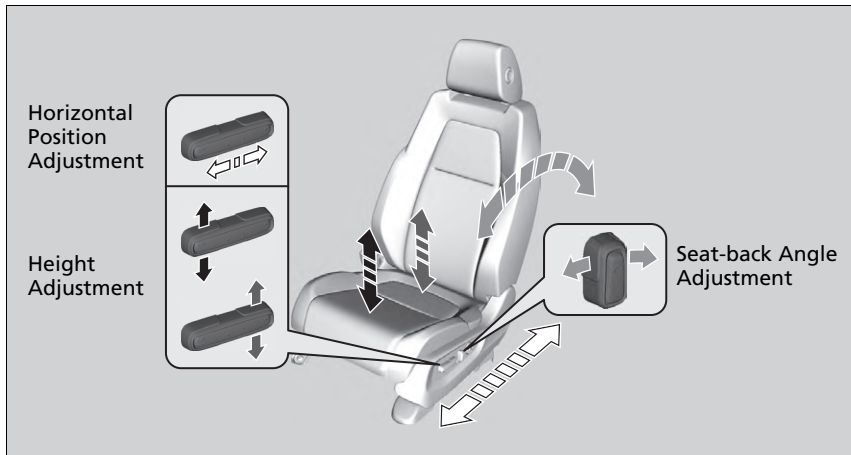
## Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

### ■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

#### ■ Adjusting the front power seat\*



\* Not available on all models

Continued

### Seats

## ⚠ WARNING

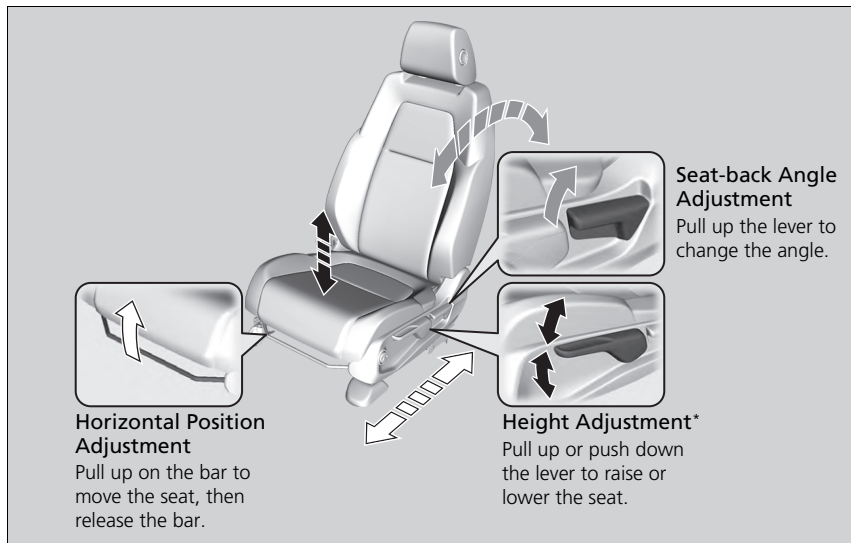
Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

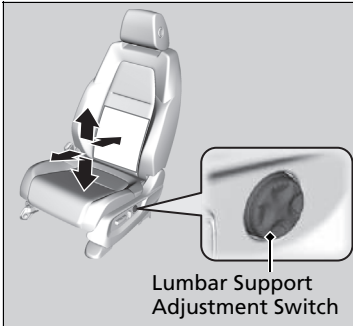
Always make seat adjustments before driving.

## ■ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)\*



## ▣ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)\*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.



■ **Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch\***

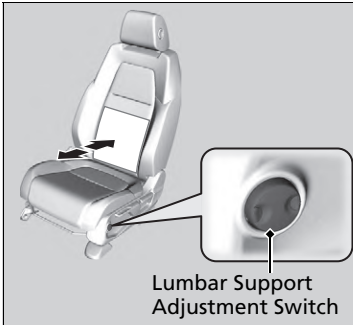
**Models with front power seat**

**Press the top:** To move the lumbar support up.

**Press the bottom:** To move the lumbar support down.

**Press the front:** To increase the entire lumbar support.

**Press the rear:** To decrease the entire lumbar support.



**Models with front manual seat**

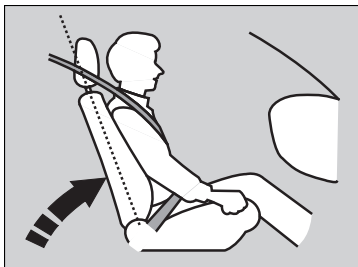
**Press the front:** To increase the entire lumbar support.

**Press the rear:** To decrease the entire lumbar support.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

## ► Adjusting the Seat-Backs

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.**

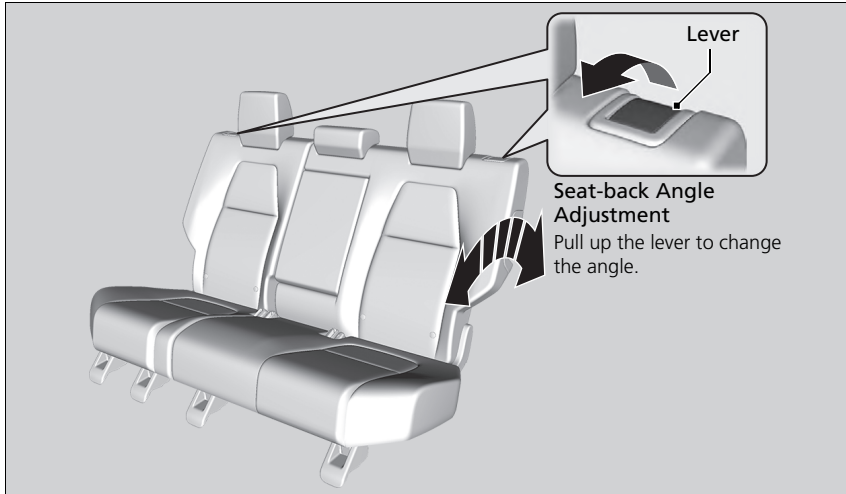
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

## Rear Seats

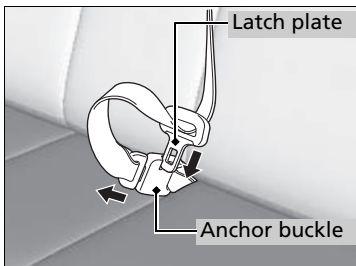
### ■ Adjusting the Seat Positions



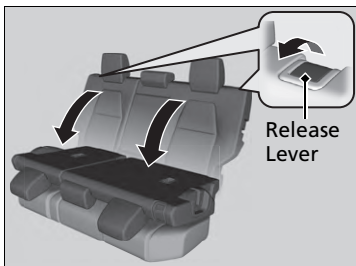
### ☒ Rear Seats

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

## ■ Folding Down the Rear Seats

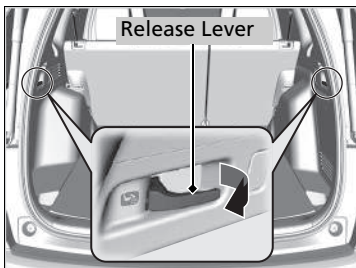


1. Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
  - ❏ **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor** P. 57
3. Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position. Put the armrest back into the seat-back.



### From the rear seat side

4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.



### From the luggage area side

4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

## ❏ Folding Down the Rear Seats

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.**

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the luggage area.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

**Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.**

## Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the power system is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

### ▶▶ Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

#### **WARNING**

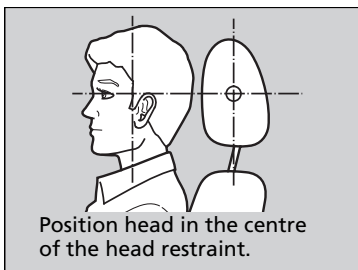
**Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.**

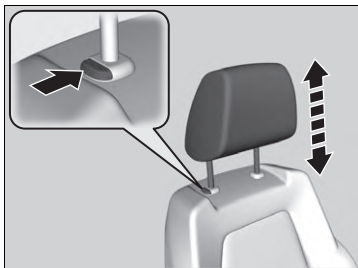
## Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

### ■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.



**To raise the head restraint:** Pull it upward.

**To lower the head restraint:** Push it down while pressing the release button.

### ► Adjusting the Front Head Restraints

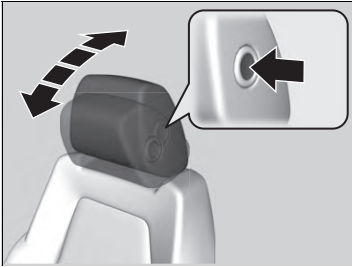
#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.**

**Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.**

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.



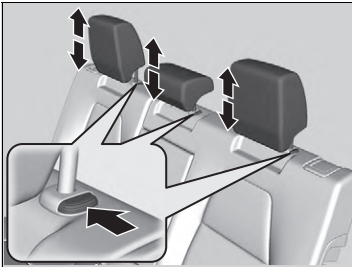
**To tilt the head restraint forward:**

Push the back of it forward.

**To tilt the head restraint backward:**

Push it backward while pressing the release button on the side of the head restraint.

**Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position**



A passenger sitting in the rear seat seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

**To raise the head restraint:**

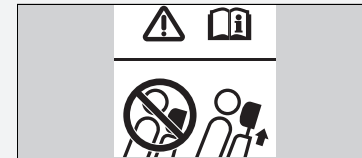
Pull it upward.

**To lower the head restraint:**

Push it down while pressing the release button.

✕ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position

When you use the head restraint in the rear centre seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.



## ■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

### To remove a head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

### To reinstall a head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

## ⌘ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

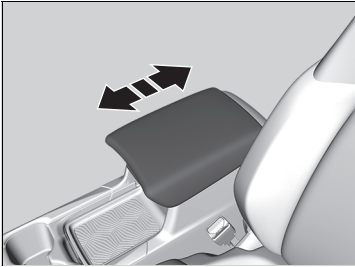
### **WARNING**

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

## Armrest

### ■ Using the Front Seat Armrest

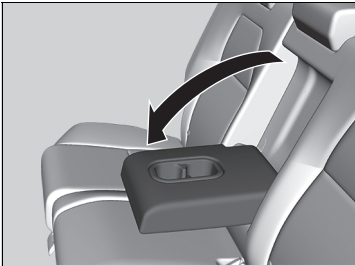


The console lid can be used as an armrest.

**To adjust:**

Slide the armrest to a desired position.

### ■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest

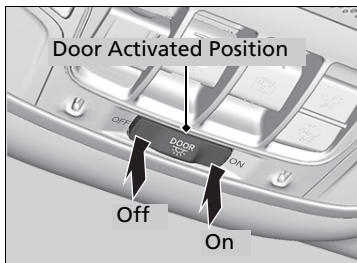


Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.



## Interior Lights

### Interior Light Switches



#### ■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

#### ■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

#### ■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

### Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

**Models with colour audio system**

➤ **Customized Features** P. 161

**Models with Display Audio**

➤ **Customized Features** P. 398

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.


To avoid draining the 12-volt battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the power system is off.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.


## Map Lights



### ■ Front seat


The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the  (map light) button.

### ■ Rear seat

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the  (map light) button.

## Map Lights

### Models with panoramic roof

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and a door is opened or interior light switch is in the **ON** position, the rear map light will not go off when you press the  (map light) button.

## ■ Luggage Area Lights



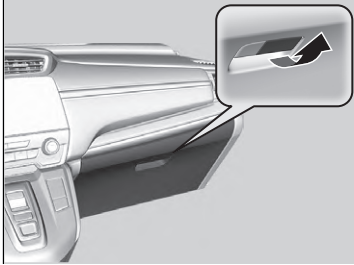
The luggage area lights come on when you open the tailgate.

## ▣ Luggage Area Lights

The luggage area lights do not have an on/off switch. In case the tailgate is left open for an extended period of time, they automatically go out in 30 minutes.

## Storage Items

### ■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

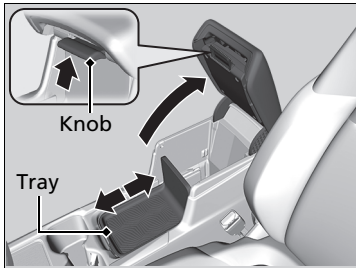
### » Glove Box

#### **⚠ WARNING**

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

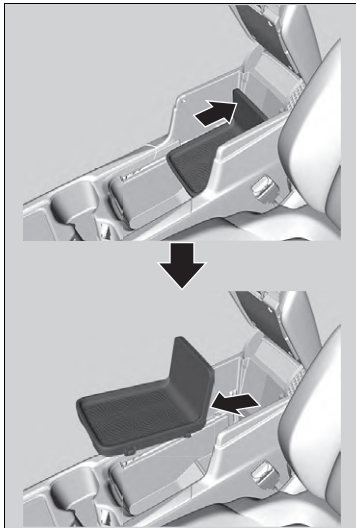
## ■ Centre Console Box



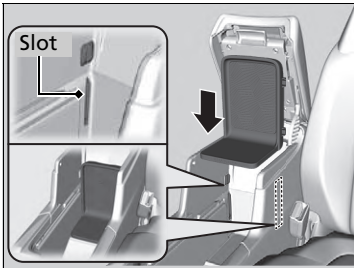
To open, pull the knob. You can change the position of the tray by sliding it forward or back.

### ■ Removing the tray

1. Slide the tray back.



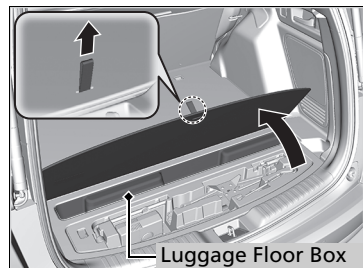
2. Lift the edge of the tray up slightly, then pull it out.



Storing the tray:

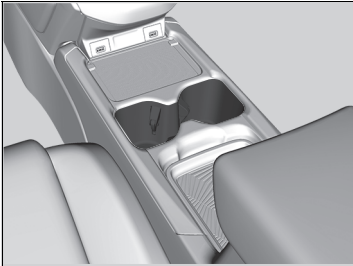
Line the tray up with the slots located at the rear section of the console box, and then push it down all the way until it is in the locked position.

## ■ Luggage Floor Box



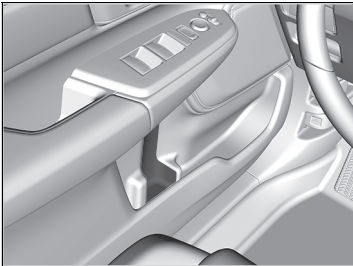
Pull up the luggage area lower floor lid.

## ■ Beverage Holders



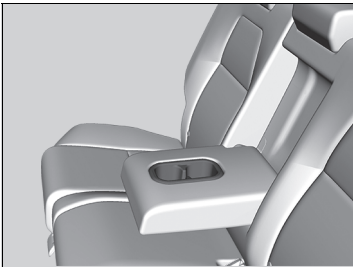
### ■ Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.



### ■ Front door side beverage holders

Are located on the both of front door side pockets.



### ■ Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

## » Beverage Holders

### NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

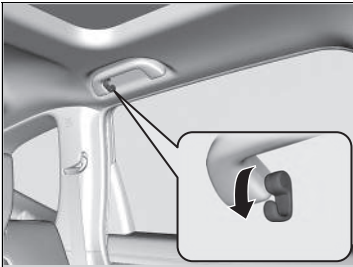




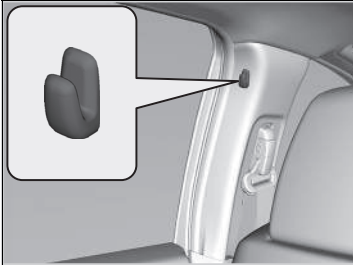
■ **Rear door side beverage holders**

Are located on the both of rear door side pockets.

## ■ Coat Hook



There are coat hooks on the rear left and right grab handles. Pull it down to use it.

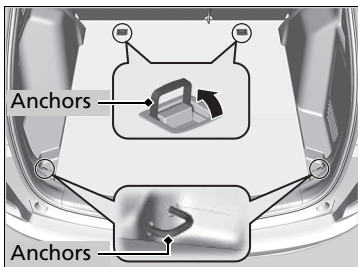


There are coat hooks on the left and right door pillars.

## ☒ Coat Hook

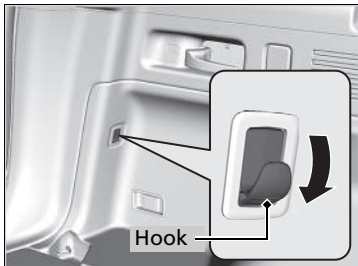
The coat hooks are not designed for large or heavy items.

## ■ Tie-down Anchors



The tie-down anchors on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

## ■ Luggage Hook



The luggage hook in the luggage area can be used to hang light items.

## ⌘ Tie-down Anchors

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

## ⌘ Luggage Hook

### NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg on the luggage hook. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hook.

## ■ Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, press and release the indent. To close, press it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.



### ■ Conversation mirror\*

The sunglasses holder comes with a mirror. Open the sunglasses holder fully, then push it back to the first detent.

You can use the mirror to view the rear seats.

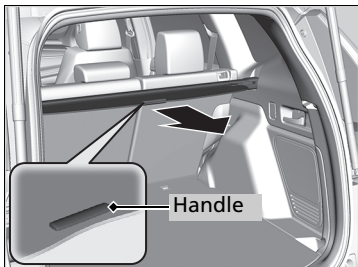
## ☒ Sunglasses Holder

Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

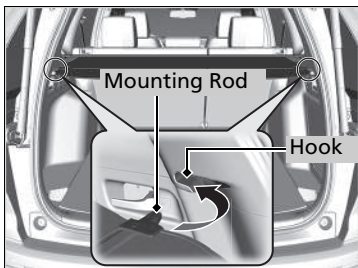
## ■ Luggage Area Cover



The luggage area cover can be used to conceal items in the luggage area and protect them from direct sunlight.

### ■ To extend:

Lift up on the handle at the centre edge of the cover to unhook each end, then pull the cover rearward and clip the mounting rods in the hooks at both sides of the tailgate opening.



## ▣ Luggage Area Cover

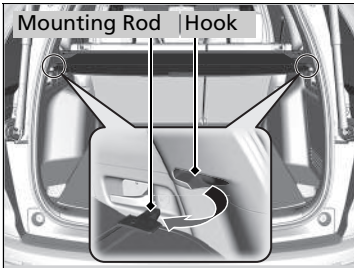
Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the luggage area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

To prevent luggage area cover damage:

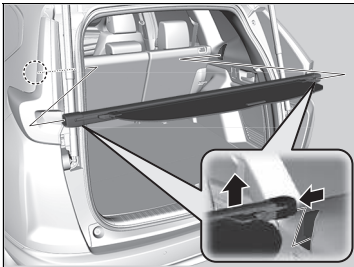
- Do not place items on the luggage area cover.
- Do not put weight on the luggage area cover.

Be sure that each mounting rod sets in its respective retention groove when you retract the rear luggage cover. If they are not set in the grooves, the rods may rattle as they contact the surrounding surfaces.



■ **To retract:**

Slip the rods out of the hooks, then slowly roll it back until it is completely retracted.



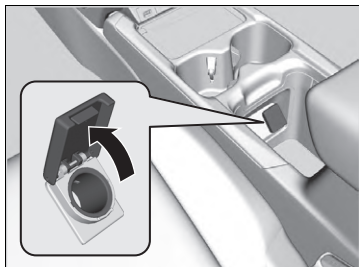
■ **To remove:**

Push either end of the housing inward, then lift it out of its position.

## Other Interior Convenience Items

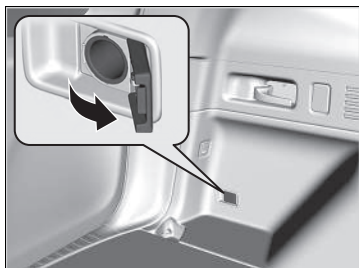
### ■ Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



#### ■ Centre console box

Slide the tray back and open the cover to use it.



#### ■ Luggage area

Open the cover to use it.

### ►► Accessory Power Sockets

#### NOTICE


Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

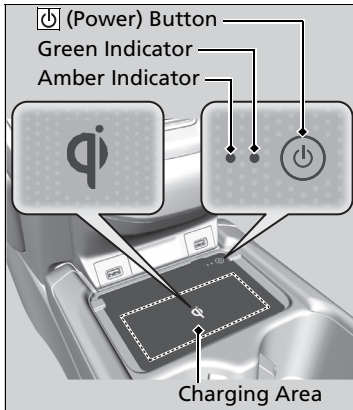
The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.


To prevent 12-volt battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the power system on.

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

## ■ Wireless Charger\*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the  mark as follows:



1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the  (power) button.
  - ▶ When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
  - ▶ The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
  - ▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
  - ▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

## ▶▶ Wireless Charger\*


### **WARNING**

**Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.**

- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the power system is off. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.


When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

"Qi" and  marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).



### ■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simultaneously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Move the device to the centre of the charging area where  is located.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

### ▶▶ Wireless Charger\*

#### NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charge area while charging.  
The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also precision machines such as watches may malfunction.


In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as TV station, electric power plant, or petrol station.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and the device to heat up.

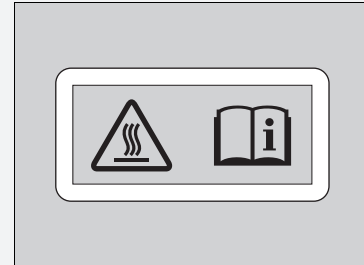
 appears on the audio/information screen when the device is being charged by the wireless charger.

Wireless Charger\*

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:

- All doors or the tailgate are closed.  
To avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

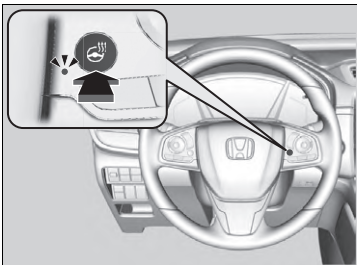


Burn risk:

Any metal objects placed between pad and device may become hot.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Heated Steering Wheel\*



The power mode must be in ON to use the heated steering wheel.

Press the button on the right side of the steering wheel.

When a comfortable temperature is reached, press the button again to turn it off.

The heated steering wheel is turned off every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

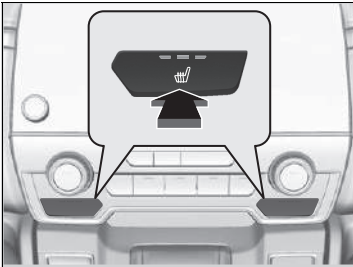
## ▣ Heated Steering Wheel\*

Do not use the heated steering wheel continuously when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

## Front Seat Heaters\*



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters.



Press the seat heater button:

- Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
- Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
- Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
- Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is in ON after it is turned off, the previous setting of seat heaters is maintained.

## Front Seat Heaters\*

### **⚠ WARNING**

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the seat heater will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the seat heater shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Rear Seat Heaters\*



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters.

There is no heater in the rear centre seating position.

Press the seat heater button:

Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)

Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)

Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)

Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

## ▣ Rear Seat Heaters\*

### **⚠ WARNING**

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the seat heater will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the seat heater shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

## Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.


### Models with colour audio system

Temperature Control Dial\*<sup>1</sup>

Fan Control Dial\*<sup>1</sup>

AUTO Button\*<sup>1</sup>

 (Recirculation) Button

 (Fresh Air) Button

ON/OFF (ON/OFF) Button\*<sup>1</sup>

A/C (Air Conditioning) Button\*<sup>1</sup>

  
Air flows from dashboard vents, and back of the centre console.

  
Air flows from floor and dashboard vents, and back of the centre console.

  
Air flows from floor vents.

  
Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.

\*1: Left-hand drive models shown. For the right-hand drive models, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the left-hand drive model.

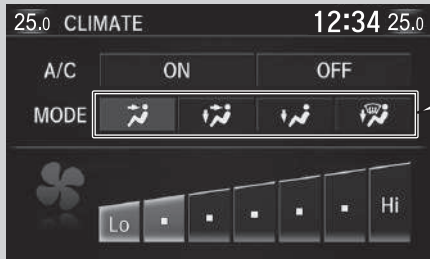
### Using Automatic Climate Control

#### Models with Display Audio

Press the **CLIMATE** button to display A/C, MODE, and fan control information on the audio/information screen to operate manually. Select icon to turn on or off A/C, change the vent mode, or change the fan speed.

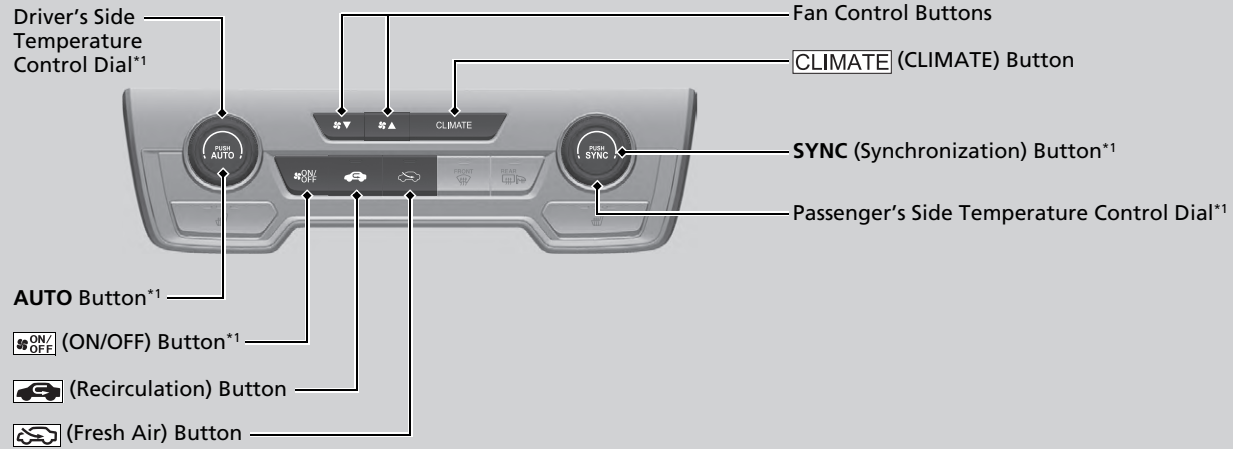
If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

Models with Display Audio



A callout box containing four icons and their descriptions:

- Air flows from dashboard vents, and back of the centre console.
- Air flows from floor and dashboard vents, and back of the centre console.
- Air flows from floor vents.
- Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.



\*1 : Left-hand drive models shown. For the right-hand drive models, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the left-hand drive model.


Use the system when the power system is on.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.



#### Models with colour audio system


2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.


#### Models with Display Audio

2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side control dial.
3. Press the  (on/off) button to cancel.

### ■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the  (recirculation) or  (fresh air) button to switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

 Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

 Fresh air mode (indicator on): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.


#### ▶▶ Using Automatic Climate Control

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on AUTO, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

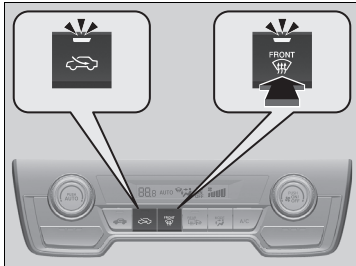
Pressing the  button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.


While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.




## ■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

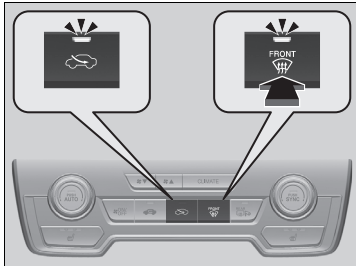
### Models with colour audio system



Pressing the  (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the  button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

### Models with Display Audio



## ►► Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

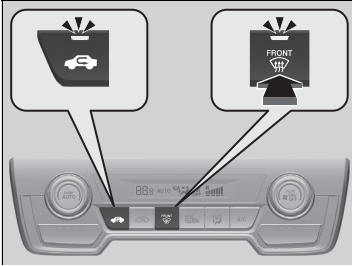
**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

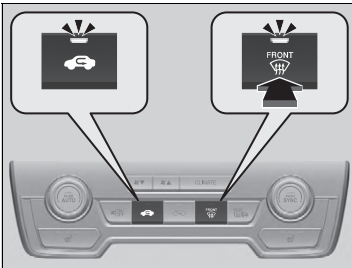
■ To rapidly defrost the windows

Models with colour audio system



1. Press the  button (indicator on).
2. Press the  button (indicator on).

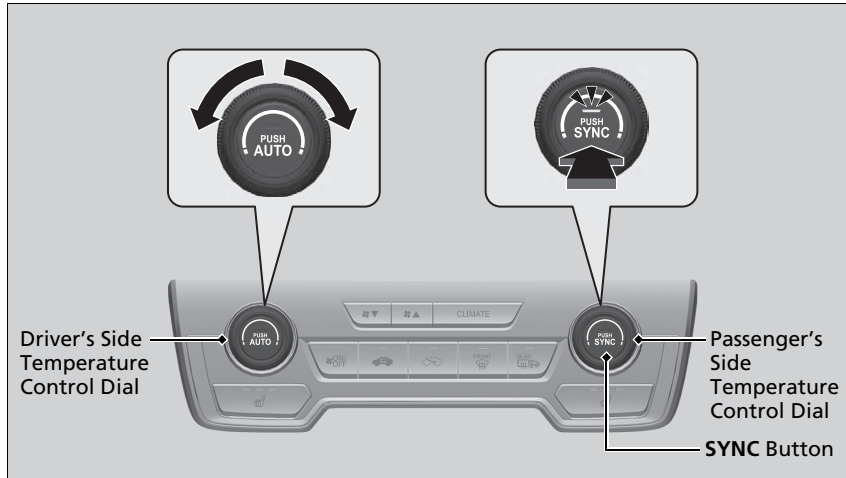
Models with Display Audio



► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

## ■ Synchronization Mode\*




You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
  - The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

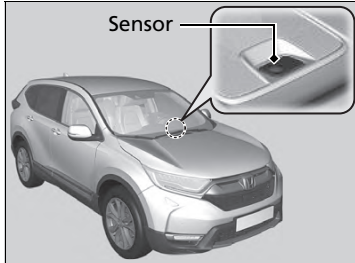
Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.

## ☒ Synchronization Mode\*

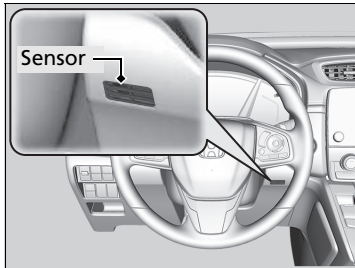
When you press the  button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is in synchronization mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can not be set separately.

## Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.





# Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

## Audio System

About Your Audio System.....	288
USB Port(s).....	289
Auxiliary Input Jack * .....	290
Audio System Theft Protection .....	291
Audio Remote Controls.....	292
<b>Audio System Basic Operation</b> .....	295, 321
<b>Audio Error Messages</b> .....	383
<b>General Information on the Audio System</b> .....	385
<b>Customized Features</b> .....	390, 398
<b>Hands-Free Telephone System</b> ....	426, 447

## Emergency Call (eCall)\*

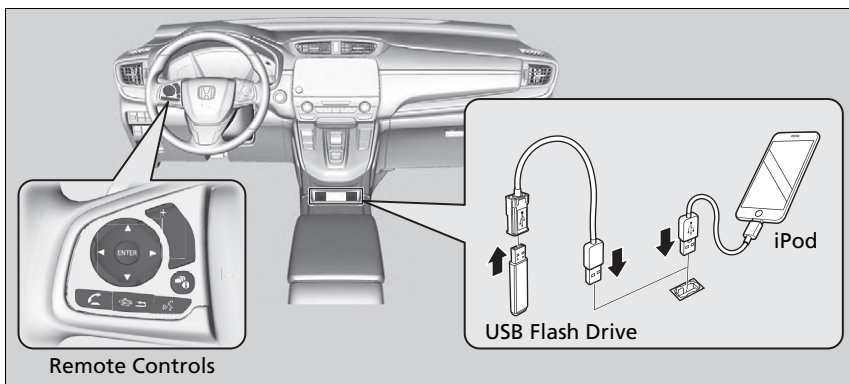
Automatic emergency call.....	479
Manual emergency call .....	481

\* Not available on all models

## About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone, and *Bluetooth*® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface\*.



### About Your Audio System

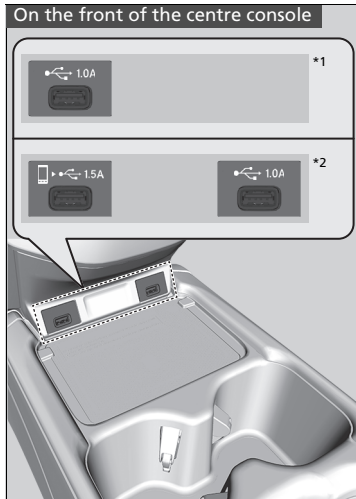
iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

#### Key Off Operation

After you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, you can use the audio system for up to 30 minutes per driving cycle. However, whether you can continue using the audio system depends on the battery condition. Repeatedly using this feature may drain the battery.

## USB Port(s)

Install the iPod USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.



### ■ On the front of the centre console

#### USB Port (1.0A)

The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on a USB flash drive, connecting a mobile phone, and charging devices.

#### USB Port (1.5A)\*

The USB port (1.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with smartphone connection, Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

- ▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

### ⌘ USB Port(s)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognise the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit [www.apple.com/ipod](http://www.apple.com/ipod).

The USB port can supply up to 1.5A/2.5A of power. It does not output 1.5A/2.5A unless the device requests.

For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

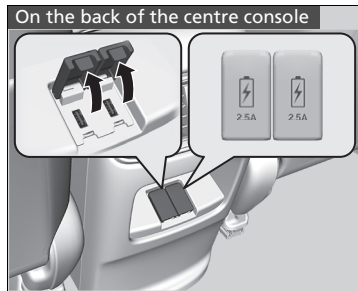
Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

\*1: Models with colour audio system

\*2: Models with Display Audio

\* Not available on all models



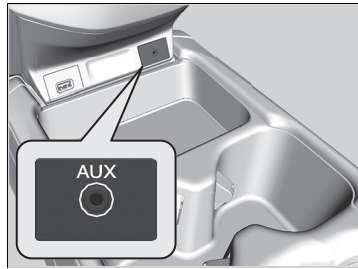


### ■ On the back of the centre console\*

The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

## Auxiliary Input Jack\*

Use the jack to connect devices.



Connect a device to the input jack using a 3.5 mm stereo miniplug.

- ▶ The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.

### ▶▶ USB Port(s)

#### ▶▶ USB Port (2.5A)\*

This port is for battery charge only. You cannot play music even if you have connected a music player to it.

### ▶▶ Auxiliary Input Jack\*

To switch the mode, press any of the audio mode buttons. You can return to AUX mode by pressing the **MEDIA** button.

You cannot use the auxiliary input jack if you replace the audio system.

## Audio System Theft Protection

---

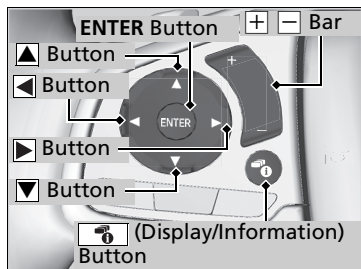
The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

### ■ Reactivating the audio system

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
  - ▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognise the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

## Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface or head-up display\*.



### ▲ ▼ Buttons

Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through the audio mode as follows:

#### Models with colour audio system

FM1→FM2→DAB1→DAB2→LW→MW→USB/iPod→Bluetooth® Audio→AUX

#### Models with Display Audio

FM→DAB→LW→MW→USB→iPod→Bluetooth® Audio→Apps→Audio Apps

### Models with Display Audio


#### ENTER Button


- When listening to a USB flash drive
1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
  2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a folder.
  3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of tracks in that folder.
  4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

### Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the  (Hang-up/back) button\* to go back to the previous command or cancel a command.

Press the  (Display/information) button to switch display.

➤ **Switching the Display** P. 147









- When listening to an iPod
  1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
  2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a category.
  3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.
  4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.
    - ▶ Press **ENTER** and press ▲ or ▼ repeatedly until the desired mode you want to listen to is displayed.
- When listening to *Bluetooth*® Audio
  1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the track list.
  2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

⊕ ⊖ **(Volume) Bar**

**Press** ⊕: To increase the volume.

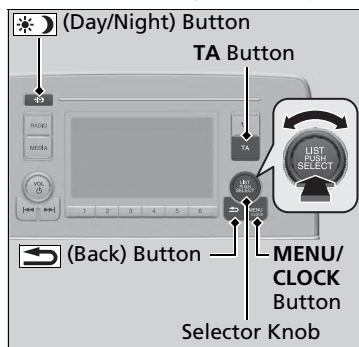
**Press** ⊖: To decrease the volume.

### **Buttons**

- When listening to the radio
  - Press** : To select the next preset radio station.
  - Press** : To select the previous preset radio station.
  - Press and hold** : To select the next strong station.
  - Press and hold** : To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Audio
  - Press** : To skip to the next song.
  - Press** : To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive or *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Audio
  - Press and hold** : To skip to the next folder.
  - Press and hold** : To go back to the previous folder.

## Models with colour audio system

To use the audio system, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



Use the selector knob or **MENU/CLOCK** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

**Selector knob:** Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

## Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

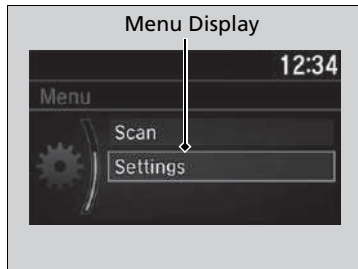
Press to enter.

### Menu Items

- **Adjust Clock** P. 180
- **Wallpaper Setup** P. 299
- **Display Setup** P. 302
- **Scan** P. 308, 310, 317
- **Play Mode** P. 314, 317
- **RDS Settings** P. 304
- **DAB Settings** P. 310
- **Bluetooth** P. 318


Press the buttons on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

- **Audio Remote Controls** P. 292






**MENU/CLOCK button:** Press to select any mode.


The available modes include the wallpaper, display, clock, language setup, and play modes. Play mode choices include scan, random, repeat, and so on.

 **(Back) button:** Press to go back to the previous display.

**TA button:** Press to activate the TA station.

 **(Day/Night) button:** Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

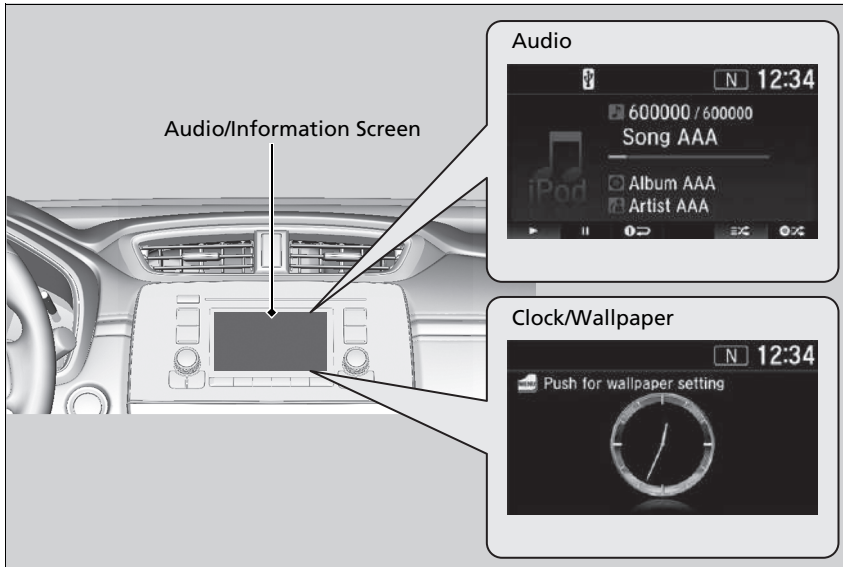
Press the  button, then adjust the brightness using .

- ▶ Each time you press the  button, the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

## Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

### ■ Switching the Display











### ■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

### ■ Clock/Wallpaper

Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

### ■ Change display

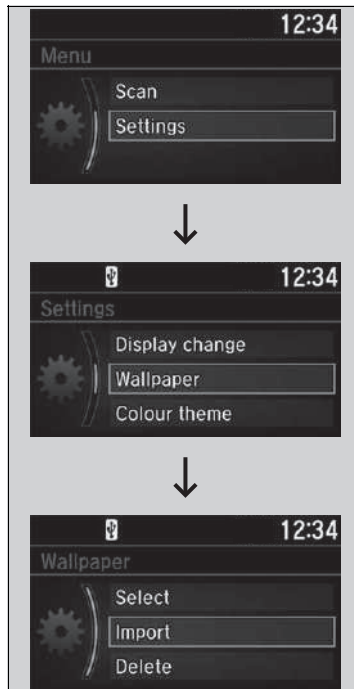
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Display change**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
  - ▶ If you want to return to the audio/information screen, select **Audio**.

## Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.











1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.  
▶ **USB Port(s)** P. 289
2. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
3. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Import**, then press .  
▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Rotate to select a desired picture, then press .  
▶ The selected picture is displayed.
7. Press to save the picture.
8. Press to select **OK**.
9. Rotate to select a location to save the picture, then press .  
▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

### Wallpaper Setup








- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 480 x 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the error message appears.
- The wallpaper setup is limited while driving.

Continued





### ■ Select wallpaper

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Select**, then press 
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a desired wallpaper, then press .


### ■ To view wallpaper once it is set

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Display change**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
5. Press the  (Back) button until the top screen is displayed.

### ■ Delete wallpaper

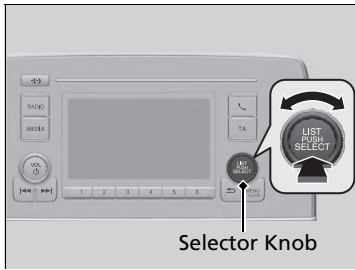
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Delete**, then press 
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
6. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press 
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

### ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

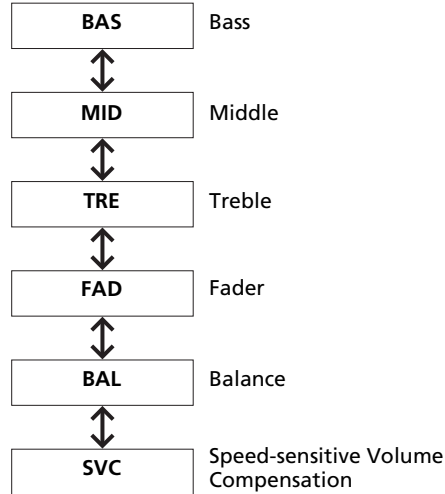
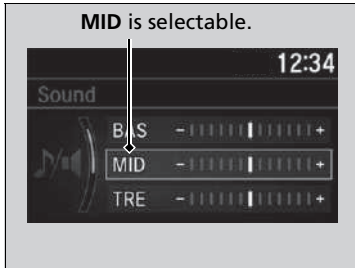
To go back to the previous screen, press the  (Back) button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

## Adjusting the Sound



Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button and rotate to select **Sound**, then press . Rotate to scroll through the following choices:



Rotate to adjust the sound setting, then press .

### Adjusting the Sound









The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

## Display Setup

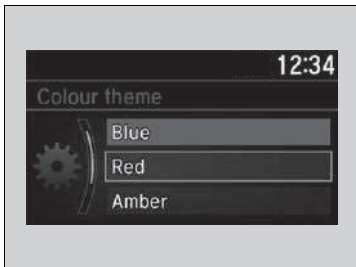
You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.







### ■ Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Display adjustment**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Brightness**, then press .
5. Rotate  to adjust the setting, then press .

### ■ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

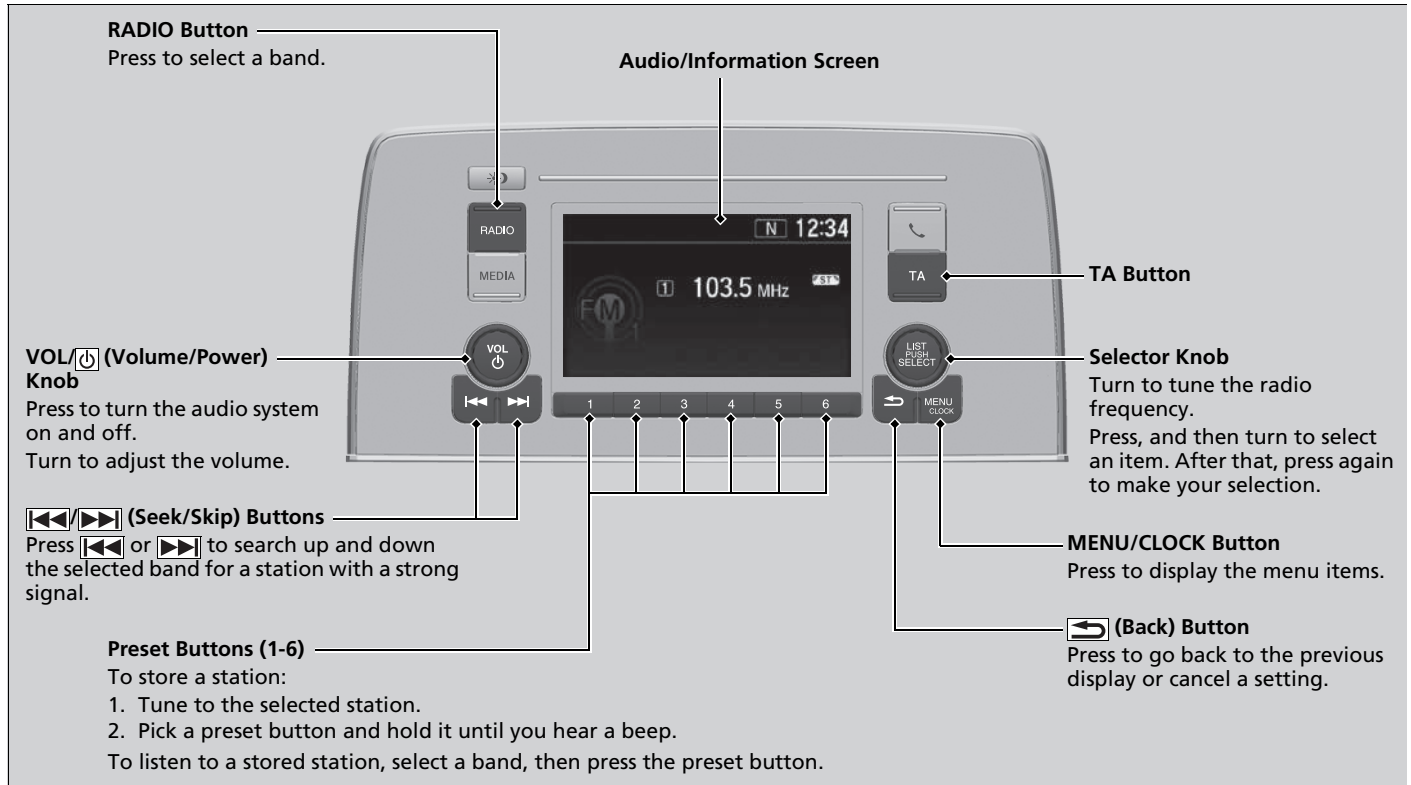


1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Colour theme**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select the setting you want, then press .

### ✎ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black level** settings in the same manner.

## Playing AM/FM Radio






FM mode

## ■ Radio Data System (RDS)




Provides convenient automated services related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Press  while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate  to select the station, then press .







### ■ Update List

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press  while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate  to select **Update list**, then press .

### ■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **RDS settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Radio text**, then press 
  - ▶ Select **Radio text** again to turn it off.

## ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

You can store 12 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset button memory. AM has two types of frequencies LW and MW, and each lets you store six stations. FM1 and FM2 let you store six stations each.

### Switching the Audio Mode


Press the audio source selecting buttons on the steering wheel.

▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 292

## ▶▶ Radio Data System (RDS)







When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Turning the Alternative Frequency (AF) function on and off turns the RDS on and off.

Pressing  switches the function between on and off.







### ■ Alternative Frequency (AF)

Automatically changes the frequency of the same programme as you enter different regions.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **RDS settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **AF**, then press .
  - ▶ Select **AF** again to turn it off.

### ■ Regional Programme (REG)







Keeps the same frequency of the stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **RDS settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **REG**, then press .
  - ▶ Select **REG** again to turn it off.



Except AM/FM/DAB mode

### ■ News Programme (News)

Automatically tunes to the news programme.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **RDS settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **News**, then press .
  - ▶ Select **News** again to turn it off.

### ⌘ Radio Data System (RDS)

If the system cannot find any station on **Station list**, a confirmation message for updating the list appears. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press  to update the list.



### ■ Traffic announcement (TA) button

TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode. The last tuned station must be an RDS-capable traffic programme station.

**To turn the function on:** Press the **TA** button. When a traffic announcement begins on your last tuned station, the system automatically switches to the FM mode. TA-INFO appears on the display. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, press the **TA** button again.

**To cancel the function:** Press the **TA** button.

### ☒ Radio Data System (RDS)

#### **TA**

When you press the **TA** button, the **TA** indicator appears on the display.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Pressing the **TA** button while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

Except AM/FM/DAB mode

### ■ Programme type (PTY)/News interrupt function

Allows the system to interrupt with a newscast in any mode. The last tuned station must be the NEWS PTY coded station.

**To activate the function:** Select **News** from **RDS settings** and display the NEWS PTY before changing to other modes. When a newscast begins on your last tuned station, the system automatically switches to the FM mode.

📺 **News Programme (News)** P. 305

The system returns to your last selected mode if changed to another programme, or signal gets weak.




### ■ PTY alarm

The PTY code, ALARM is used for emergency announcements, such as natural disasters. When this code is received, ALARM appears on the display and the system interrupts your audio operation.

AM (LW/MW) mode




### ■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Press  while listening to an AM station.
2. Rotate  to select the station, then press .

### ■ Update List

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press  while listening to an AM station.
2. Rotate  to select **Update list**, then press .



### ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

### ▶▶ Station List

If the system cannot find any station on **Station list**, a confirmation message for updating the list appears. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press  to update the list.

## Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

**Audio/Information Screen**

**RADIO Button**  
Press to select a band.

**VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob**  
Press to turn the audio system on and off.  
Turn to adjust the volume.

**⏮️/⏭️ (Seek/Skip) Buttons**  
Press ⏮️ or ⏭️ to tune a DAB ensemble.

**Preset Buttons (1-6)**  
To store a station:  
1. Tune to the selected station.  
2. Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.  
To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.

**The DAB signal strength indicator appears on the display when the DAB band is selected.**

**Selector Knob**  
Turn to tune the service.  
Press, and then turn to select an item. After that, press again to make your selection.




**MENU/CLOCK Button**  
Press to display the menu items.

**⏪ (Back) Button**  
Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.






## ■ Service List and Ensemble List

### ■ To find an DAB station from Service List or Ensemble List

To find a DAB station from the service list:

1. Press  while selecting the DAB mode.
2. Rotate  to select the station, then press 
  - ▶ If you select **Update list**, the system update the station list.

To find a DAB station from the ensemble list:

1. Press  while selecting the DAB mode.
2. Rotate  to select **Ensemble list**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select the ensemble, then press 
  - ▶ If you select **Update list**, the system update the ensemble list.

### ■ Scan







Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

### ■ Radio Text:

Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **DAB settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Radio text**, then press 
  - ▶ Select **Radio text** again to turn it off.



### ☒ Service List and Ensemble List

You can store 12 DAB stations into the preset button memory. DAB1 and DAB2 let you store 6 stations each.

#### Switching the Audio Mode

Press the audio source selecting buttons on the steering wheel.

#### ▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 292







If the system cannot find a station, a confirmation message for updating the list appears. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press  to update the list.

### ☒ Radio Text:

The **TEXT** indicator appears on the display indicating radio text information.







**■ DAB-Link:**

Automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **DAB settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **DAB-Link**, then press .
  - ▶ Select **DAB-Link** again to turn it off.









**■ FM-Link:**

If the system finds the same station from an FM band, it automatically switches the band.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **DAB settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **FM-Link**, then press .
  - ▶ Select **FM-Link** again to turn it off.

**■ Band select:**

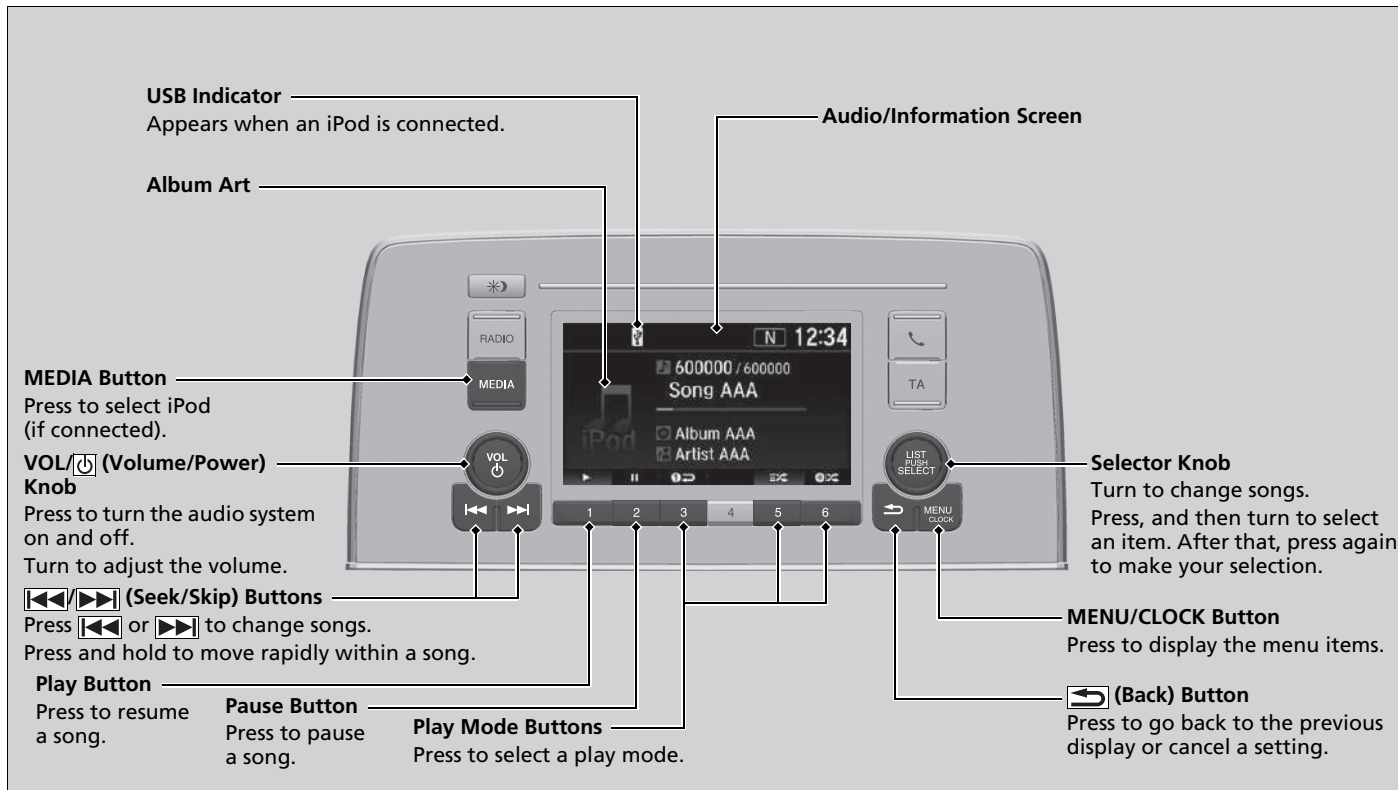
You can select specific bands. This can reduce the time to update the lists, and search for a station.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **DAB settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Band select**, then press .
5. Rotate  to select **Both**, **BandIII** or **L-Band**, then press .

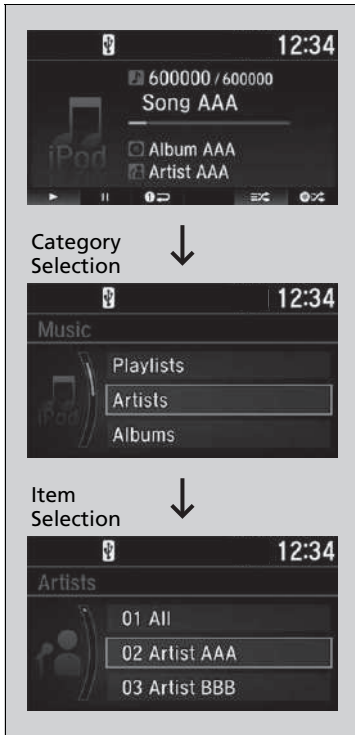
## Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

➔ **USB Port(s)** P. 289



## How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display the iPod music list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press .

- ▶ Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

### ▶▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

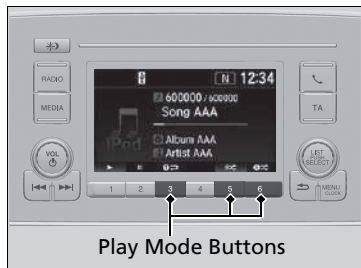
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 383



## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.


### ■ To turn off a play mode


Press the selected button.

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items



 **Shuffle albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, podcasts, audiobooks, and composers) in random order.



 **Shuffle all:** Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, podcasts, audiobooks, and composers) in random order.

 **Repeat one track:** Repeats the current song.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate  to select **Play mode**, then press .

Rotate  to select a mode, then press .

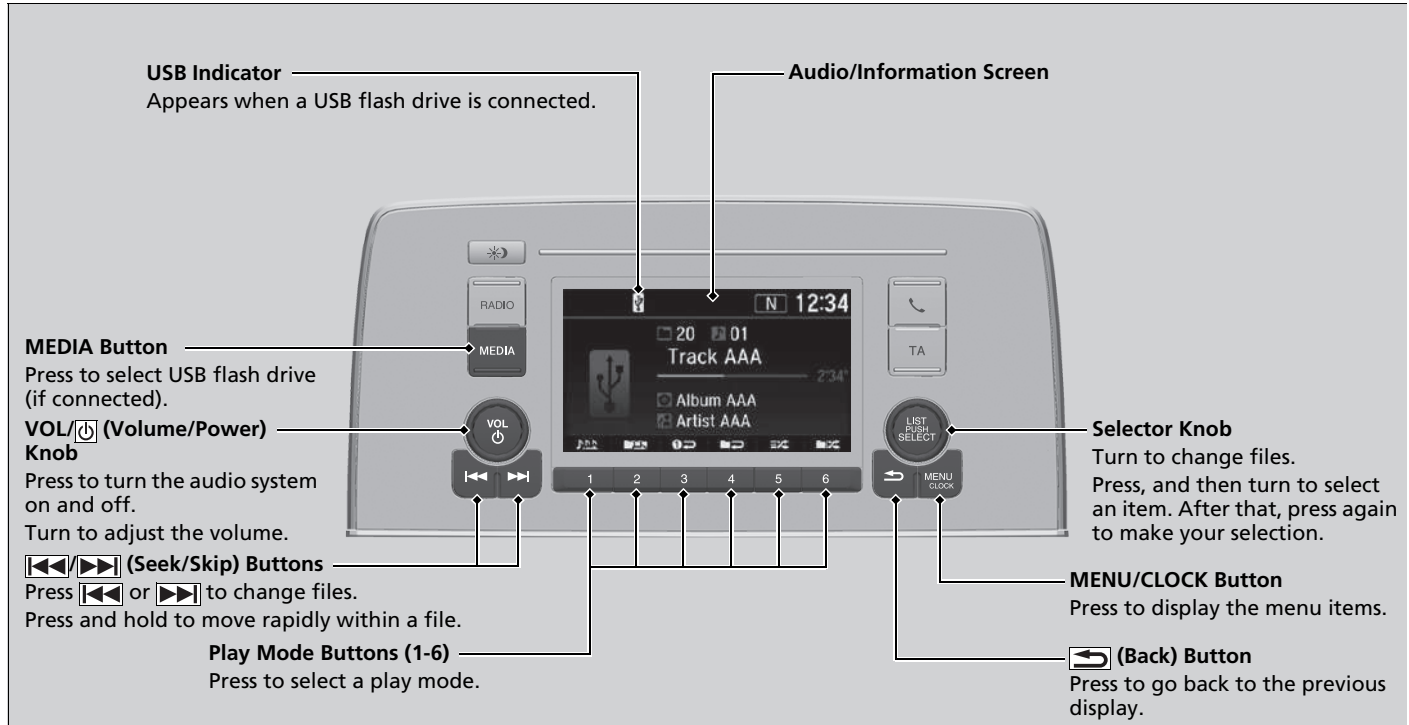
To turn it off, rotate  to select **Normal play**, then press .

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC\*1 or WAV format.

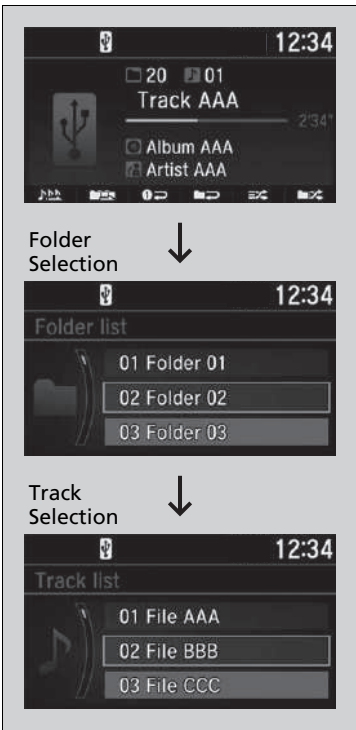
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.






📌 **USB Port(s)** P. 289



\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

## ■ How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob



1. Press  to display a folder list.
2. Rotate  to select a folder.
3. Press  to display a list of files in that folder.
4. Rotate  to select a file, then press .

## ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 385

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable file**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 383

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a file.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

### To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Repeat

**Repeat one folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat one track:** Repeats the current file.

### Random

**Random in folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random all:** Plays all files in random order.

### Scan

**Scan folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play mode**, then press .

Rotate to select a mode, then press .

To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal play**, then press .

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 432

### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

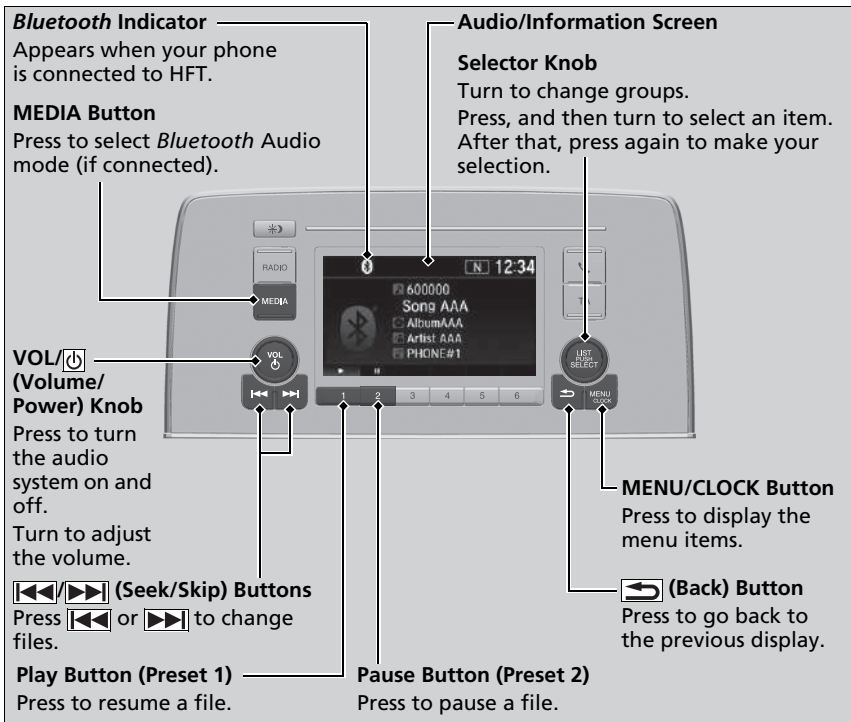
Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. For a list of compatible phones, ask a dealer.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

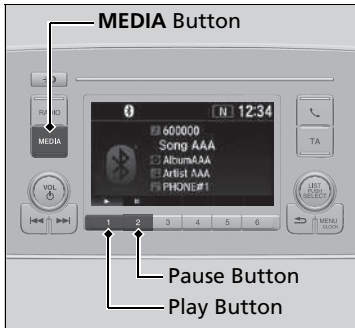
If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.



## ■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFT.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button until the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode is selected.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

## ■ To pause or resume a file

Press the Play or Pause button to select a mode.

## ▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

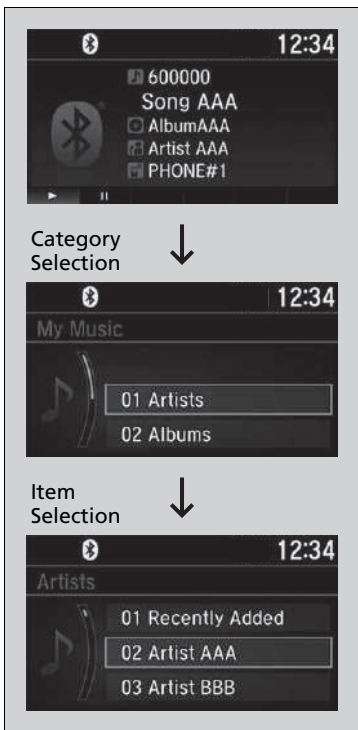
To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack or USB port, you may need to press the **MEDIA** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

## ■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display the music search list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press .

▶ Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

### ▶▶ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

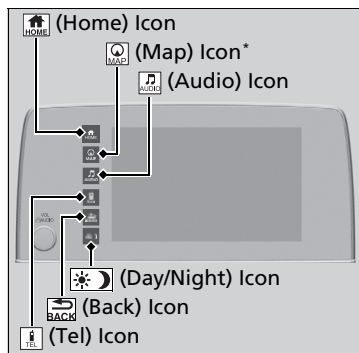
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.

# Audio System Basic Operation

## Models with Display Audio

You can use the audio system for 30 minutes when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF, the system will then turn off automatically.

If you want to keep using it, we recommend that you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.



(Home): Select to go to the home screen.

**Switching the Display** P. 322

(Map)\*: Select to display the map screen.

**Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

(Audio): Select to display the audio screen.

(Tel): Select to display the phone screen.

(Back): Select to go back to the previous screen when the icon is illuminated.

(Day/Night): Select to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Select once and select or to make an adjustment.

▶ Each time you select , the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

## Audio System Basic Operation

Audio Menu Items

**Station List** P. 351, 352

**Music Search List** P. 357, 365

**Scan** P. 352, 366

**Play Mode** P. 358, 366

When the battery has been reconnected or replaced, the next start-up may take a few minutes for the audio system to start. Wait a few moments while the system is starting up.

## Key Off Operation

**About Your Audio System** P. 288

\* Not available on all models




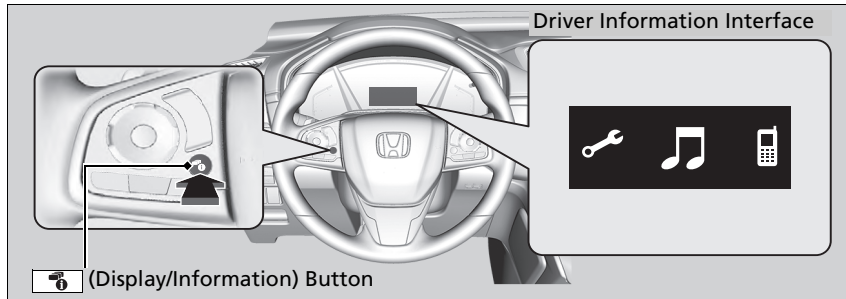
## Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

### ■ Switching the Display

#### ■ Using the (display/information) button

Press the  (display/information) button to change the display.

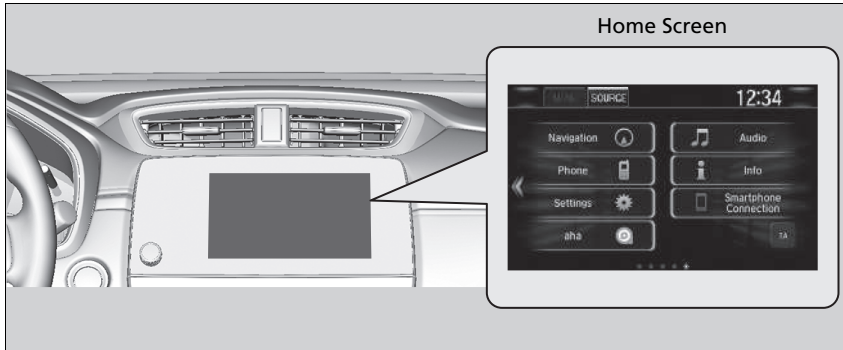



#### ☒ Using the (display/information) button

You can edit, add, and delete the contents shown on the driver information interface.

#### ☒ **Customizing the Meter** P. 326

## ■ Using the audio/information screen



Select  to go to the home screen.  
Select the following icons on the home screen.

### ■ Phone

Displays the HFT information.

 **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 447

## ▶▶ Using the audio/information screen

### Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands\*.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

 **Customized Features** P. 398

## ■ Info

Displays **Trip Computer**, **Voice Info\***, **Clock/wallpaper/Clock**, or **System/Device Information**. Select **MENU** on the **Info Menu** screen to see all available options: **Trip Computer**, **Voice Info\***, **Clock/wallpaper/Clock** and **System/Device Information**.

### Trip Computer:

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **History of Trip A** tab: Displays information for the three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A.  
To delete the history manually, select **Delete history** on the **History of Trip A** tab. The confirmation message appears on the screen, then select **Yes**.

**Voice Info\***: Displays a list of all voice commands.

**Clock/wallpaper/Clock**: Displays the clock and wallpaper.

### System/Device Information:

- **System Info**: Displays the software version of the audio system.
- **USB info**: Displays the memory usage of the USB device.

## ■ Audio

Displays the current audio information.

## ■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 398

## ■ Navigation\*

Displays the navigation screen.

➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

## ■ Smartphone Connection

Connects with your smartphone\*1 and allows some apps on your smartphone to be used on the audio system, and displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

➤ **Smartphone Connection** P. 370

➤ **Apple CarPlay** P. 375

➤ **Android Auto** P. 379

## ■ aha

Displays the Aha™ screen.

➤ **Playing Aha™** P. 363

## ■ App Centre

Displays Honda App Centre.

➤ **On Board Apps** P. 369

## ■ TA

Turns on and off the traffic information.

## ■ App List

Adds or removes apps or widgets on the home screen.

➤ **Home Screen** P. 332

## ■ (instrument panel)

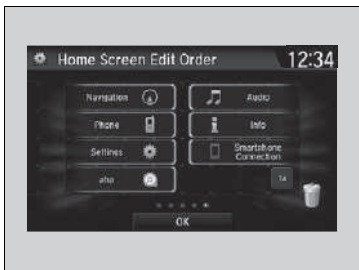
Selects from three customizable settings for the driver information interface.


\*1: Available on specific phones only. Ask a dealer for compatible phones for feature details.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

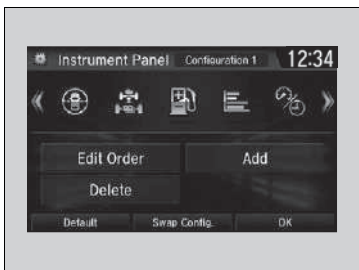
## ■ Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout



1. Select .
2. Select and hold an icon.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.


## ■ Customizing the Meter

You can edit, add, or delete the meter contents on the driver information interface.



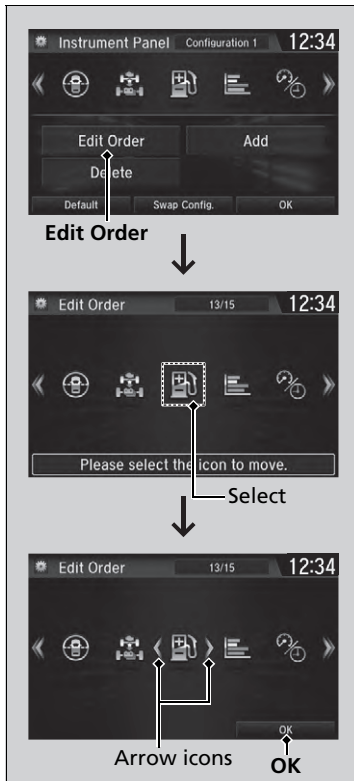
1. .
2. **Settings**
3. **System**
4. **Configuration of Instrument Panel**

### ⌘ Customizing the Meter

You can store up to three customized configurations. To select or customize a configuration, select **Swap Config.**  
 When you select **Swap Config.** during customization, the settings you changed will be saved.  
 When you select  during customization, the settings you changed will not be saved and you will be returned to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

## ■ Editing order

To change the order of the icons on the driver information interface, first select:



### 1. Edit Order

### 2. Select the icon you want to move.

- ▶ You will see arrows on both sides of the selected icon.

### 3. Select the left or right arrow repeatedly to move the icon to your desired position.

### 4. Select **OK**.

- ▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

### ▶▶ Editing order

You can use an alternative method to change the order of the icons. First select:

#### 1. **Edit Order**

2. Select and hold the icon you want to move.

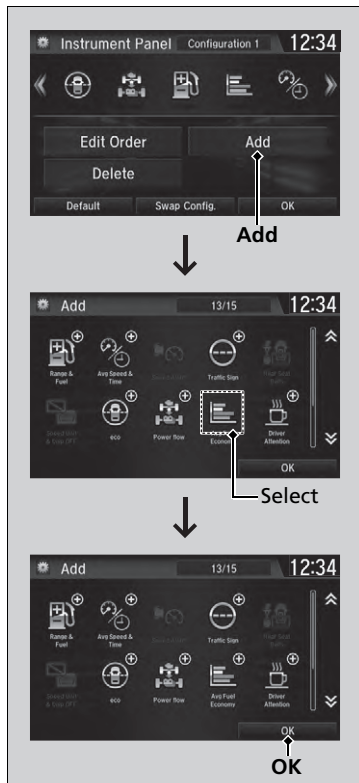
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.

4. Select **OK**.

- ▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

## ■ Adding contents

You can add icons to the driver information interface. To add icons, first select:



### 1. Add

### 2. Select an icon you want to add.

- ▶ You will see a plus mark on the upper right hand corner of the selected icon.

### 3. Select **OK**.

- ▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

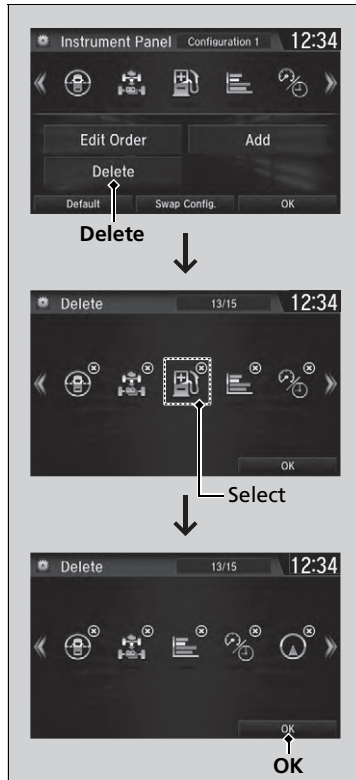
## ▶▶ Adding contents

Icons that are greyed out cannot be selected.

If an icon has a plus mark in the upper-right corner, it means that the icon has already been added.

## ■ Deleting contents

To delete contents on the driver information interface, first select:



### 1. Delete

### 2. Select an icon you want to delete.

- ▶ The icon with an X on the upper right hand corner can be deleted.

### 3. Select **OK**.

- ▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

### ▶▶ Deleting contents

You can also delete contents by selecting:

#### 1. **Delete** or **Edit Order**

2. Select and hold an icon you want to delete.
3. Drag and drop the icon to the trash icon.
4. Select **OK**.

- ▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

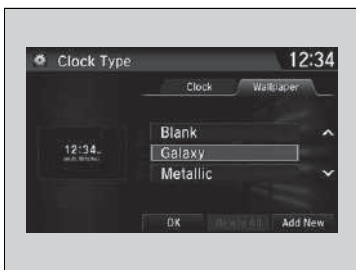


## ■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### ■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.





1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.  
 ▶ **USB Port(s)** P. 289
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
5. Select **Add New**.  
 ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Select a desired picture.  
 ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.  
 ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

### ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

The wallpaper you set up on **Clock/Wallpaper Type** cannot be displayed on the driver information interface.

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 256 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

1. Select .
2. Select .
3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Change wallpaper**.
5. Select **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, or **Wallpapers**.

### ■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

### ■ To view wallpaper once it is set

1. Select .
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select **MENU**.
4. Select **Clock/wallpaper**.


### ■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
  - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

#### Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.



To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or select .

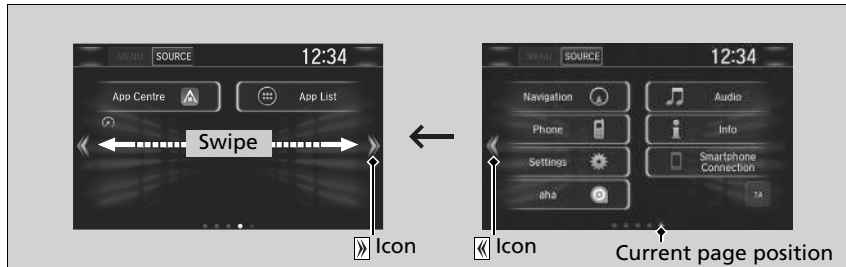
When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.



To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.

Continued

## ■ Home Screen


### ■ To change to a next screen



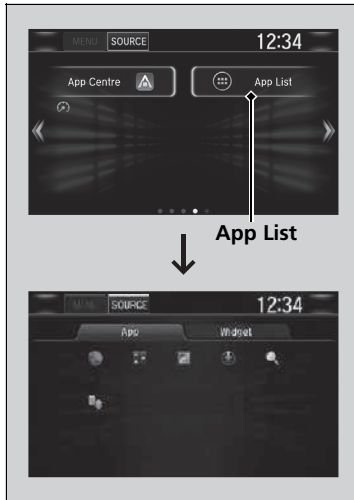
Selecting  or , or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.


## ▶▶ Home Screen

The home screen has 5 pages (fixed). You cannot add any more pages.







Select  to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

## ■ To use apps or widgets



1. Select .
2. Select **App List**.  
▶ The apps screen appears.
3. Select the app or widget you want to use.

Preinstalled app list:

-  (Browser): Displays the web browser utilized by smartphone and Wi-Fi connection.
-  (Calculator): Displays Calculator.
-  (Gallery): Displays images.
-  (Downloads): Displays the data downloaded from the web browser and so on.
-  (App installer): Check with a Honda dealer for apps that are available for installation.
-  (Search): Displays various retrieval screen.

### ▶▶ To use apps or widgets

Select and hold a selected app or widget to add that app's or widget's shortcut on the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.

▶ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 425

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.


▶ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 425

In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

There is a possibility that a browser is shut down in the situation of the use. In that situation, the screen will return to before the browser startup.

Do not install apps other than those confirmed by a Honda dealer. Installation of unauthorised apps may introduce data corruption risks to your vehicle's information and your privacy.

You can delete user installed apps by the following procedure.

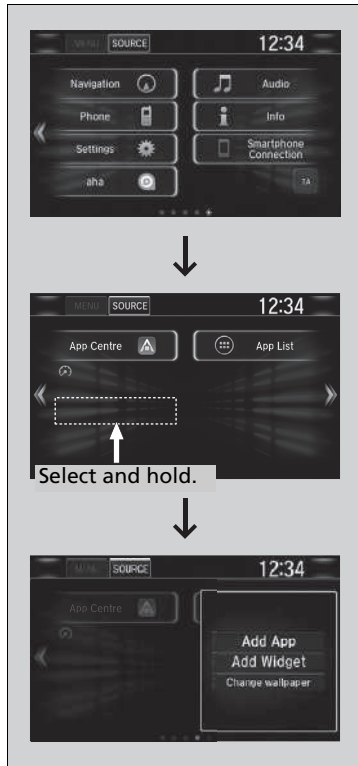
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detailed Information**.
6. Select an App that you want to delete.
7. Select **Delete**.



Pre-installed apps cannot be deleted.

Continued

## ■ To add app or widget icons on the home screen

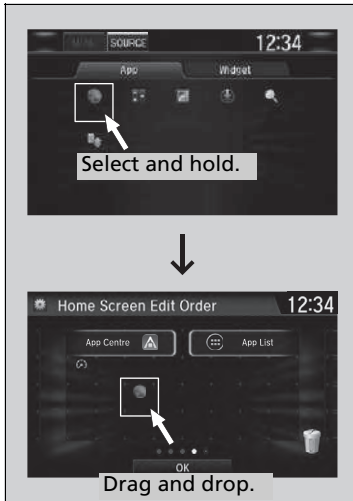
App or widget icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Select .
2. Select .

3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

4. Select **Add App** or **Add Widget**.
  - ▶ The apps/widget screen appears.



5. Select and hold an app or widget icon you want to add.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
6. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
7. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

## ■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.


- ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.

2. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.

3. Select **OK**.

- ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

## ▶▶ To move icons on the home screen

You can also move the **Phone, Info, Audio, Settings, Navigation\*, Smartphone Connection, aha, App Centre, TA, App List**, and  (instrument panel) icons in the same manner.


## ■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the trash icon.
  - ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
3. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

### ⌘ To remove icons on the home screen

You cannot delete the **Phone, Info, Audio, Settings, Navigation**, **Smartphone Connection, aha, App Centre, TA, App List**, and  (instrument panel) icons.

Apps or widgets will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

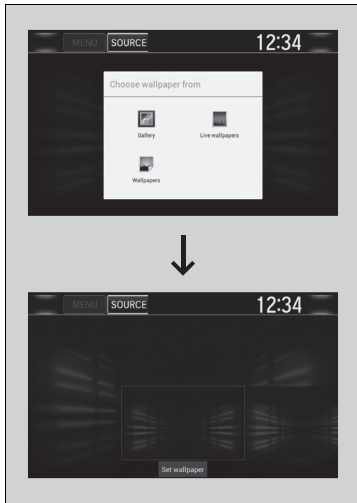


## ■ To change the home screen wallpaper

You can change a wallpaper of the home screen.

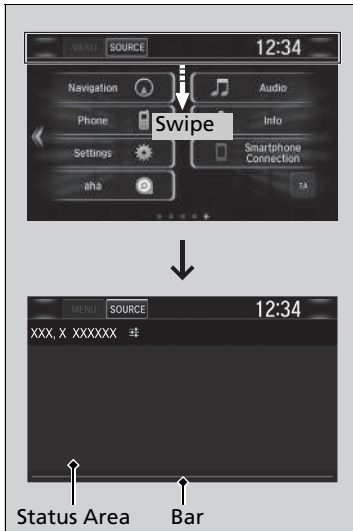



1. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
2. Select **Change wallpaper**.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.



3. Select an app for selecting wallpapers.
4. Select the wallpaper you want to change.
5. Select **Set wallpaper**.
  - ▶ The wallpaper is changed, then the screen will return to the home screen.

## Status Area




1. Swipe down from the top of the screen.
  - ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Select  or swipe up from the bottom bar to close the area.

## ■ Changing the Screen Interface



You can change the screen interface design.



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Change Skin**.
6. Select **Yes**.

## ▣ Changing the Screen Interface

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

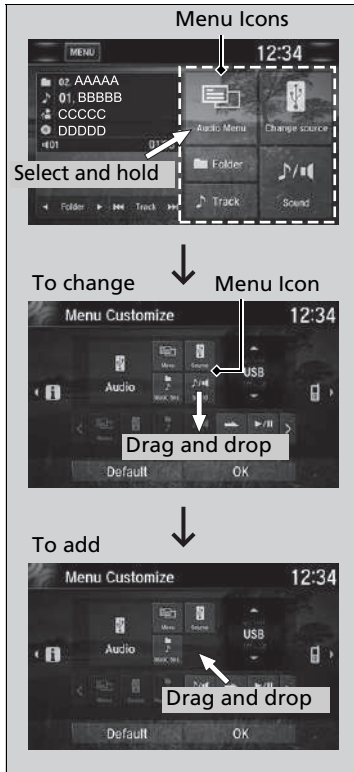
1. Select .
2. Select .
3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.  
The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Change wallpaper**.
5. Select **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, or **Wallpapers**.

If you change the screen interface, some of the setting items will change.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 398

## Menu Customize

You can change menu icons on the right side of **Audio**, **Phone**, and **Info** screen.



1. Select any of the three icons (**Audio/Phone/Info**) on the screen, then select and hold the menu icon.

▶ Selecting the ◀ or ▶ icon, you can change **Audio**, **Phone**, or **Info** on the **Menu Customize** screen.

2. Select and hold the menu icon you want to change, then drag and drop the icon to the bottom.

3. Select and hold the menu icon you want to add, then drag and drop the icon above.

4. Select **OK**.


## Menu Customize

You can also use the method below to change the menu icon:  
Select **Settings**→**System**→**Home** tab→**Menu Icon Position**

## ■ Closing Apps

You can close specific apps running in the background on the system.



1. Select and hold .
2. Select the **Active** tab.
  - ▶ If you select the **Active/History** tab, you can close the apps that are currently running and delete the app activity history simultaneously.
3. Select an app you want to close.
4. Select **Clear**.
  - ▶ The display will return to the app list.

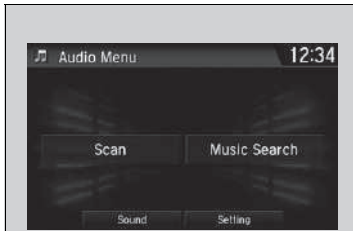
## ▶▶ Closing Apps

If you have a number of apps running in the background and something goes wrong with the audio system, some of those apps may not work properly. If this happens, close all the apps and re-launch the app/apps that you want to use.

To close all apps on the system, select **Clear All**, then **Yes**.

You cannot close the Aha™ and Garmin® apps.

## Adjusting the Sound



1. Select .
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Sound**.




Select a tab from the following choices:

- **BAS-MID-TRE**: Bass, Middle, Treble
- **FAD-BAL-SUBW\***: Fader, Balance, Subwoofer\*
- **SVC**: Speed Volume Compensation

### ▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound by the following procedure.

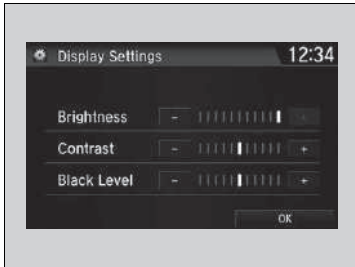
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Sound**.


\* Not available on all models

## Display Setup

You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

### ■ Changing the Screen Brightness

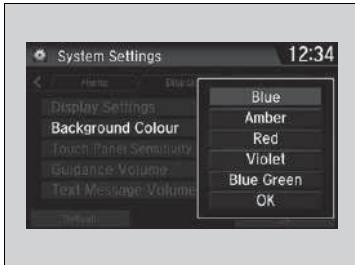



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Display Settings**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

#### ☒ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

### ■ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

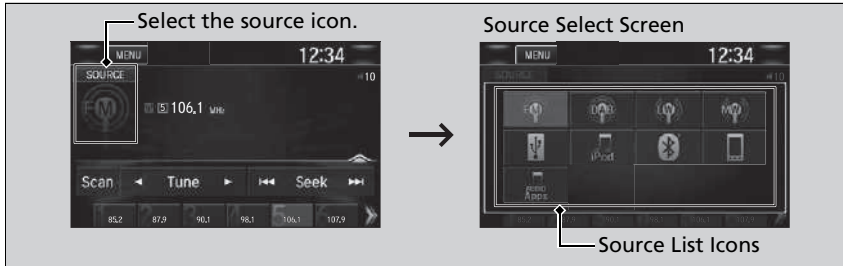


1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Background Colour**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

#### ☒ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

You cannot change the **Background Colour** if you change the screen interface design.

## Selecting an Audio Source



Select the current source icon, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

### Selecting an Audio Source

If you startup preinstalled audio apps, **AUDIO APPS** is displayed on the screen.

These preinstalled apps cannot be displayed on the source select screen.



You can startup those audio apps from **AUDIO APPS**.

When you are using the Aha™ screen and you want to select another source, select **SOURCE** on the upper left of the screen. The source select screen will appear. Select the source you want.




Models with navigation system

## Voice Control Operation\*<sup>1</sup>


Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation. The voice control system uses the  (Talk) and  (hang-up/back) buttons on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights in the ceiling.

### Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.  
The system recognizes only certain commands.  
Available voice command  
 **Voice Portal Screen** \* P. 347
- Close the windows and panoramic roof\*.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone in the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

### Voice Control Operation\*<sup>1</sup>

When you press the  button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the  button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

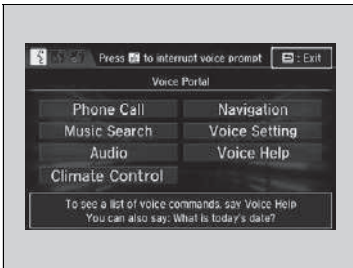
### Voice Recognition


The voice control system can only be used from the driver's seat because the microphone unit removes noises from the front passenger's side.

\*<sup>1</sup>: Languages that the voice control system recognises are English, German, French, Spanish, and Italian.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Voice Portal Screen \*



When the  (Talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.

For a complete list of commands, say “Voice Help” after the beep or select **Voice Help**.

You can see the list of commands in **Voice Info** on the **Info Menu** screen. Select **Info**, then select **MENU**.

The system only recognises the commands on the following pages, at certain screens. Free form voice commands are not recognised.

## ■ Phone Call

This can be only used when the phone is connected. When the system recognises the *Phone call* command, the screen will change to the voice recognition screen for phone commands.

- *Dial by Number*
- *Call History*
- *Redial*
- *Call <Your contact Name>*
- *Call <Phone Number>*

Phone Call commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay.

## ■ Music Search

This can be only used when the iPod or USB device is connected.

## ■ Climate Control

When the system recognises the *Climate Control* command, the screen will change the dedicated screen to the climate control voice recognition screen.

➤ **Climate Control Commands** P. 349

## ■ Audio

When the system recognises the *Audio* command, the screen will change to the audio voice recognition screen.

- *Audio On*\*1
- *Audio Off*\*1
- *Radio FM*
- *Radio MW*
- *Radio LW*
- *iPod*
- *USB*
- *Other Sources*

## ■ Navigation

The screen changes to the navigation screen.

➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

## ■ Voice Setting

The screen changes to the **Voice Recog.** tab on the **System Settings** screen.

\*1: These commands toggle the function on and off, so the command may not match your intended action.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Voice Help

You can see a list of the available commands on the screen.

- *Useful Commands*
- *Phone Commands*
- *Audio Commands*
- *On Screen Commands*
- *Music Search Commands*
- *General Commands*
- *Climate Control Commands*

## ■ Useful Commands

The system accepts these commands on the voice portal top screen.

- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call <Your contact Name>*
- *What time is it?*
- *What is today's date?*

## ■ Phone Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.

- *Call by number*
- *Call by name*
- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call <Your contact Name>*

## ■ Audio Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.

### ■ Radio FM Commands

- *Radio tune to <87.5-108.0> FM*
- *Radio FM preset <1-12>*

### ■ Radio LW Commands

- *Radio tune to <153-279> LW*
- *Radio LW preset <1-6>*

### ■ Radio MW Commands

- *Radio tune to <531-1602> MW*
- *Radio MW preset <1-6>*

### ■ iPod Commands

- *iPod play*

- *iPod play track <1-30>*
- *Music Search*
- *What album is this?*
- *What am I listening to?*

### ■ USB Commands

- *USB play*
- *USB play track <1-30>*
- *Music Search*
- *What album is this?*
- *What am I listening to?*

### ■ DAB Commands

- *DAB preset <1-12>*

### ■ Bluetooth® audio Commands

- *Bluetooth® audio play*

#### NOTE:

*Bluetooth®* Audio commands may not work on some phones or *Bluetooth®* Audio devices.

## ■ On Screen Commands

When **On Screen Commands** is selected, the explanation screen is displayed.

## ■ Music Search Commands

The system accepts these commands on the **Music Search** screen.

### ■ Using Song By Voice

Song By Voice™ is a feature that allows you to select music from your iPod or USB device using Voice Commands. To activate this mode, you must push the talk switch and say: "Music search".

### ■ Song By Voice Commands

- *What am I listening to?*
- *Who am I listening to?*
- *Who is this?*
- *What's playing?*
- *Who's playing?*
- *What album is this?*

## ■ Play Commands

- *Play artist <Name>*
- *Play track/song <Name>*
- *Play album <Name>*
- *Play genre/category <Name>*
- *Play playlist <Name>*
- *Play composer <Name>*

## ■ List Commands

- *List artist <Name>*
- *List album <Name>*
- *List genre/category <Name>*
- *List playlist <Name>*
- *List composer <Name>*

## ■ General Commands

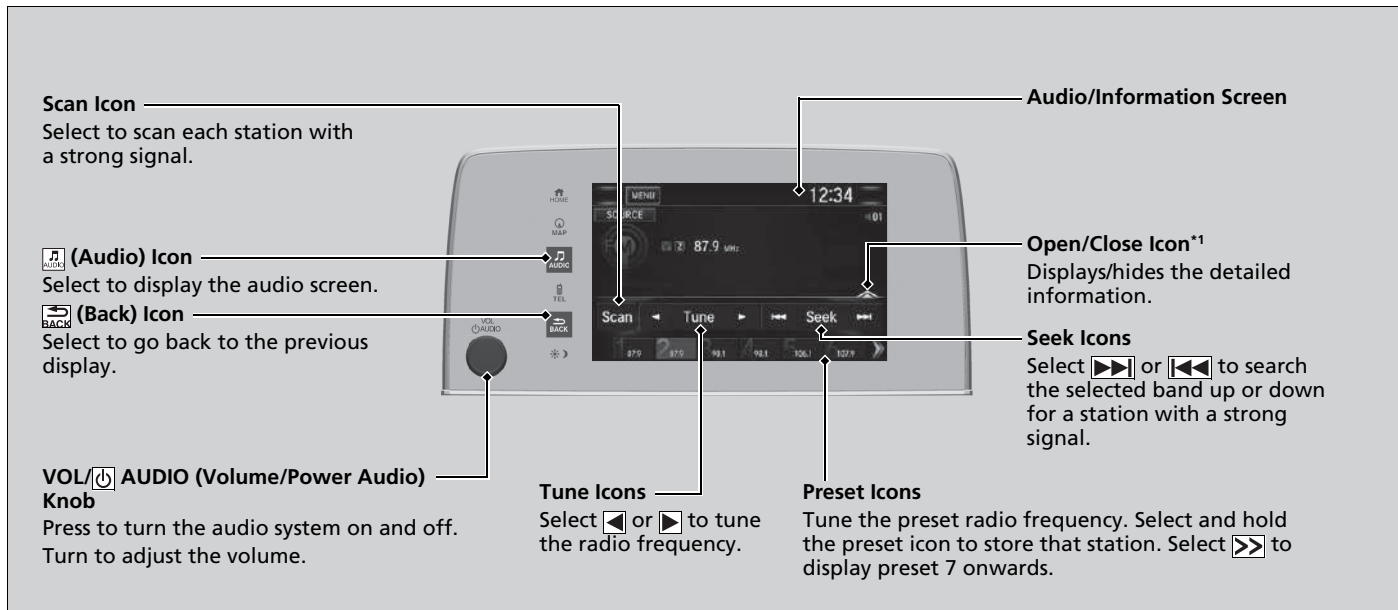
- *What time is it?*
- *What is today's date?*

## ■ Climate Control Commands

- *Climate control on\*1*
- *Climate control off\*1*
- *Fan speed <1-7>*
- *Temperature max heat*
- *Temperature max cool*
- *Temperature <18-32> degrees*
- *Defrost On\*1*
- *Defrost Off\*1*
- *Air Conditioner On\*1*
- *Air Conditioner Off\*1*
- *More*
- *Vent*
- *Dash and floor*
- *Fan speed up*
- *Fan speed down*
- *Floor vents*
- *Floor and Defrost*
- *Temperature up*
- *Temperature down*

\*1: These commands toggle the function on and off, so the command may not match your intended action.

## Playing AM/FM Radio



\*1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## ■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

You can also store a preset station by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

## ■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

## ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

## ☒ Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.  
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.


Switching the Audio Mode

Press the ▲ or ▼ button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

☒ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 292

You can store 12 AM stations and 12 FM stations into preset memory. AM has two types of frequencies LW and MW, and each lets you store six stations.

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or .

## ■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.


### ■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **View Radio Text**.

### ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or .

## ▶▶ Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

## Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

**Audio Icon**  
Select to display the audio screen.

**VOL/⏻ AUDIO (Volume/Power Audio) Knob**  
Press to turn the audio system on and off.  
Turn to adjust the volume.

**(Back) Icon**  
Select to go back to the previous display.

**Scan Icon**  
Select to scan each receivable ensemble or service.

**Ensemble Icons**  
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the ensemble.  
Select and hold ◀ or ▶ to search the selected service up to down for an ensemble until an receivable ensemble is found.

**Audio/Information Screen**

**Open/Close Icon\*<sup>1</sup>**  
Displays/hides the detailed information.

**Service Icons**  
Select ◀◀ or ▶▶ to tune the service component.

**Preset Icons**  
Tune the preset frequency. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station. Select ▶▶ to display preset 7 onwards.

\*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.



## ■ Preset Memory

To store a service:

1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the service you want to store.

You can also store a preset service by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the service you want to store.

## ■ Ensemble List

Lists the receivable ensembles on the selected service.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Ensemble List** tab.
3. Select the ensemble.

## ■ Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Ensemble List** tab.
3. Select **Update List**.

## ▶▶ Preset Memory

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the ▲ or ▼ button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

▶▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 292

You can store 12 DAB stations into preset memory.

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds.

1. Select **Scan**.
2. Select **Scan Ensemble** or **Scan Service**.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel Scan**.

## ■ Radio text

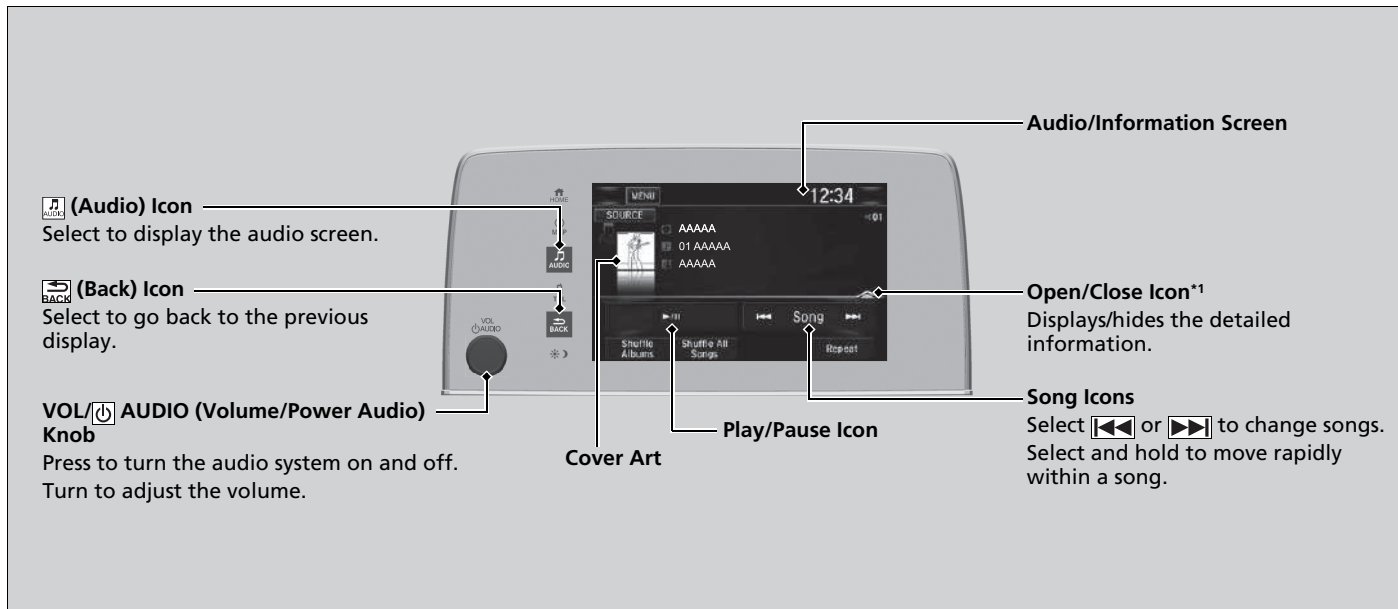
Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **View Radio Text**.

## Playing an iPod

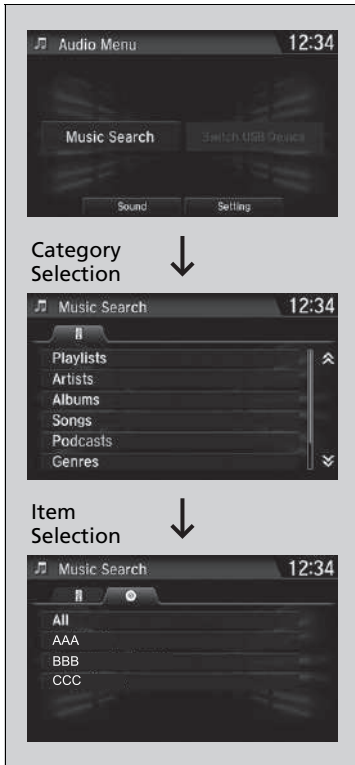
Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

➔ **USB Port(s)** P. 289



\*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

2. Select the items on that menu.

### ▶▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 383**

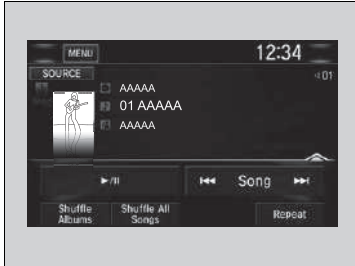
If you operate any music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen. Reconnect the device if necessary.

Select **Switch USB Device** in the **Audio Menu** screen to switch to another USB device.

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay, the iPod/USB source is unavailable and audio files on the phone can only be played within Apple CarPlay.

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.  
Select a play mode.



### ■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Shuffle Albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

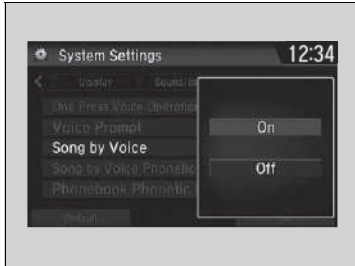
**Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.


**Repeat:** Repeats the current track.

## Song By Voice™ (SBV)\*

Use SBV to search for and play music from your USB flash drive or iPod using voice commands.

### ■ To enable SBV



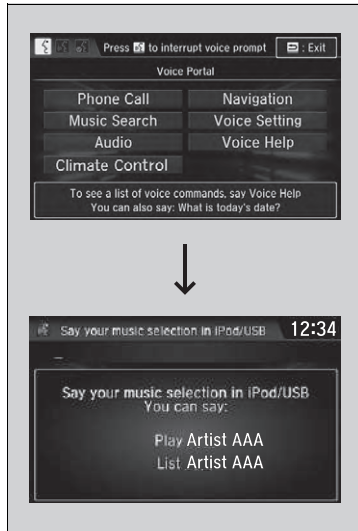
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Song by Voice**.
6. Select **On** or **Off**.



### ☒ Song By Voice™ (SBV)\*


Setting options:

- **On** (factory default): Song By Voice™ commands are available.
- **Off**: Disable the feature.

## ■ Searching for music using SBV



1. Set the **Song by Voice** setting to **On**.
2. Press the  (Talk) button and say "Music Search" to activate the SBV feature for the USB flash drive and iPod.
3. Then, say a next command.
  - ▶ Example 1: Say "(List) 'Artist A'" to view a list of songs by that artist. Select the desired song to start playing.
  - ▶ Example 2: Say "Play 'Artist A'" to start playing songs by that artist.
4. To cancel SBV, press the  (hang-up/back) button on the steering wheel. The selected song continues playing.

Once you have cancelled this mode, you need to press the  button and say "Music Search" again to re-activate this mode.

## ▶▶ Searching for music using SBV

Song By Voice™ Commands List

▶ **Song By Voice Commands** P. 349

NOTE:

Song By Voice™ commands are available for tracks stored on the USB flash drive or iPod.

You can add phonetic modifications of difficult words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands.


▶ **Phonetic Modification** P. 361

SBV is not available when using Apple CarPlay. Use Siri Eyes Free instead.

## Phonetic Modification

Add phonetic modifications of difficult or foreign words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands when searching for music on the USB flash drive or iPod.



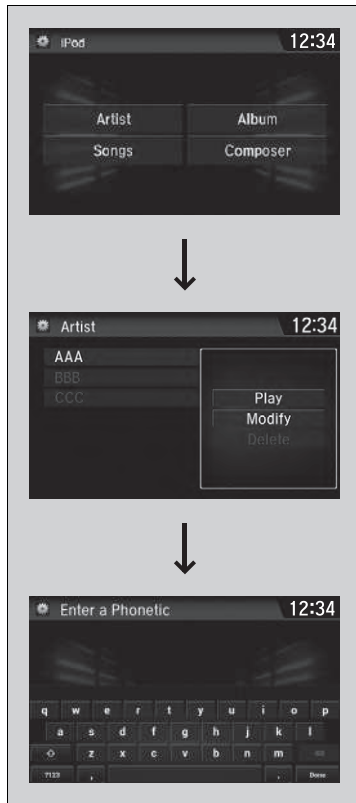
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Song by Voice Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select **New Modification**.
7. Select **USB** or **iPod**.


### Phonetic Modification

**Song by Voice Phonetic Modification** function is not available when **Song by Voice** is set to **Off**.

You can store up to 2,000 phonetic modification items.



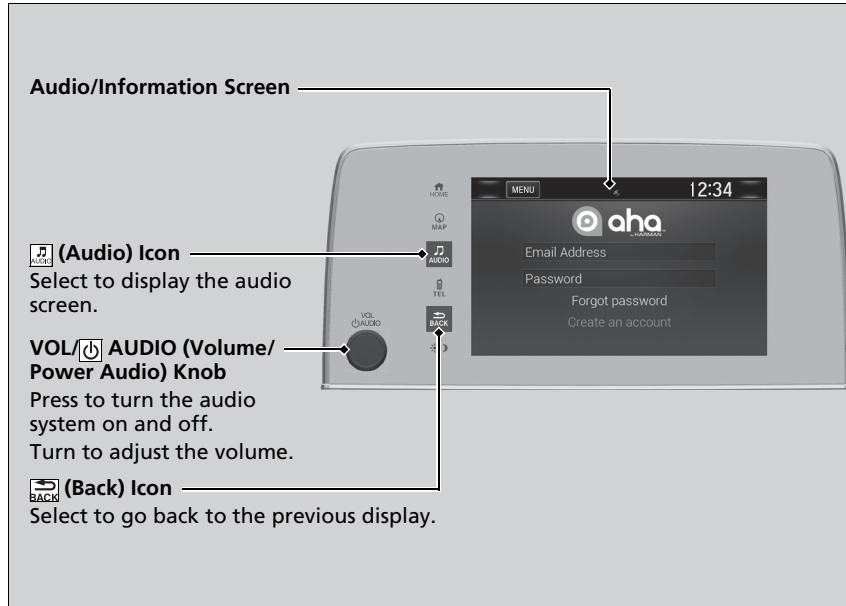


8. Select the item to modify (e.g., **Artist**).
  - ▶ The list of the selected item appears on the screen.
9. Select an entry to modify.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
  - ▶ To listen to the current phonetic modification, select **Play**.
  - ▶ To delete the current phonetic modification, select **Delete**.
10. Select **Modify**.
11. Select the phonetic spelling you want to use (e.g., "Artist A") when prompted.
12. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The artist "No Name" is phonetically modified to "Artist A." When in the SBV mode, you can press the  (Talk) button and use the voice command "Play 'Artist A'" to play songs by the artist "No Name."

## Playing Aha™

Aha™ can be displayed and operated on the audio/information screen when your smartphone is connected to the audio system by Wi-Fi.

▶ **Wi-Fi Connection** P. 372



### ▶▶ Playing Aha™

Aha™ by Harman is a cloud-based service that organizes your favourite web content into live radio stations. You can access podcasts, internet radio, location-based services, and audio updates from social media sites.

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

The menu items vary depending on the station you selected.

You must have a previously set up Aha™ account prior to using the service in your vehicle. Visit [www.aharadio.com](http://www.aharadio.com) for more information.

You want to select another source, select **AUDIO** on the upper left of the screen. The source select screen will appear. Select the source you want.

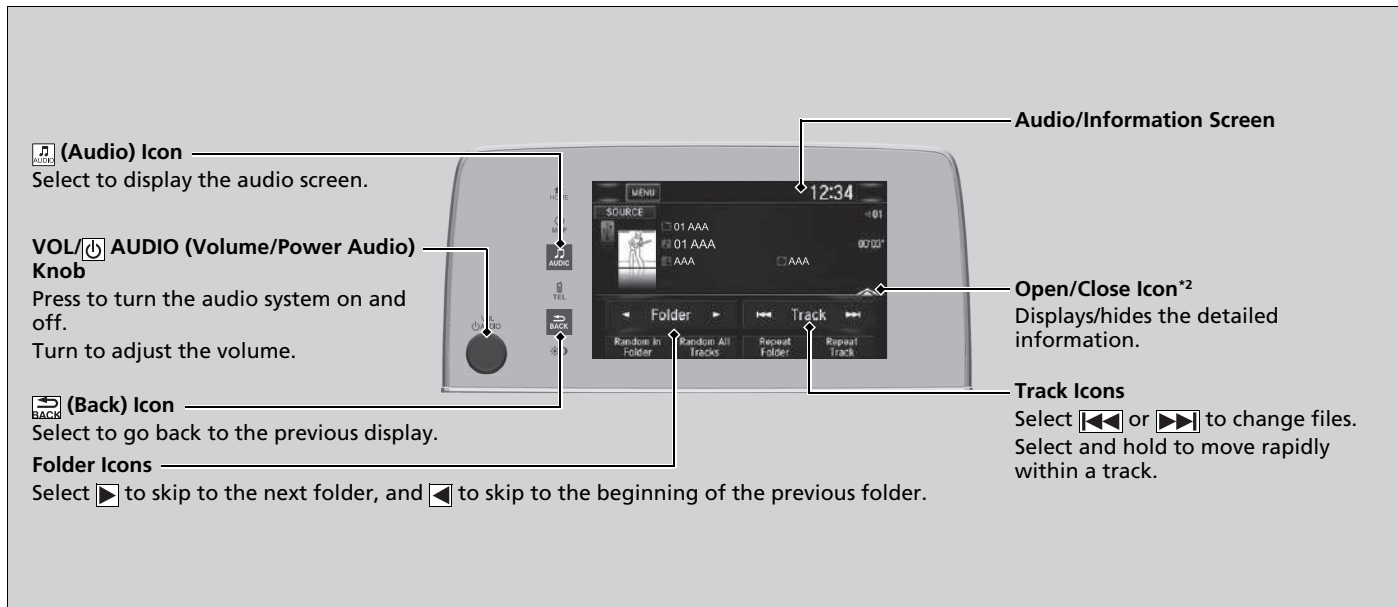
If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, Aha™ can only be accessed when the phone is connected through Wi-Fi.

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC\*1, WAV, or MP4 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

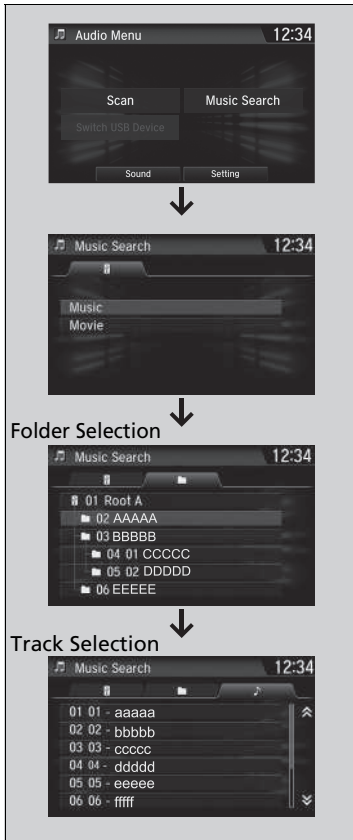
➤ **USB Port(s)** P. 289



\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

\*2: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

2. Select **Music** or **Movie**.

3. Select a folder.

4. Select a track.

## ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 385

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

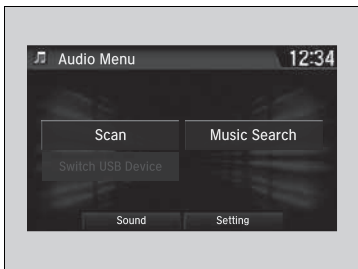
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 383

Select **Switch USB Device** in the **Audio Menu** screen to switch to another USB device.

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.

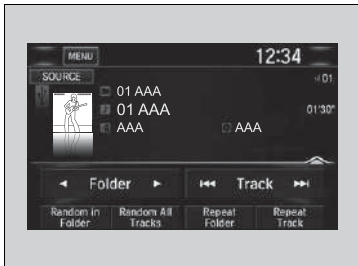


### ■ Scan

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Scan**.
3. Select a play mode.

### ■ Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.



### ■ To turn off a play mode

To turn off Scan, select  or **Cancel**.

To turn off Random or Repeat, select the mode you want to turn off.

## ☞ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Scan

**Scan Folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

### Random/Repeat

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All Tracks:** Plays all files in random order.

**Repeat Folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track:** Repeats the current file.

When playing a video file:

**Play/Pause:** Plays or pauses the file.

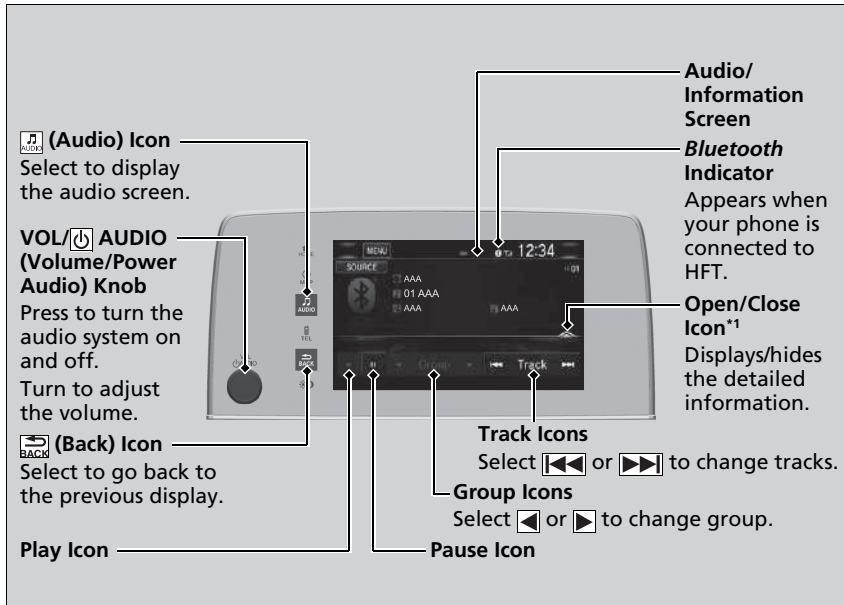
**Stop:** Stops the file.

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

🔧 **Phone Setup** P. 455



\*1: Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritised phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the **Priority Device Settings**.

🔧 **Customized Features** P. 398

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

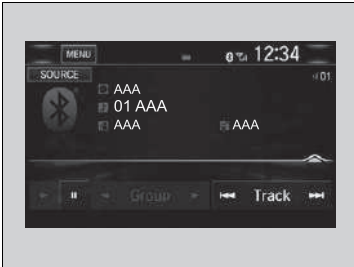
In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting **Connect** [📶] from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

🔧 **Phone Setup** P. 455

## ■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 455

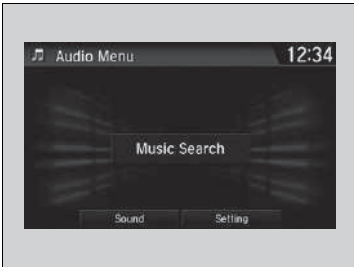
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

## ■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play icon or pause icon.

## ■ Searching for Music



1. Select **MENU**.

2. Select **Music Search**.

3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).

4. Select an item.

▶ The selection begins playing.

## ▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone in the *Bluetooth*® settings on the **Audio Menu** screen by the following procedure.

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Setting**.

## ▶▶ Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

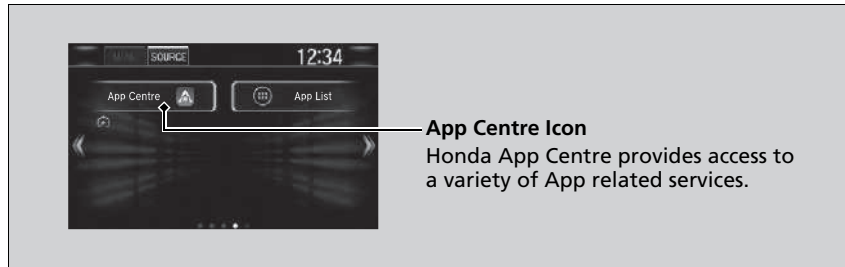
## On Board Apps

Honda Connect has the capability of On Board Apps which may be created by Honda or by 3rd parties. Apps may be already installed or can be downloaded through Honda App Centre. Some Apps require internet access which can be established by Wi-Fi Connection.

📶 **Wi-Fi Connection** P. 372

Please visit the below web address for further information:

<https://ivhs.os.ixonos.com/honda/category/carApps.html>



- Using the Display Audio system while driving can take your attention away from the road, causing a crash in which you could be seriously injured or killed. Only operate system controls when the conditions permit you to safely do so. **Please always adhere to the laws of the territory when operating this device.**
- Applications on the head unit are subject to change at anytime. This may mean that they are not available or operate differently. Honda shall not be liable to you in such instances.
- Applications available on the device may be provided by parties other than Honda to which 3rd party software licences and charges may apply.
- Data usage and roaming charges may result in using applications on the device in conjunction with your mobile phone and Honda is not liable for any costs you might incur from such use. Honda recommends you consult your mobile phone network provider in advance.
- Downloading applications from the Honda App Centre will be subject to Terms and Conditions which can be found at: <https://ivhs.os.ixonos.com/honda/category/carApps.html>, and may also incur charges.

### 📺 On Board Apps

Even if you change **Background Colour** on the **System Settings** screen, it will not be reflected on the Honda App Centre screen.



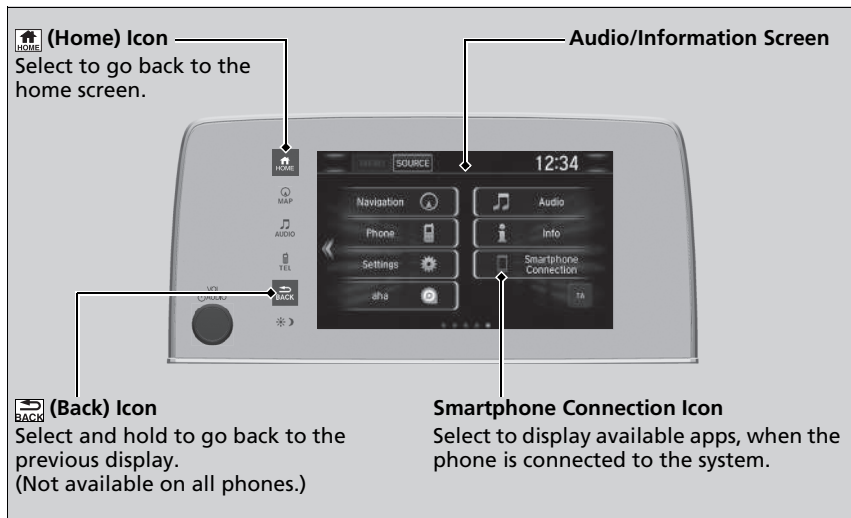
## Smartphone Connection

Some of your smartphone apps can be displayed and operated on the audio/information screen when the phone is connected to the audio system. You can connect your phone using a cable.

➤ **Connecting Your Smartphone** P. 371

To use smartphone connection, you need to first pair your smartphone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 455



### Smartphone Connection

Park in a safe place before connecting your phone and while operating the displayed apps.

Not all phones are compatible with the system. The system does not display all the available apps on your smartphone, and some apps need to be preinstalled. Ask a dealer for details.

You need to switch the *Bluetooth*® connection to your smartphone if another electronic device is connected.

➤ **To change the currently paired phone**  
P. 456

The following may vary by phone type:

- How to connect a smartphone to the system.
- Apps that can be operated on the screen.
- Display response time/update time

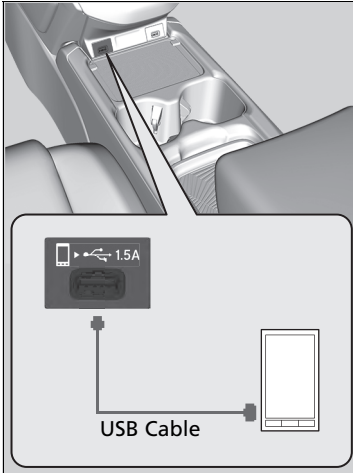
We do not support every app operation on the audio system.


Ask the app provider for any queries on the app's features.

Do not get drawn into the display while operating a vehicle.

Except iPhone

## ■ Connecting Your Smartphone



1. Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.
  - ▶ **Phone Setup** P. 455
2. Plug in your phone to the USB port.
  - ▶ You may need to operate from the phone.
3. Select **Smartphone Connection** to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.
4. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ To go back to the previous screen, select and hold .

### ☒ Connecting Your Smartphone


The phone is rechargeable while being connected to the USB port. However, if the phone is overloaded with many operational tasks, the battery level may get lowered.

## Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the Display Audio to the Internet using Wi-Fi and browse websites or use online services on the audio/information screen. If your phone has wireless hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

### Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)




1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Wi-Fi** tab.
5. Select **Wi-Fi On/Off Status**, then select **On**.
6. Select **Yes**.
7. Select **Wi-Fi Device List**.
  - ▶ Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
  - ▶ Select the phone you want to connect to the system.
  - ▶ If you do not find the phone you want to connect in the list, select **Scan**.

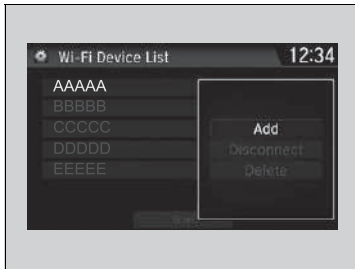
### Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.


Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the  icon on the **Wi-Fi Device List** screen. Network speed will not be displayed on this screen.



### 8. Select **Add**.

- ▶ If needed, enter a password for your phone and select **Done**.
- ▶ When the connection is successful, the  icon is displayed on the top of the screen.

### 9. Select to go back to the home screen.

### Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)


#### iPhone users

You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.

## Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

## Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

➔ **Phone Setup** P. 455

### ❏ Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

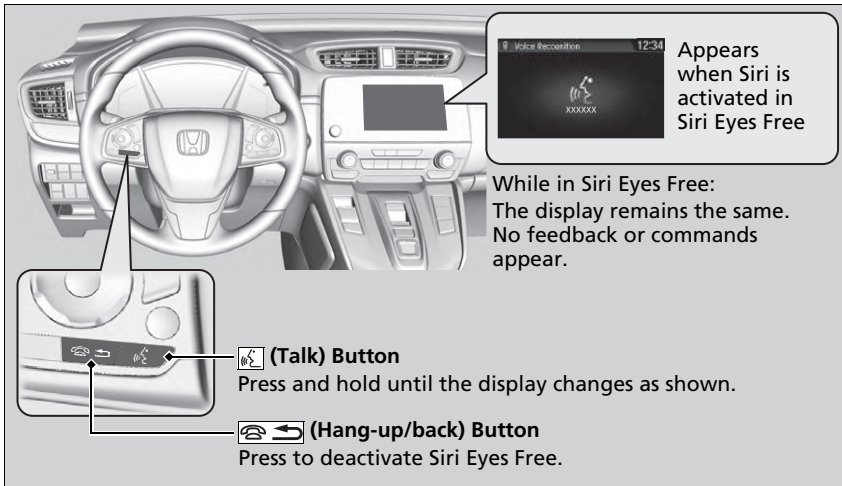
Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

### ❏ Using Siri Eyes Free

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

### ■ Using Siri Eyes Free

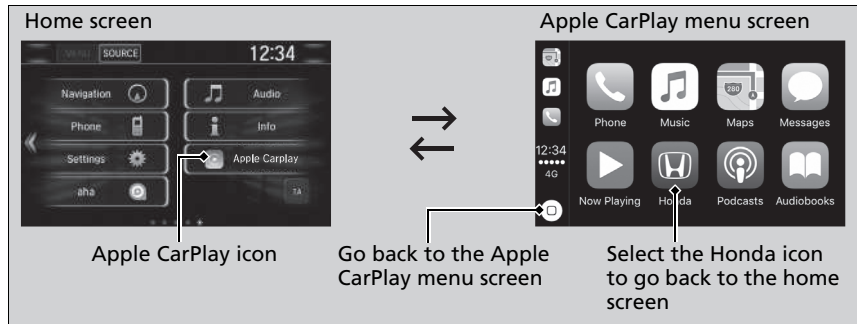


# Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

➤ **USB Port(s)** P. 289

## ■ Apple CarPlay Menu



### ■ Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

### ■ Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

### ■ Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

### ▶ Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Apple CarPlay, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. Other USB ports will not enable Apple CarPlay operation.

➤ **USB Port(s)** P. 289

To directly access the Apple CarPlay phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone system, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

➤ **Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 377

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 455

## ■ Maps

Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

### Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

### ▶▶ Apple CarPlay

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

#### **Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations**

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

## ■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

### ■ Enabling Apple CarPlay



**Enable once:** Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)

**Always enable:** Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)

**Cancel:** Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

### ▶▶ Setting Up Apple CarPlay


You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:  
Select HOME→Settings→Smartphone→Apple CarPlay

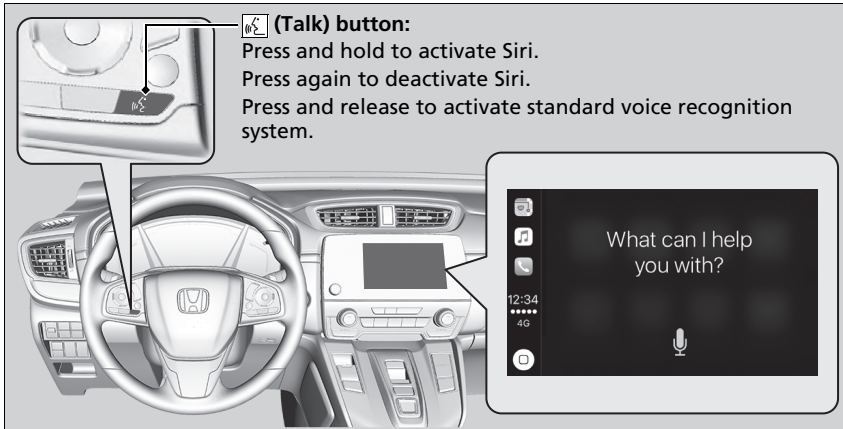
#### Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.



## ■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the  (Talk) button to activate Siri.



## ▶▶ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri.

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit [www.apple.com/ios/siri](http://www.apple.com/ios/siri).

## Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the Display Audio system via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

➤ **USB Port(s)** P. 289

➤ **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 381

### NOTE:

Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.

### Android Auto

To use Android Auto, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto.

*Bluetooth* A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

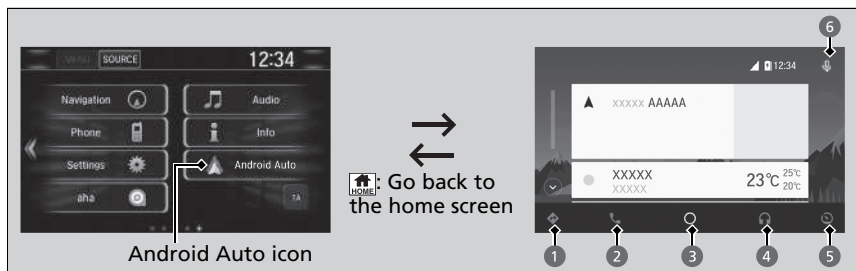
To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. Other USB ports will not enable Android Auto operation.

➤ **USB Port(s)** P. 289

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 455

## ■ Android Auto Menu



### 1 Maps (Navigation)

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

#### Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

The audio/information screen shows you turn-by turn driving directions to your destination.

**2 Phone (Communication)** Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

### 3 Google Now (Home screen)

Display useful information organized by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

## ▶▶ Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

### Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

**4 Music and audio**

Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto. To switch between music apps, press this icon.

**5 Go back to the Home Screen.****6 Voice**

Operate Android Auto with your voice.

## ■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

### ■ Enabling Android Auto



**Enable once:** Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)

**Always enable:** Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)

**Cancel:** Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

### ■ Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:


Select HOME→Settings→Smartphone→Android Auto

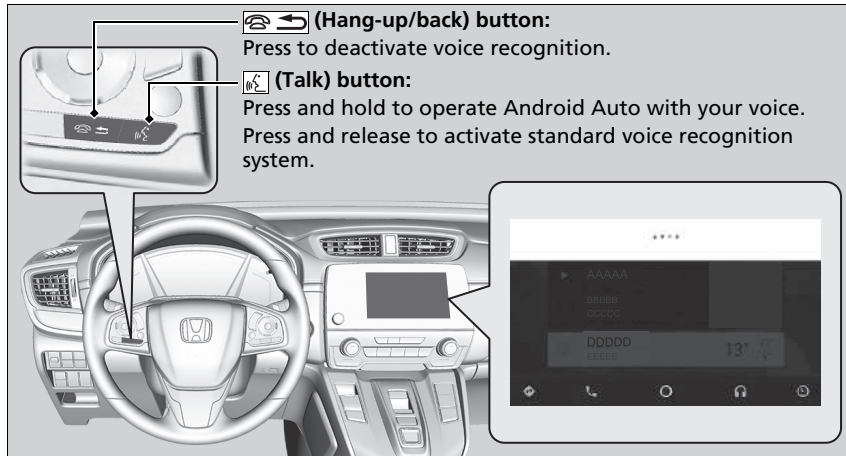
#### **Use of user and vehicle information**

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

*Continued*

## ■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the  (Talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.




## ▶▶ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the  icon in the upper-right corner of the screen.

## iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
<b>USB error</b> <sup>*1, *2</sup>	Appears when there is a problem with the audio system. Check if the device is compatible with the audio system.
<b>A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
<b>Unsupported ver</b> <sup>*1</sup> <b>Unsupported Version</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
<b>Connect retry</b> <sup>*1, *2</sup>	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
<b>Unplayable File</b> <sup>*1, *2</sup>	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.
<b>No song</b> <sup>*1</sup> <b>No Data</b> <sup>*2</sup>	<b>iPod</b> Appears when the iPod is empty.
	<b>USB flash drive</b> Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, WAV, or MP4* files in the USB flash drive.
	<b>iPod and USB flash drive</b> Check that compatible files are stored on the device.

\*1: Models with colour audio system

\*2: Models with Display Audio

\* Not available on all models

Error Message	Solution
<b>Unsupported</b> *1, *2	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.
<b>Device no response</b> *1	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
<b>HUB Unsupported</b> *1	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.


\*1:Models with colour audio system

\*2:Models with Display Audio

Models with Display Audio

## Android/Apps

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message*1	Solution
<b>Unfortunately, **** has stopped.</b>	Error has occurred within app, select <b>OK</b> on the screen to close the app.
<b>**** is not responding. Would you like to close it?</b>	App is not responding. Select <b>Wait</b> if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select <b>OK</b> to close the app and start it up. If the error message continues, perform <b>Factory Data Reset</b> .  <b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 425

\*1:\*\*\*\*part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

## Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

### iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

#### Models with colour audio system

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) released between 2005 and 2012
iPod touch (1st to 5th generation) released between 2007 and 2012
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus

#### Models with Display Audio

Model
iPod touch (6th generation) released 2015
iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR

### USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, WAV, or MP4\* formats may be unsupported.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

### ⌘ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

### ⌘ USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.



## ■ Recommended Devices\*

Media	USB Flash Drive	
<b>Profile (MP4 version)</b>	Baseline Level 3 (MPEG4-AVC), Simple Level 5 (MPEG4)	
<b>File extension (MP4 version)</b>	.mp4/.m4v	
<b>Compatible audio codec</b>	AAC	MP3
<b>Compatible video codec</b>	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
<b>Bit rate</b>	10 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
<b>Maximum image</b>	720 x 576 pixels	

Models with Display Audio

## Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

### OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

## ■ **DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY**

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO (“THE APPLICATIONS”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.


## About Open Source Licences

To see the open source Licence information, follow these steps.

### Models with colour audio system

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **License**, then press .

### Models with Display Audio

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detailed Information**.
6. Select **About device**.
7. Select **Legal information**.
8. Select **Open-source licences**.

### Models with eCall Unit

Free/Open Source Software Information

This product contains Free/Open Source Software (FOSS).

The license information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

<https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/>

### ▶▶ About Open Source Licences

LICENCE: Copyright © 2001 Bob Trower, Trantor Standard Systems Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:


The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

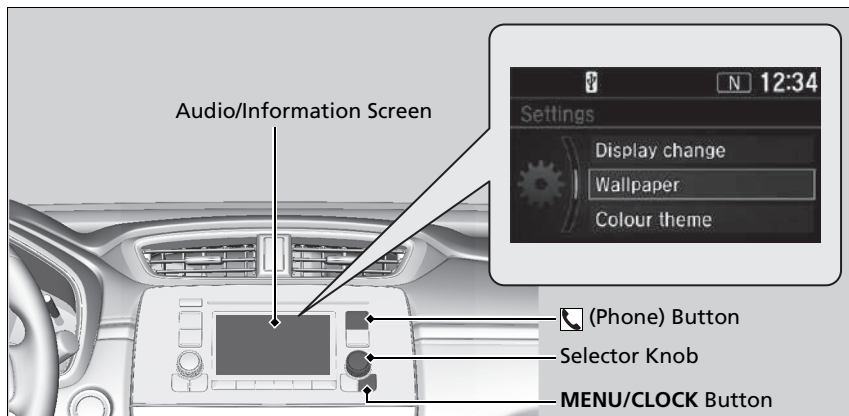
THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

## Models with colour audio system

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

### ■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, press the **MENU/CLOCK** button, then select **Settings**. To customize the phone settings, press the  button, then select **Phone setup**.



### » Customized Features


When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Put the transmission into **P**.

### » How to customize

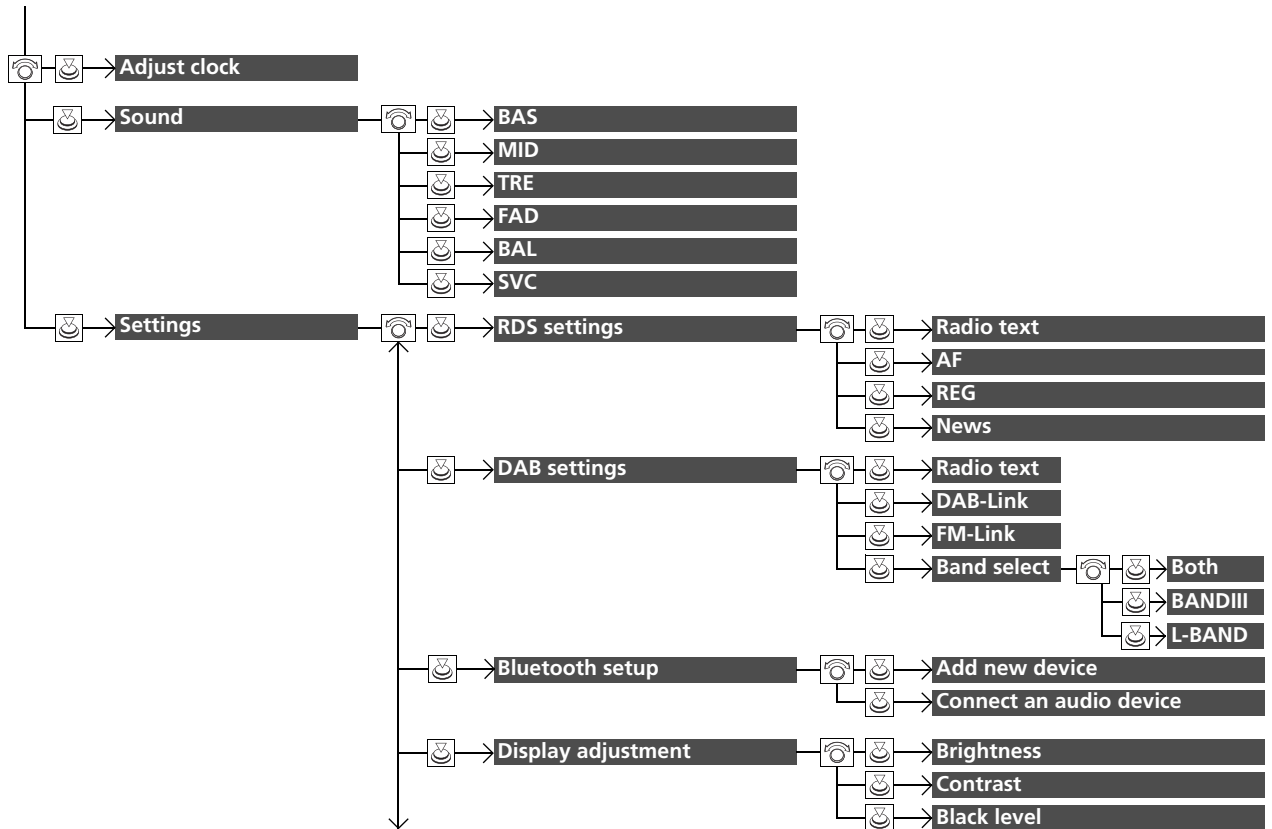
These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

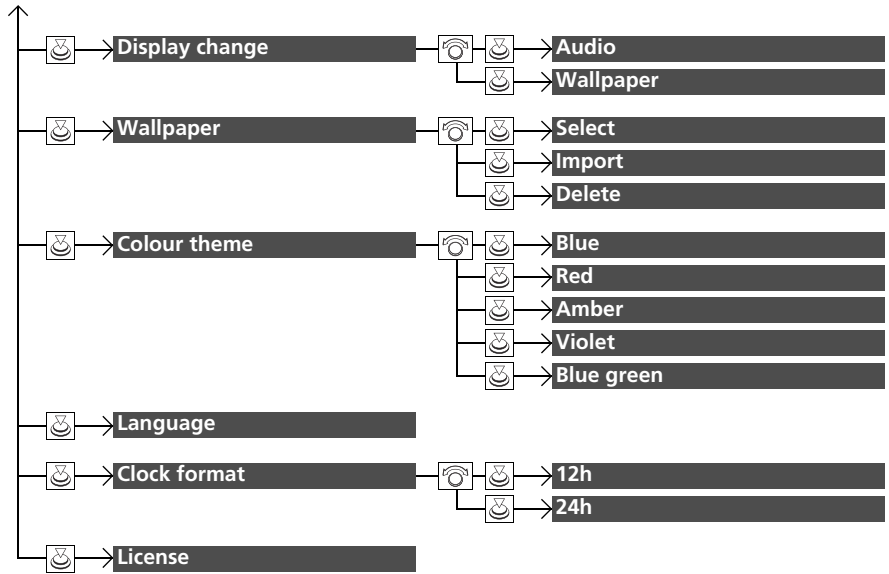
Rotate  to select.




Press  to enter.

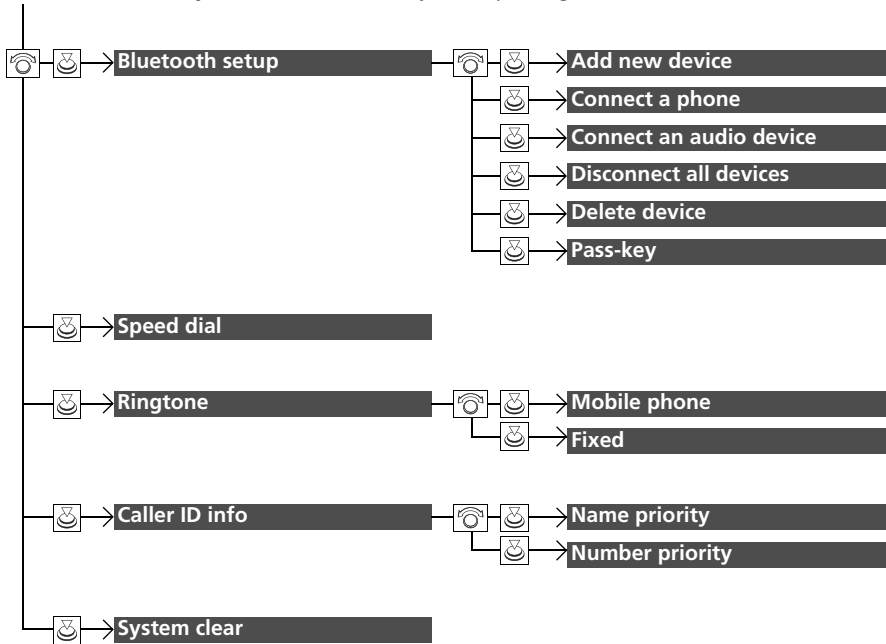
## ■ Customization flow

Press the MENU/CLOCK button.





Press the  button and rotate  to select **Phone setup**, then press .






■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
<b>Adjust clock</b>		Adjust Clock. ➤ <b>Clock</b> P. 180	—	
<b>Sound</b>		Adjusts the sound. ➤ <b>Adjusting the Sound</b> P. 301	<b>BAS/MID/TRE/FAD/BAL/SVC</b>	
<b>Settings</b>	<b>RDS settings</b>	<b>Radio text</b>	Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.	<b>On/Off*<sup>1</sup></b>
		<b>AF</b>	Automatically changes the frequency of the same programme as you enter different region.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>REG</b>	Keeps the same frequency of the stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>News</b>	Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news programme.	<b>On/Off*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>DAB settings</b>	<b>Radio text</b>	Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.	<b>On/Off*<sup>1</sup></b>
		<b>DAB-Link</b>	Selects whether the system automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>FM-Link</b>	Selects whether the system finds the same station from an FM band, and automatically switches the band.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Band select</b>	Selects specific bands to reduce the time to update the lists, and search for a station.	<b>Both*<sup>1</sup>/BANDIII/L-BAND</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Settings	Bluetooth setup	<b>Add new device</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a code for a paired phone. ☒ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 432	—
		<b>Connect an audio device</b>	Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio device to HFT.	—
	Display adjustment	<b>Brightness</b>	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
		<b>Contrast</b>	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
		<b>Black level</b>	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
	<b>Display change</b>	Changes the display type.	<b>Audio*1/Wallpaper</b>	

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Settings	Wallpaper	Select	Changes the wallpaper type.	Clock* <sup>1</sup> /Image 1/Image 2/Image 3
		Import	Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.  <b>Wallpaper Setup</b> P. 299	—
		Delete	Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	Image 1/Image 2/Image 3
	Colour theme	Changes the background colour of the audio/information screen.	Blue* <sup>1</sup> /Red/Amber/Violet/Blue green	
	Language	Changes the display language.	English (United Kingdom)* <sup>1</sup> or Turkish* <sup>1</sup> : See other selectable languages on the screen.	
	Clock format	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12h* <sup>1</sup> /24h	
License	Shows the legal information.	—		

\*1:Default Setting


Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone setup	<b>Add new device</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT. ☒ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 432	—
	<b>Connect a phone</b>	Pairs a new phone or connects a paired phone to HFT. ☒ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 432	—
	<b>Connect an audio device</b>	Connects a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio device to HFT.	—
	<b>Disconnect all devices</b>	Disconnects a paired phone from HFT.	—
	<b>Delete device</b>	Deletes a paired phone.	—
	<b>Pass-key</b>	Inputs and changes a code for a paired phone.	—
	<b>Speed dial</b>	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ☒ <b>Speed Dial</b> P. 440	—
	<b>Ringtone</b>	Selects the ring tone.	<b>Mobile phone</b> *1/ <b>Fixed</b>
	<b>Caller ID info</b>	Prioritizes the caller's name or phone number as the caller ID.	<b>Name priority</b> *1/ <b>Number priority</b>
	<b>System clear</b>	Cancel/Resets all customized items in the <b>Phone setup</b> group as default.	—

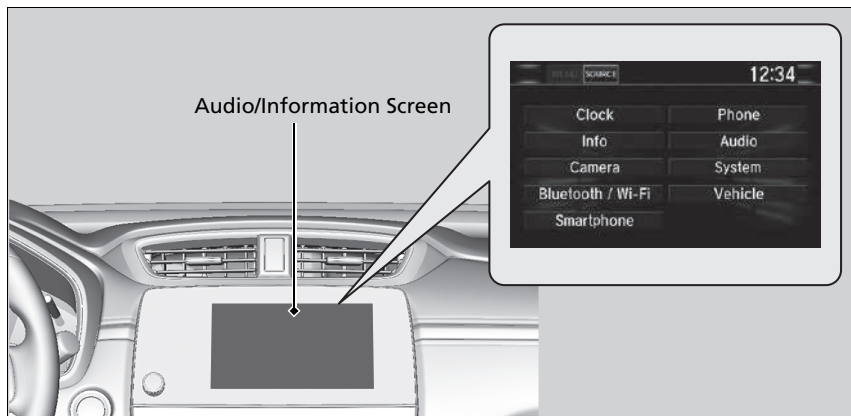
\* 1:Default Setting

## Models with Display Audio

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

### ■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, select , and **Settings**, then select a setting item.



## » Customized Features

When you customize settings:

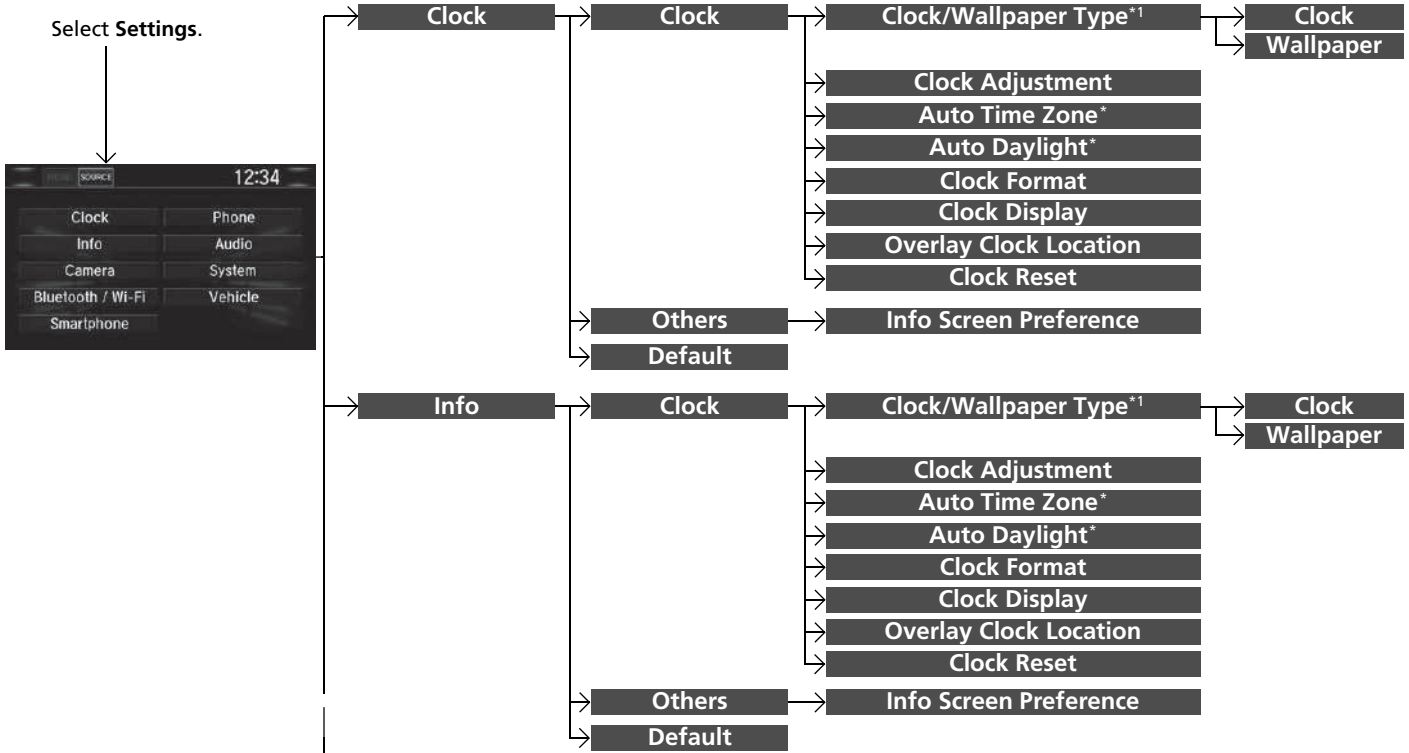
- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Put the transmission into **P**.

To customize features detail, refer to the following.

➤ **Customization flow** P. 399

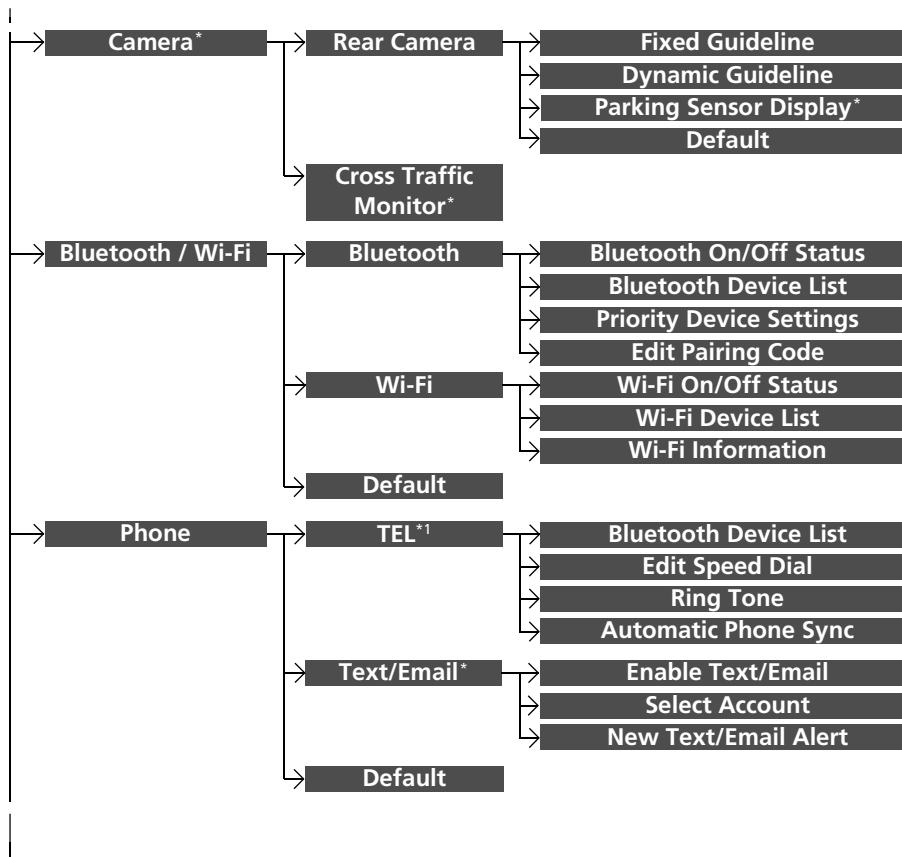
➤ **List of customizable options** P. 407

## ■ Customization flow



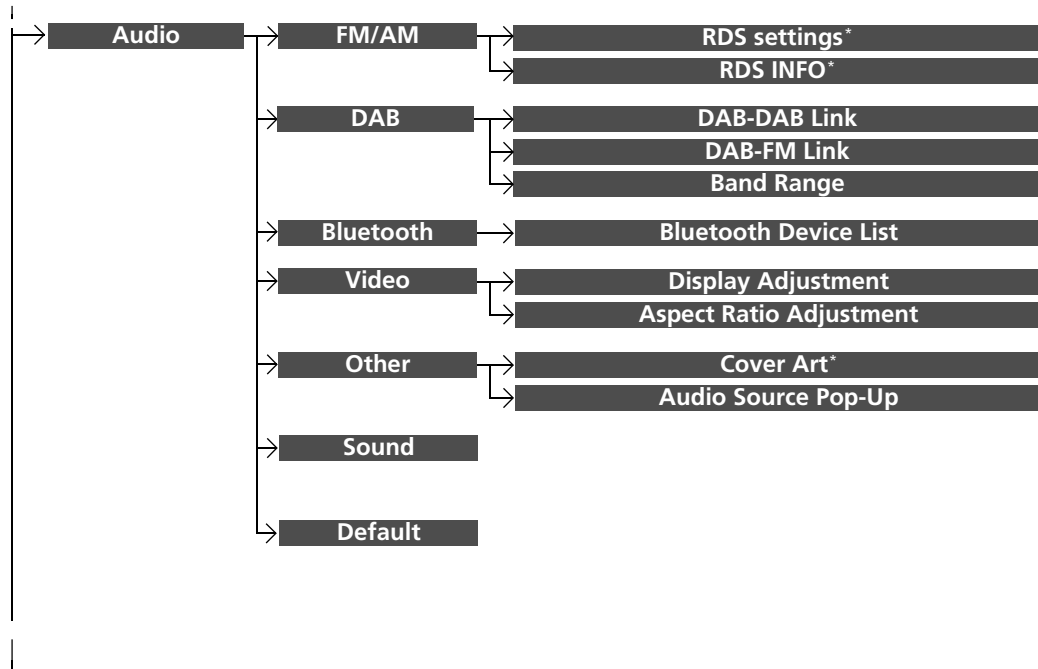
\*1: **Clock Type** appears when you change the screen interface design.

\* Not available on all models

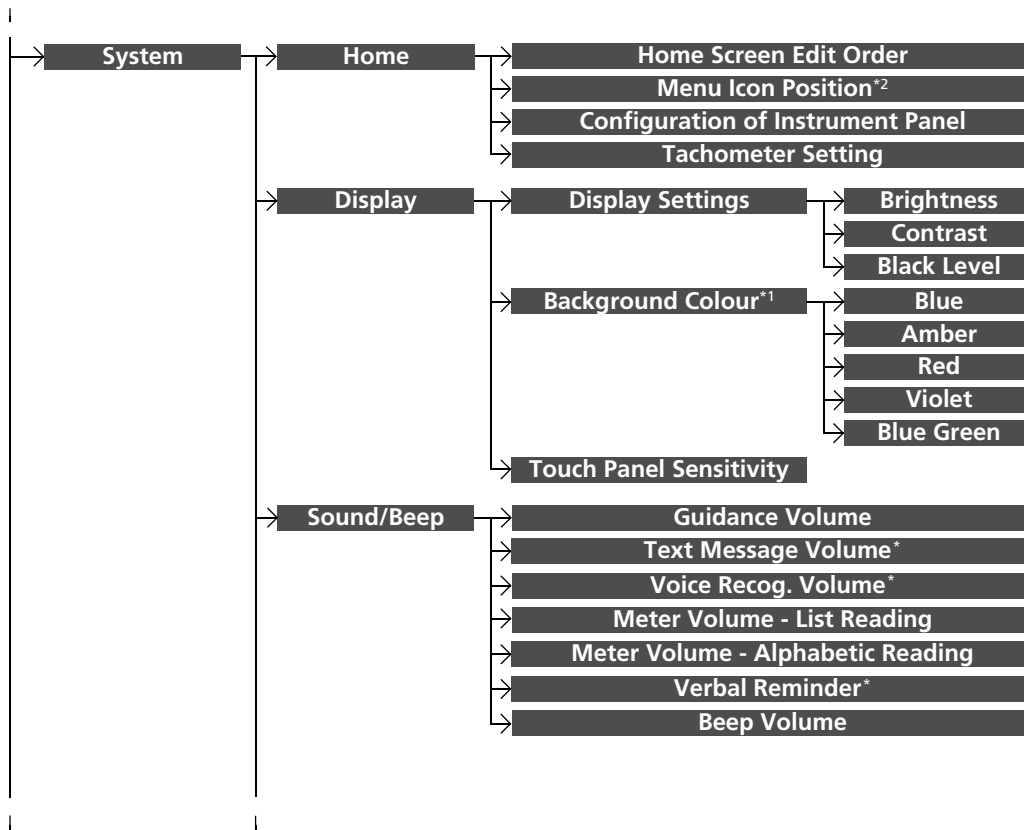


\* 1: **TEL** tab is displayed depending on models.

\* Not available on all models

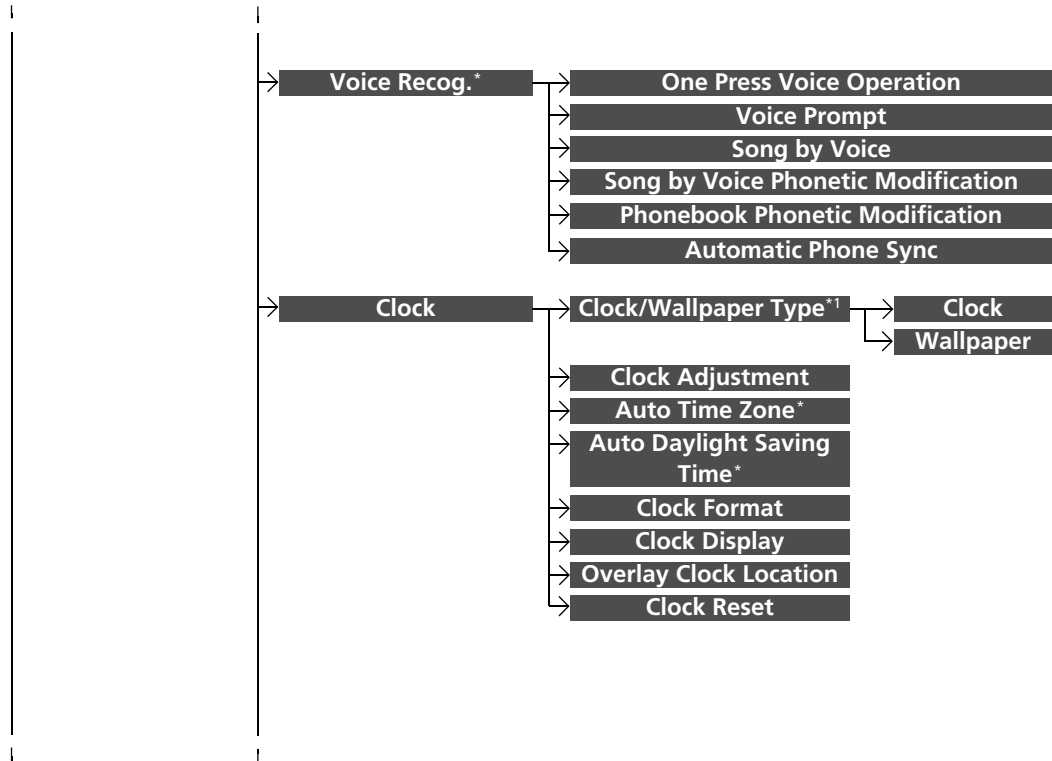






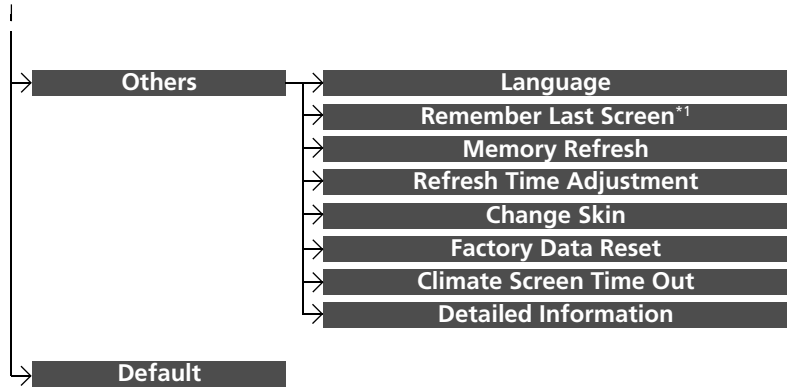
\*1 : Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

\*2 : Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

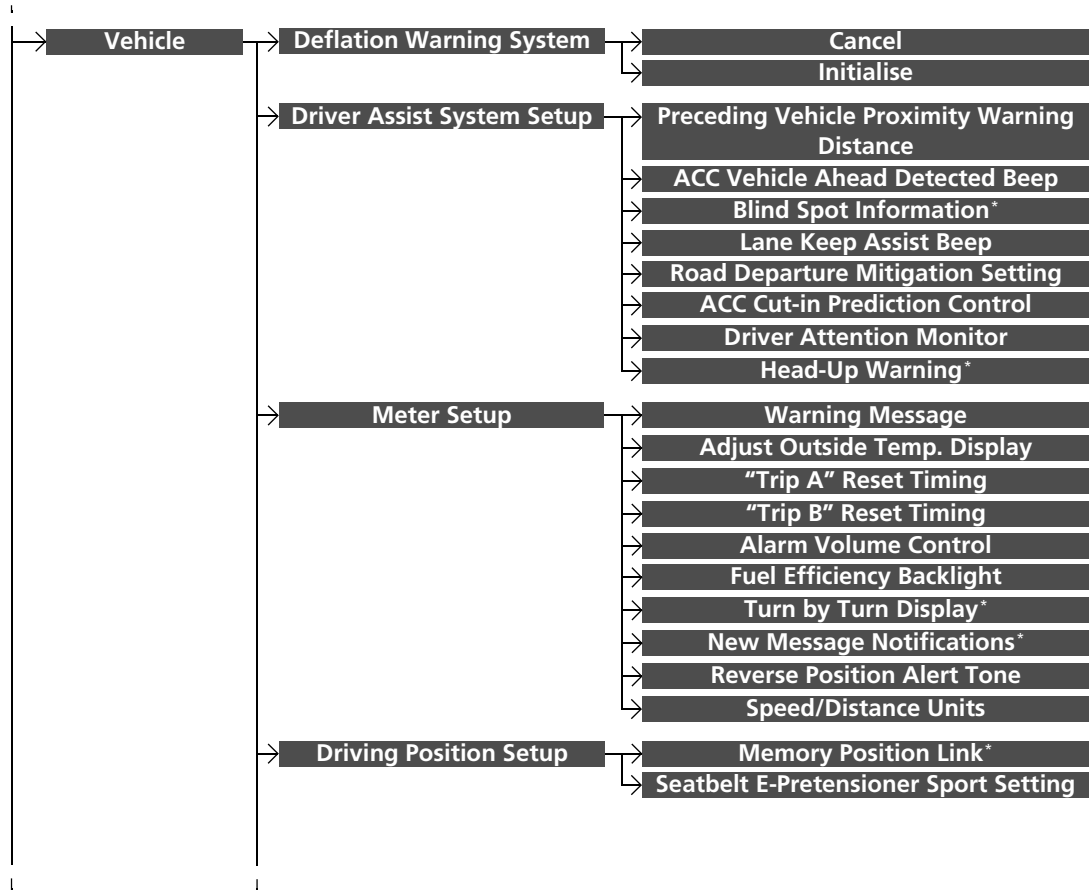


\*1: **Clock Type** appears when you change the screen interface design.

\* Not available on all models

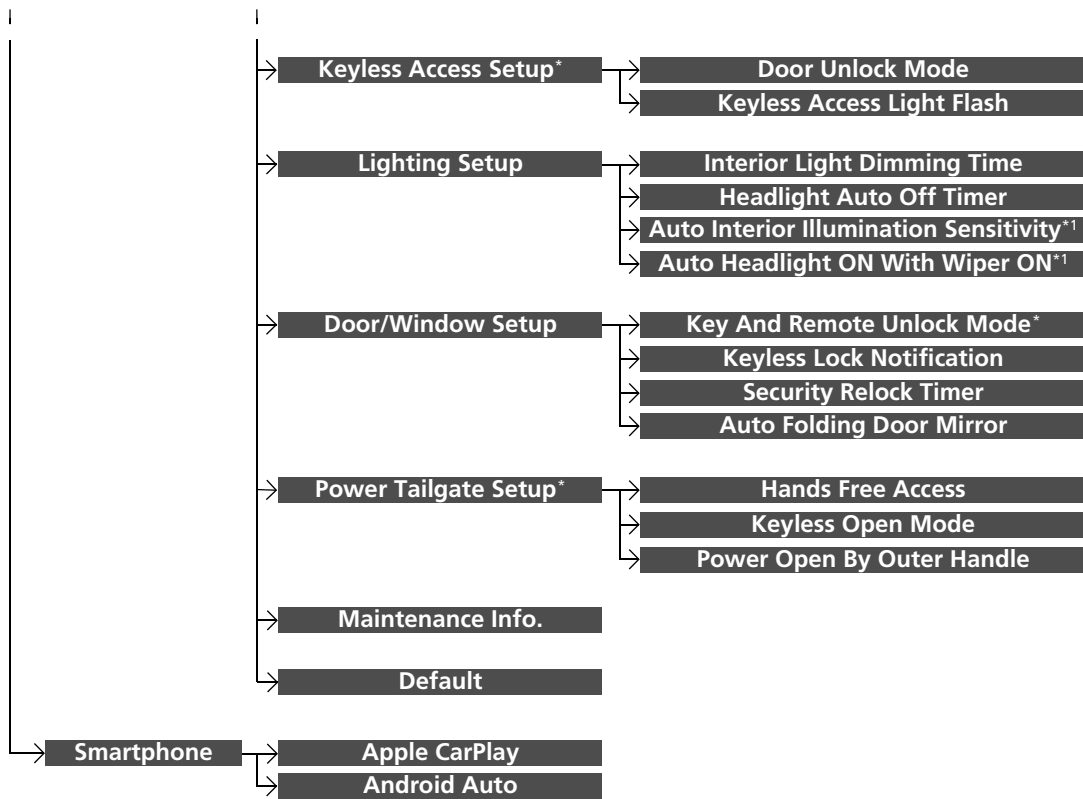


\*1 : Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.



Features

\* Not available on all models



\* 1: Because this screen phrase varies depending on the models, it used in this manual may differ from the actual screen phrase.

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
<b>Clock</b>	<b>Clock/Wallpaper Type<sup>*1</sup>/Clock Type<sup>*2</sup></b>	<b>Clock</b> <b>Wallpaper</b>		
	<b>Clock Adjustment</b>			
	<b>Auto Time Zone<sup>*</sup></b>			
	<b>Auto Daylight<sup>*</sup></b>			
	<b>Clock Format</b>			
	<b>Clock Display</b>			
	<b>Overlay Clock Location</b>			
	<b>Clock Reset</b>			
	<b>Others</b>	<b>Info Screen Preference</b>	See <b>Info</b> on P. 408	
	<b>Default</b>		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Clock</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

\*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.


\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Info	Clock	<b>Clock</b>	Changes the clock display type.	<b>Analog/Digital<sup>*1</sup>/ Small Digital/Off</b>
		<b>Wallpaper</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Changes the wallpaper type.</li> <li>• Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.</li> <li>• Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.</li> </ul>	<b>Blank/Galaxy<sup>*1</sup>/ Metallic</b>
		<b>Clock Adjustment</b>	Adjusts Clock.	—
		<b>Auto Time Zone<sup>*</sup></b>	Automatically adjusts the clock when driving through different time zones.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Auto Daylight<sup>*</sup></b>	Select <b>On</b> to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock to daylight savings time. Select <b>Off</b> to cancel this function.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Clock Format</b>	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	<b>12H<sup>*1</sup>/24H</b>	

\*1:Default Setting

\*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

\*3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Clock</b>	<b>Clock Display</b>	Selects whether the clock display comes on.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Overlay Clock Location</b>	Changes the clock display layout.	<b>Right Upper<sup>*1</sup>/Left Upper/Right Lower/Left Lower/Off</b>
	<b>Clock Reset</b>	Resets the clock settings to the factory default.	<b>Yes/No</b>
<b>Info</b>	<b>Others</b>	Selects the top menu when the  (display/information) button is pressed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Info Top</b>- A brief menu pops up.</li> <li>• <b>Info Menu</b>- A full menu pops up.</li> <li>• <b>Off</b>- A menu does not pop up.</li> </ul>	<b>Info Top/Info Menu<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Info</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Camera*	<b>Rear Camera</b>		
	<b>Fixed Guideline</b>	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Multi-View Rear Camera</b> * P. 616	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Dynamic Guideline</b>	Selects whether the guidelines adjust to the movement of the steering wheel. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Multi-View Rear Camera</b> * P. 616	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Parking Sensor Display*</b>	Selects whether to turn on the parking sensor display.	<b>Normal View/Split View<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Rear Camera</b> setting group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>
<b>Cross Traffic Monitor*</b>	<b>Cross Traffic Monitor</b>	Turns the cross traffic monitor feature on and off.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>

\*1:Default Setting


Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings		
Bluetooth / Wi-Fi	<b>Bluetooth On/Off Status</b>	Changes the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® status.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>		
	<b>Bluetooth Device List</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. ☑ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 455	—		
	<b>Bluetooth</b>	<b>Priority On/Off Status</b>	Enables the system to or disables it from automatically establishing a connection with a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® device which has been assigned priority.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>	
		<b>Priority Device Settings</b>	<b>Audio</b>	Selects the priority device over another paired audio device(s).	—
			<b>Phone</b>	Selects the priority device over another paired phone(s).	—
		<b>Edit Pairing Code</b>	Edits a pairing code. ☑ <b>To change the pairing code setting</b> P. 456	<b>Random/Fixed*<sup>1</sup></b>	
		<b>Wi-Fi On/Off Status</b>	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	<b>On/Off*<sup>1</sup></b>	
	<b>Wi-Fi</b>	<b>Wi-Fi Device List</b>	Connects, disconnects, or deletes the Wi-Fi device.	—	
		<b>Wi-Fi Information</b>	Shows the Wi-Fi information of the head unit.	—	
	<b>Default</b>		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Bluetooth / Wi-Fi</b> group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>	

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone	<b>Bluetooth Device List</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT, connects or disconnects a paired phone. ➤ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 455	—
	<b>TEL</b> <sup>*2</sup> <b>Edit Speed Dial</b>	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ➤ <b>Speed Dial</b> P. 461	—
	<b>Ring Tone</b>	Selects the ring tone.	<b>Fixed/Mobile Phone</b> <sup>*1</sup>
	<b>Automatic Phone Sync</b>	Sets a phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
	<b>Enable Text/Email</b>	Turns the text/e-mail message function on and off.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
	<b>Text/Email</b> <sup>*</sup> <b>Select Account</b>	Selects a text or e-mail message account.	—
	<b>New Text/Email Alert</b>	Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFT receives a new text/e-mail message.	<b>On/Off</b>
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Phone</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\*1:Default Setting


\*2:**TEL** tab is displayed depending on models.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Audio	<b>RDS settings*</b> FM/AM mode <b>FM/AM</b>	<b>TA Information</b>	Turns on and off the traffic information.	<b>On/Off</b> <sup>*1</sup>
		<b>AF</b>	Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same programme as you enter different regions.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
		<b>REG</b>	Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
		<b>News</b>	Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news programme.	<b>On/Off</b> <sup>*1</sup>
		<b>RDS INFO</b> <sup>*</sup>	Turns on and off the RDS information.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
		<b>DAB-DAB Link</b>	Selects whether the system automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
	<b>DAB mode</b> <b>DAB</b>	<b>DAB-FM Link</b>	Selects whether the system finds the same station from an FM band, and automatically switches the band.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
		<b>Band Range</b>	Selects specific bands to reduce the time to update the lists, and search for a station.	<b>BOTH</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>BAND III/L-BAND</b>
	<b>Bluetooth</b> <sup>®</sup> mode <b>Bluetooth</b>	<b>Bluetooth Device List</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone.  <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 455	—

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Video	Display Adjustment	<b>Brightness</b>	See <b>System</b> on P. 415	
		<b>Display Contrast</b>		
		<b>Black Level</b>		
	Colour	<b>Colour</b>	Changes the colour of the audio/information screen.	—
		<b>Tint</b>	Changes the tint of the audio/information screen.	—
Audio	<b>Aspect Ratio Adjustment</b>	Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio from <b>Original</b> , <b>Normal</b> , <b>Full</b> and <b>Zoom</b> .	<b>Original/Normal<sup>*1</sup>/Full/Zoom</b>	
Other	[Your selected media] <b>Cover Art*</b>	Turns the cover art display on and off.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>	
	<b>Audio Source Pop-Up</b>	Selects whether the list of selectable audio source comes on when <b>Audio</b> is selected on the home screen.	<b>On/Off<sup>*1</sup></b>	
Sound		Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.  <b>Adjusting the Sound</b> P. 343	—	
Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Audio</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>	

\*1: Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings		
System	Home	<b>Home Screen Edit Order</b>	Changes the home screen icon layout.	—	
		<b>Menu Icon Position</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Changes the position of the menu icons on the <b>Audio</b> , <b>Phone</b> , and <b>Info</b> screen.	—	
		<b>Configuration of Instrument Panel</b>	Changes the <b>Instrument Panel</b> screen icon layout.	—	
		<b>Tachometer Setting</b>	Not available on this model.	—	
	Display	Display Settings	<b>Brightness</b>	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
			<b>Contrast</b>	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
<b>Black Level</b>			Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—	


\*1:Default Setting

\*2:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
System	Display	<b>Background Colour<sup>*2</sup></b>	Changes the background colour of the audio/information screen.	<b>Blue<sup>*1</sup>/Amber/Red/Violet/Blue Green</b>
		<b>Touch Panel Sensitivity</b>	Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	<b>High/Low<sup>*1</sup></b>
	Sound/Beep	<b>Guidance Volume</b>	Changes the sound volume. Adjusts the guidance volume of the navigation system.	<b>0~6<sup>*1</sup>~11</b>
		<b>Text Message Volume<sup>*</sup></b>	Changes the text/e-mail message reading volume.	<b>1~6<sup>*1</sup>~11</b>
		<b>Voice Recog. Volume<sup>*</sup></b>	Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	<b>1~6<sup>*1</sup>~11</b>
		<b>Meter Volume - List Reading</b>	Changes the list reading volume.	<b>0~6<sup>*1</sup>~11</b>
		<b>Meter Volume - Alphabetic Reading</b>	Changes the alphabetic reading volume.	<b>0~6<sup>*1</sup>~11</b>
		<b>Verbal Reminder<sup>*</sup></b>	Turns the verbal reminders on and off.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Beep Volume</b>	Changes the beep volume.	<b>Off/1/2<sup>*1</sup>/3</b>

\*1: Default Setting

\*2: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
System	Voice Recog.*	<b>One Press Voice Operation</b>	Changes the setting of the  (Talk) button operation when using the voice operation.	On*/Off
		<b>Voice Prompt</b>	Turns the voice prompt on and off.	On*/Off
		<b>Song by Voice</b>	Turns the Song By Voice™ on and off.	On*/Off
		<b>Song by Voice Phonetic Modification</b>	Modifies a voice command for music stored in the system or an iPod/iPhone. ▶ <b>Phonetic Modification</b> P. 361	—
		<b>Phonebook Phonetic Modification</b>	Modifies a voice command for the phonebook. ▶ <b>Phonebook Phonetic Modification*</b> P. 464	—
		<b>Automatic Phone Sync</b>	Sets phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.	On/Off

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System	Clock	Clock/Wallpaper Type <sup>*1/</sup>	See <b>Info</b> on P. 408
		Clock Type <sup>*2</sup>	
		Clock Adjustment	
		Auto Time Zone*	
		Auto Daylight Saving Time*	
		Clock Format	
		Clock Display	
		Overlay Clock Location	
Clock Reset			

\*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

\*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
System	Others	<b>Language</b>	Change the display language.	<b>English</b> (United Kingdom)* <sup>1</sup> or <b>Turkish</b> * <sup>1</sup> : See other selectable languages on the screen.
		<b>Remember Last Screen</b> * <sup>2</sup>	Selects whether the device remembers the last screen.	<b>On/Off</b> * <sup>1</sup>
		<b>Memory Refresh</b>	Turns on the audio system automatically and restores the fragmentation of a memory when the power mode is VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).	<b>On</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
		<b>Refresh Time Adjustment</b>	Sets the time for <b>Memory Refresh</b> .	—
		<b>Change Skin</b>	Changes the screen interface design.	<b>Yes/No</b>
		<b>Factory Data Reset</b>	Resets all the settings to their factory default. ☑ <b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 425	<b>Yes/No</b>
		<b>Climate Screen Time Out</b>	Changes the length of time the climate control display stays on when you press the <b>CLIMATE</b> button.	<b>Never/5 Seconds/10 Seconds</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>20 Seconds</b>
		<b>Detailed Information</b>	Displays the details of the head unit and operating system information.	—
<b>Default</b>		Cancels /Resets all customized items in the <b>System</b> group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>	

\*1:Default Setting

\*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	<b>Driver Assist System Setup</b>		
	<b>Deflation Warning System</b>	Initialises the deflation warning system.	<b>Cancel/Initialise</b>
	<b>Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance</b>	Changes the distance at which CMBS alerts.	<b>Far/Normal*<sup>1</sup>/Near</b>
	<b>ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep</b>	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC with LSF range.	<b>On/Off*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>Blind Spot Information*</b>	Changes the setting for the blind spot information.	<b>Audible And Visual Alert*<sup>1</sup>/Visual Alert Only/Off</b>
	<b>Lane Keep Assist Beep</b>	Causes the system to beep when Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is suspended.	<b>On/Off*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>Road Departure Mitigation Setting</b>	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	<b>Normal/Delayed*<sup>1</sup>/Warning Only/Early</b>
	<b>ACC Cut-in Prediction Control</b>	Turns the ACC cut-in prediction control feature on and off.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Driver Attention Monitor</b>	Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor.	<b>OFF/Tactile Alert Only/Tactile And Audible Alert*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>Head-Up Warning*</b>	Turns the head-up warning on and off.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Meter Setup	<b>Warning Message</b>	Selects whether the warning message comes on the driver information interface.	<b>On/Off<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>Adjust Outside Temp. Display</b>	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	<b>-3°C ~ ±0°C<sup>*1</sup> ~ +3°C</b>
	<b>“Trip A” Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A.	<b>When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>“Trip B” Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B.	<b>When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>Alarm Volume Control</b>	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	<b>Max/Mid<sup>*1</sup>/Min</b>
	<b>Fuel Efficiency Backlight</b>	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Vehicle	Meter Setup	<b>Turn by Turn Display*</b>	Selects whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance in the meter and head-up display*.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		<b>New Message Notifications*</b>	Used to select whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFT receives a new text/e-mail message.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		<b>Reverse Position Alert Tone</b>	Causes the beeper to sound when you put the transmission into <b>R</b> .	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
	<b>Speed/Distance Units</b>	Selects the trip computer units.	mph·miles <sup>*2</sup> / km/h·km <sup>*2</sup>	
	Driving Position Setup	<b>Memory Position Link*</b>	Turns the driving position memory system on and off.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		<b>Seatbelt E-Pretensioner Sport Setting</b>	Turn on or off the seatbelt auto tension setting that removes seatbelt slack when the vehicle is started and during sporty manoeuvres.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
Keyless Access Setup*	<b>Door Unlock Mode</b>	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	Driver Door Only <sup>*1</sup> / All Doors	
	<b>Keyless Access Light Flash</b>	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off	

\*1: Default Setting

\*2: The default setting varies depending on the model.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Vehicle	Lighting Setup	<b>Interior Light Dimming Time</b>	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	<b>15sec/30sec<sup>*1</sup>/60sec</b>
		<b>Headlight Auto Off Timer</b>	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	<b>0sec/15sec<sup>*1</sup>/30sec/60sec</b>
		<b>Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity<sup>*2</sup></b>	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the <b>AUTO</b> position.	<b>Max/High/Mid<sup>*1</sup>/Low/Min</b>
		<b>Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON<sup>*2</sup></b>	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the <b>AUTO</b> position.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	Door/ Window Setup	<b>Key And Remote Unlock Mode<sup>*</sup></b>	Sets up the driver's door or all the doors to unlock on the first push of the remote.	<b>Driver Door Only<sup>*1</sup>/All Doors</b>
		<b>Keyless Lock Notification</b>	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Security Relock Timer</b>	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	<b>90sec/60sec/30sec<sup>*1</sup></b>
		<b>Auto Folding Door Mirror</b>	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	<b>Auto Fold With Keyless<sup>*1</sup>/Manual Only</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\*2:Because this screen phrase varies depending on the models, it used in this manual may differ from the actual screen phrase.

\* Not available on all models

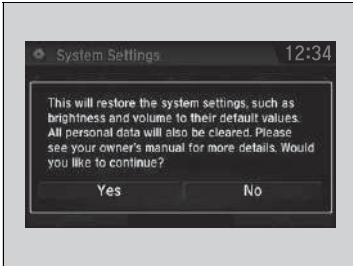
Continued


Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Vehicle	<b>Hands Free Access</b>	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>	
	<b>Power Tailgate Setup<sup>*</sup></b>	<b>Keyless Open Mode</b>	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	<b>Anytime<sup>*1</sup>/When Unlocked</b>
	<b>Power Open By Outer Handle</b>	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.	<b>Off (Manual only)/On (Power/Manual)<sup>*1</sup></b>	
	<b>Maintenance Info.</b>	Used to reset the service reminder system information display*/oil monitor system information* when the maintenance service has been performed.	—	
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Vehicle settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>	
Smartphone	<b>Apple CarPlay</b>	Sets up the Apple CarPlay connection.	—	
	<b>Android Auto</b>	Sets up the Android Auto connection.	—	

\*1: Default Setting

## Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
  - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to reset the settings.
7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
  - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ After selecting **OK**, the system will reboot.

### Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.



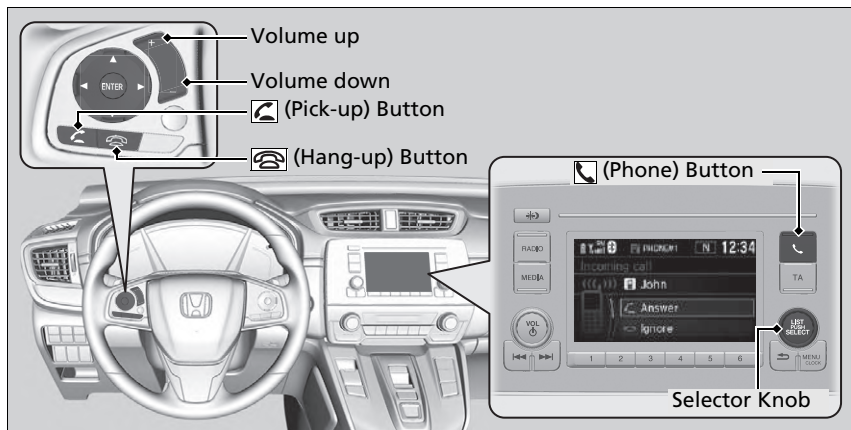
# Hands-Free Telephone System

## Models with colour audio system

The Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

## Using HFT



### HFT Buttons



**(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the phone screen or to answer an incoming call.

**(Hang-up) button:** Press to end a call.

**(Phone) button:** Press to go directly to the phone screen.

**Selector knob:** Rotate  to select an item on the screen, then press .

### Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer.

Up to 20 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

 **Speed Dial** P. 440

Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

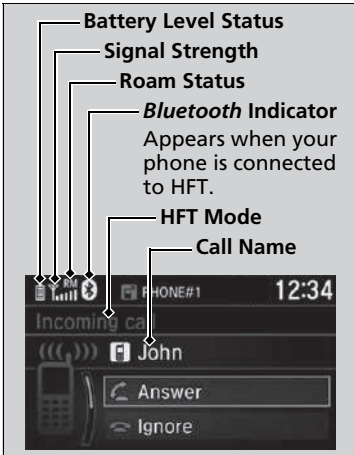
### *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth SIG, Inc.*, and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

### HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

## ■ HFT Status Display



The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

## ▣ HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

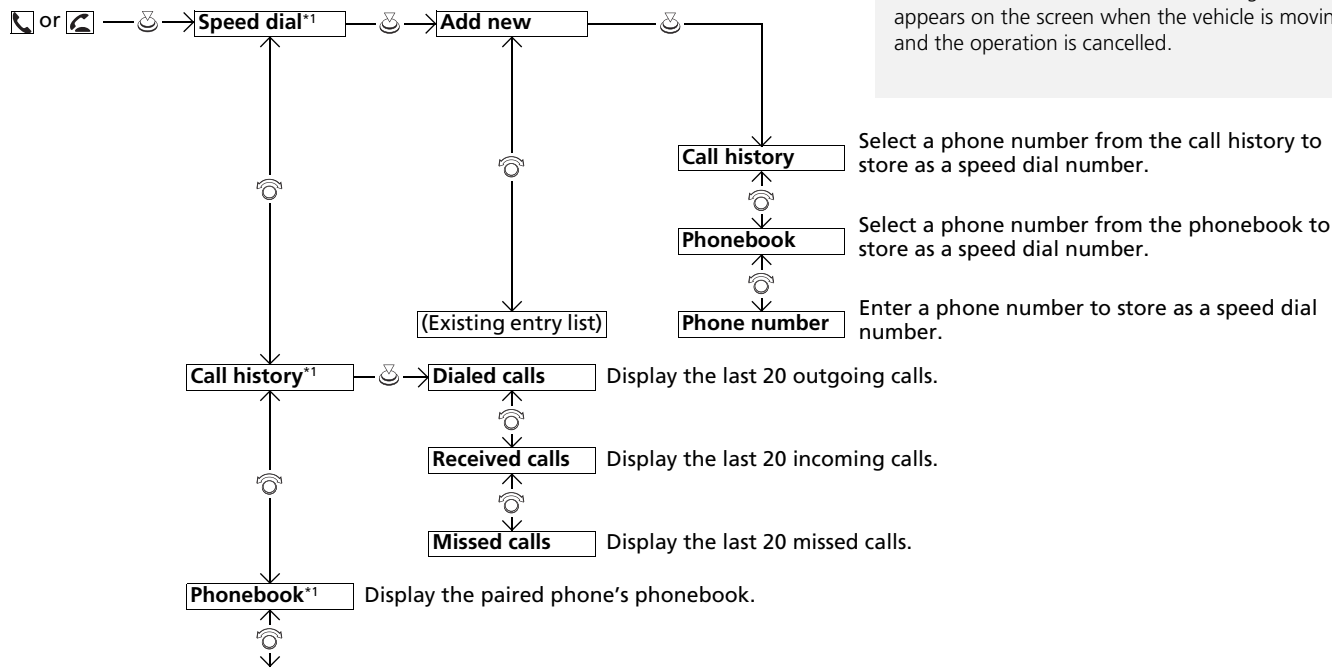
## HFT Menu

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use HFT.

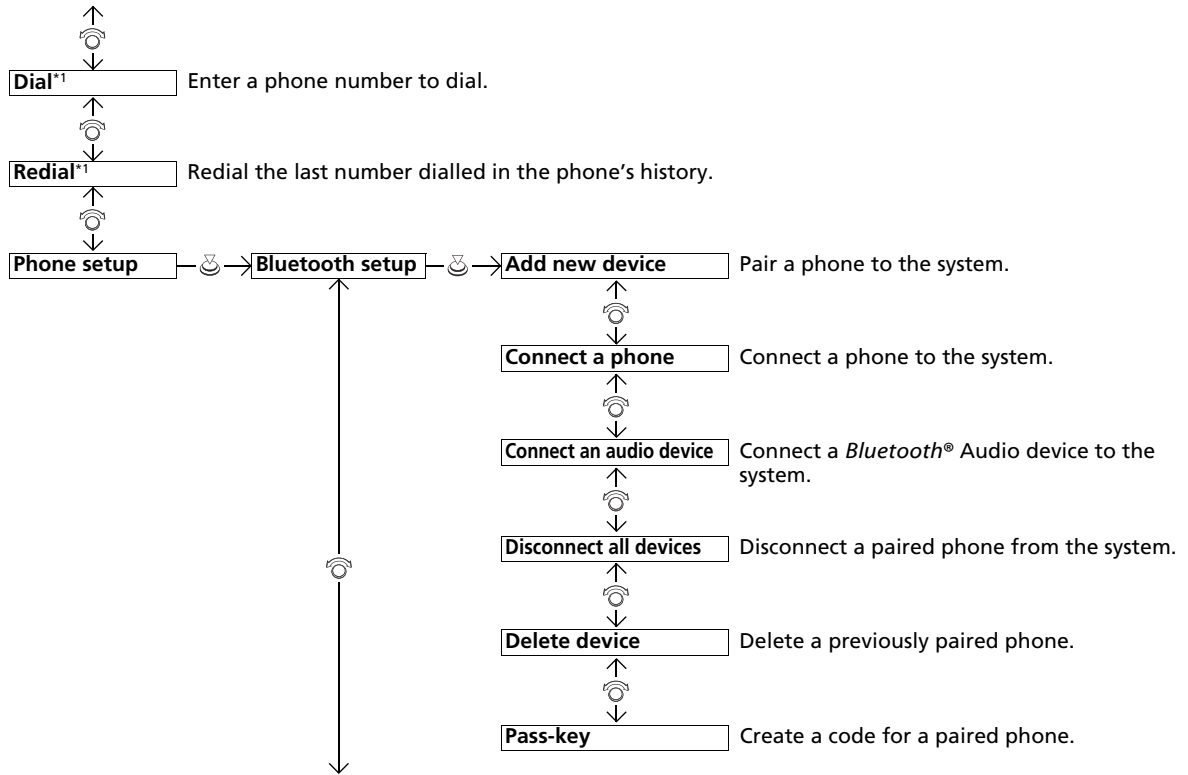
▶ HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

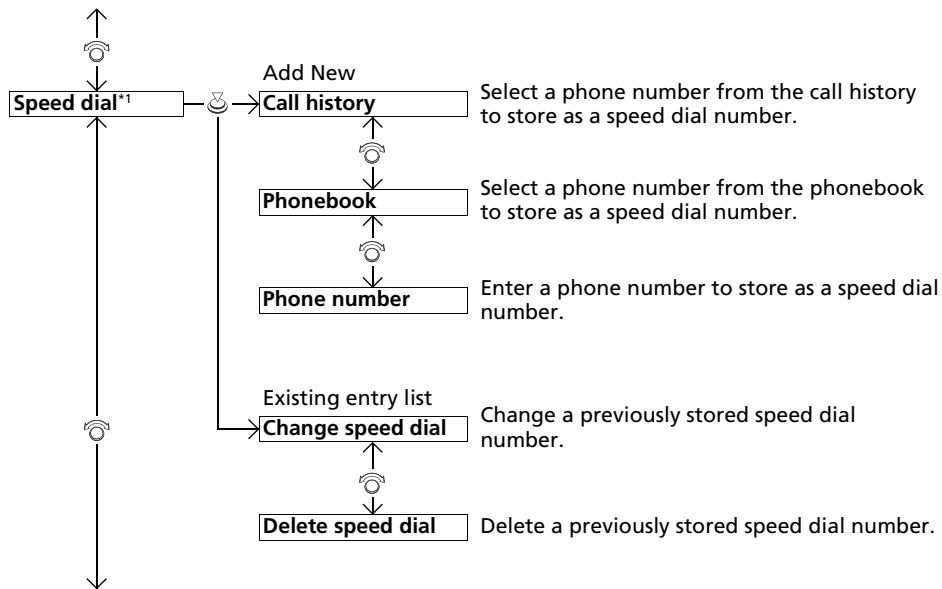
Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is cancelled.



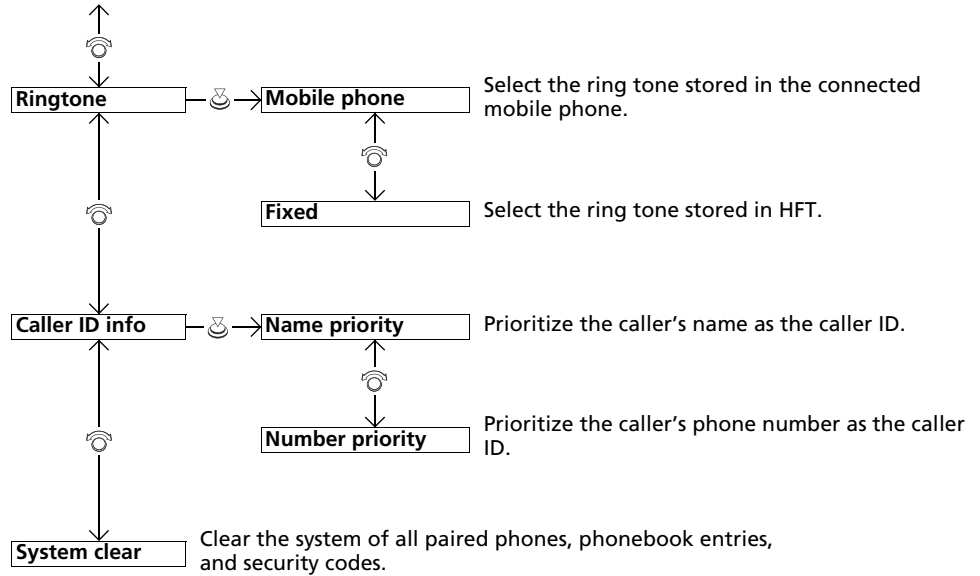
\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



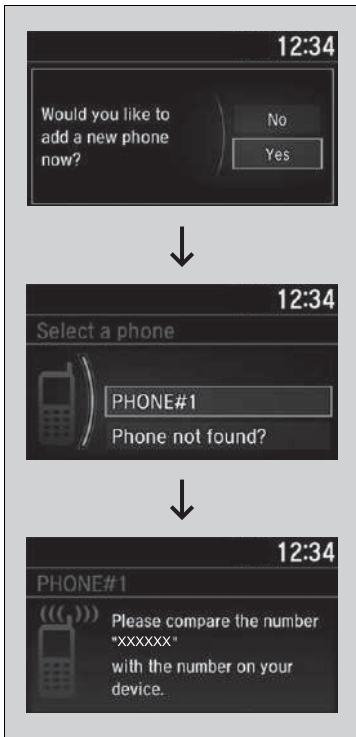
\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



## Phone Setup



### ■ To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Press to select **OK**.
4. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
  - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
5. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
  - ▶ If your phone doesn't appear, select **Phone not found?** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.
6. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
7. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

## ☒ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFT before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

### Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFT.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within 30 seconds, the system will time out and return to idle.

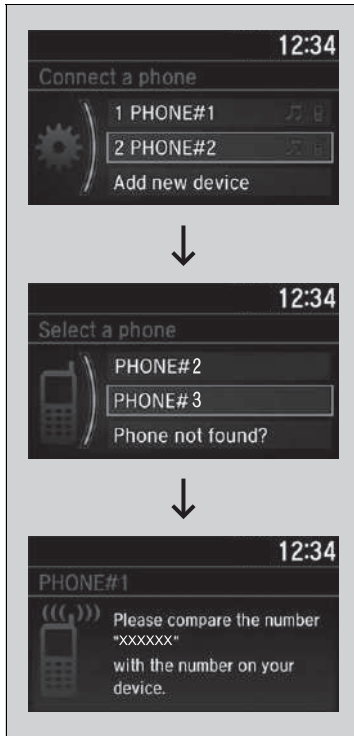
Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

: The phone can be used with HFT.

: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

■ **To pair a mobile phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)**



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Add new device**, then press .
4. Press to select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen changes to device list.
5. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
  - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> device.
6. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
  - ▶ If your phone does not appear, select **Phone not found?** and search for *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> devices using your phone. From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.
7. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by a phone.





■ **To change the currently paired phone**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Connect a phone**, then press .
  - ▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a desired device name, then press .
  - ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.



### ■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Pass-key**, then press .
5. Input a new pairing code, then press .



■ **To delete a paired phone**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete device**, then press .  
▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

## Ring Tone

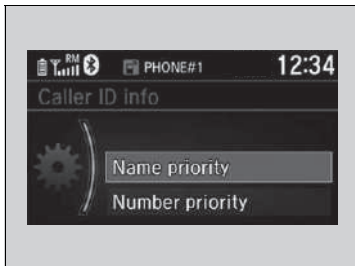
You can change the ring tone setting.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Ringtone**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Mobile phone** or **Fixed**, then press .

## Caller's ID Information

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Caller ID info**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a mode you want, then press .

### Ring Tone

**Mobile phone:** Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

**Fixed:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

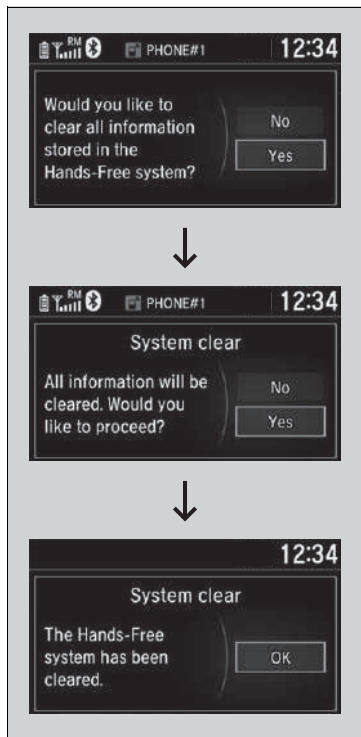
### Caller's ID Information

**Name priority:** A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.

**Number priority:** A caller's phone number is displayed.

## ■ To Clear the System

Pairing codes, paired phones, all speed dial entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data are erased.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **System clear**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
6. A notification appears on the screen. Press .

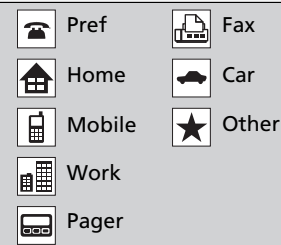
## Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFT.



### Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



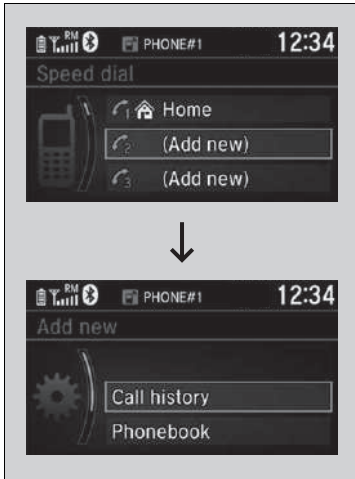
If a name has four or more numbers, ... appears instead of category icons.

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFT.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

## ■ Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Add new**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a place to choose a number from, then press .
  - From **Call history**:
    - ▶ Select a number from the call history.
  - From **Phonebook**:
    - ▶ Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.
  - From **Phone number**:
    - ▶ Input the number manually.

## ▶▶ Speed Dial

When any preset button is pressed, the **Speed dial** screen is displayed.



### ■ To edit a speed dial

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Change speed dial**, then press .
6. Select a new speed dial number, then press .



### ■ To delete a speed dial number

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Delete speed dial**, then press .
  - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .



## ■ Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.



## ▶▶ Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



### ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to HFT.

1. Press the button or the button.
  2. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
  3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically.  
Rotate to select the initial, then press .
  4. Rotate to select a name, then press .
  5. Rotate to select a number, then press .
- ▶ Dialling starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Press the button or the button.
  2. Rotate to select **Dial**, then press .
  3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
  4. Rotate to select , then press .
- ▶ Dialling starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using redial

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Redial**, then press .
- ▶ Dialling starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **Dialed calls**, **Received calls**, and **Missed calls**.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Call history**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Dialed calls**, **Received calls**, or **Missed calls**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
- ▶ Dialling starts automatically.

### ▶▶ To make a call using redial

Press and hold the button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's call history.

### ▶▶ To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to HFT, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.



■ **To make a call using a speed dial entry**

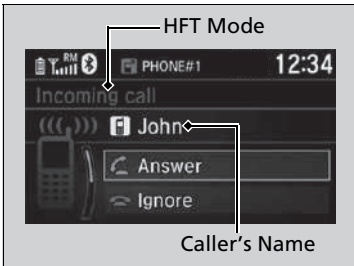
1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
  - ▶ Dialling starts automatically.

▶▶ To make a call using a speed dial entry

When any preset button is pressed, the **Speed dial** screen is displayed.

Select **Others** to view another paired phone's speed dial list.

■ **Receiving a Call**



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

- Press the button to answer the call.  
 Press the button to decline or end the call.

▶▶ Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and buttons. Rotate to select the icon, then press .

## Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.




**Swap call:** Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Transfer call:** Transfer a call from HFT to your phone.

**Dial tones:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



1. To view the available options, press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select the option, then press .  
▶ Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

## Options During a Call

**Dial tones:** Available on some phones.

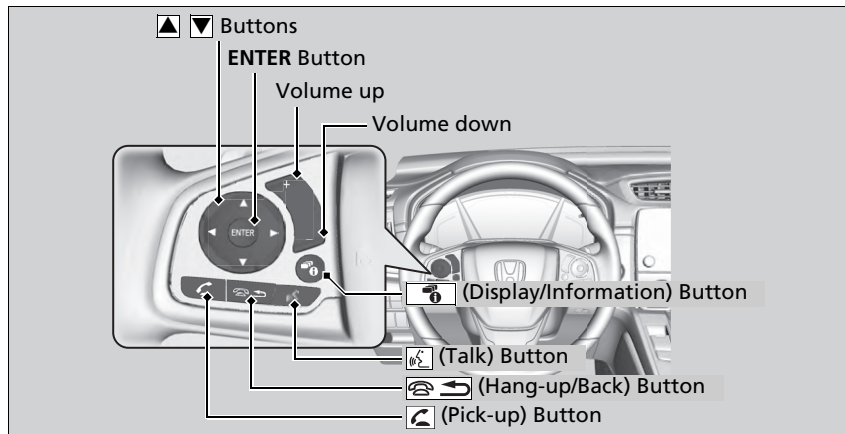
# Hands-Free Telephone System

## Models with Display Audio

The Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

## Using HFT

### HFT Buttons



### Hands-Free Telephone System


Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, HFT is unavailable.

➤ **How to customize** P. 398

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press the  button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag, a phonebook name, or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.


Up to three speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered.


➤ **Speed Dial** P. 461


Up to three previous calls can be displayed at a time among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

Continued


 **(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the phone menu on the driver information interface or head-up display\*, or to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up/back) button:** Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.


 **(Talk) button:** Press to access Voice Portal.

 **buttons:** Press to select an item displayed on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

**ENTER button:** Press to call a number listed in the selected item on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

 **(Display/information) button:** Select and press **ENTER** to display **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Phonebook** on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

To go to the **Phone Menu** screen:

1. Select  to switch the display to the phone screen.
2. Select **MENU**.

#### Hands-Free Telephone System

##### *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Wireless Technology

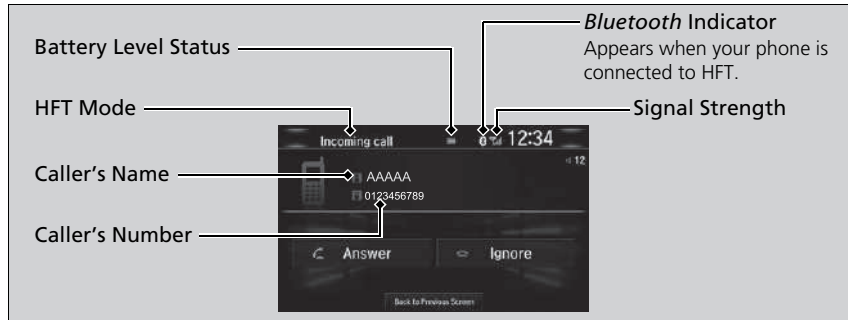
The *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

##### HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

## ■ HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

📞 **Speed Dial** P. 461

## ▣ HFT Status Display

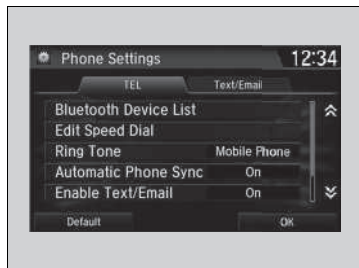
The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.



## HFT Menu

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system.

### ■ Phone Settings screen



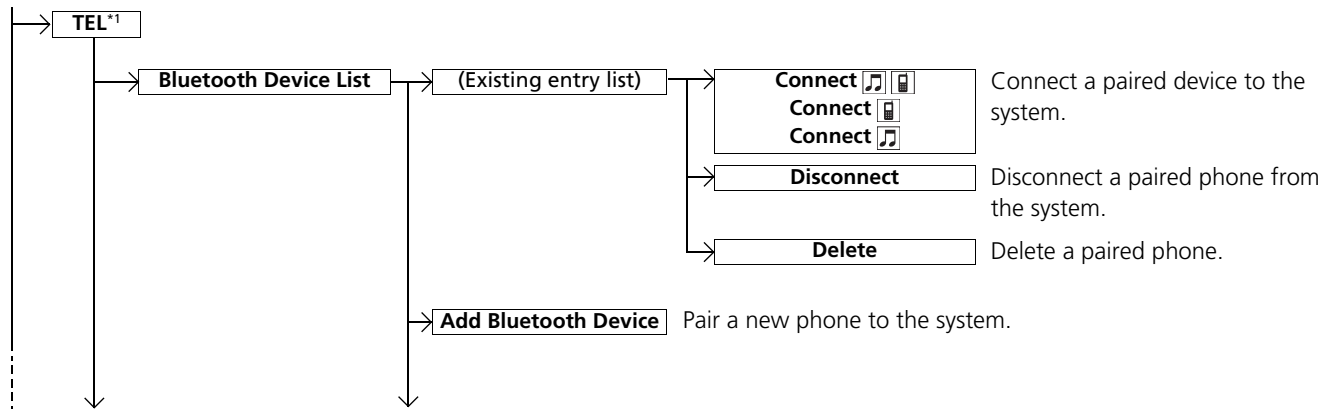
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Phone**.

▶▶ HFT Menu

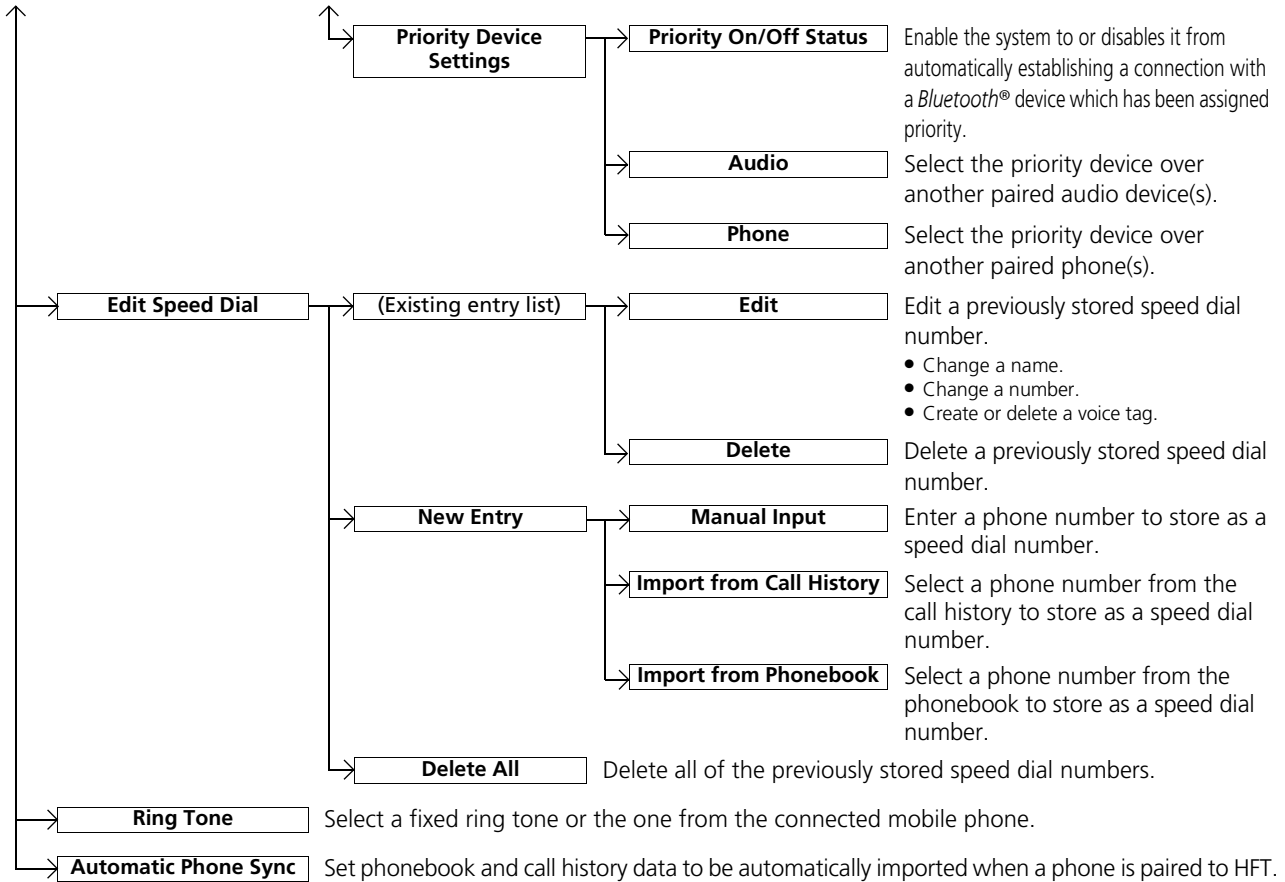
To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

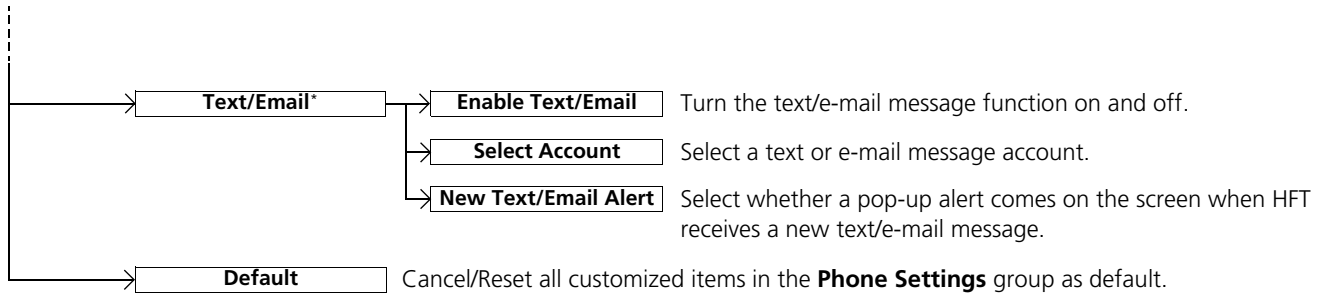
Some functions are limited while driving.

Features



\*1: TEL tab is displayed depending on models.

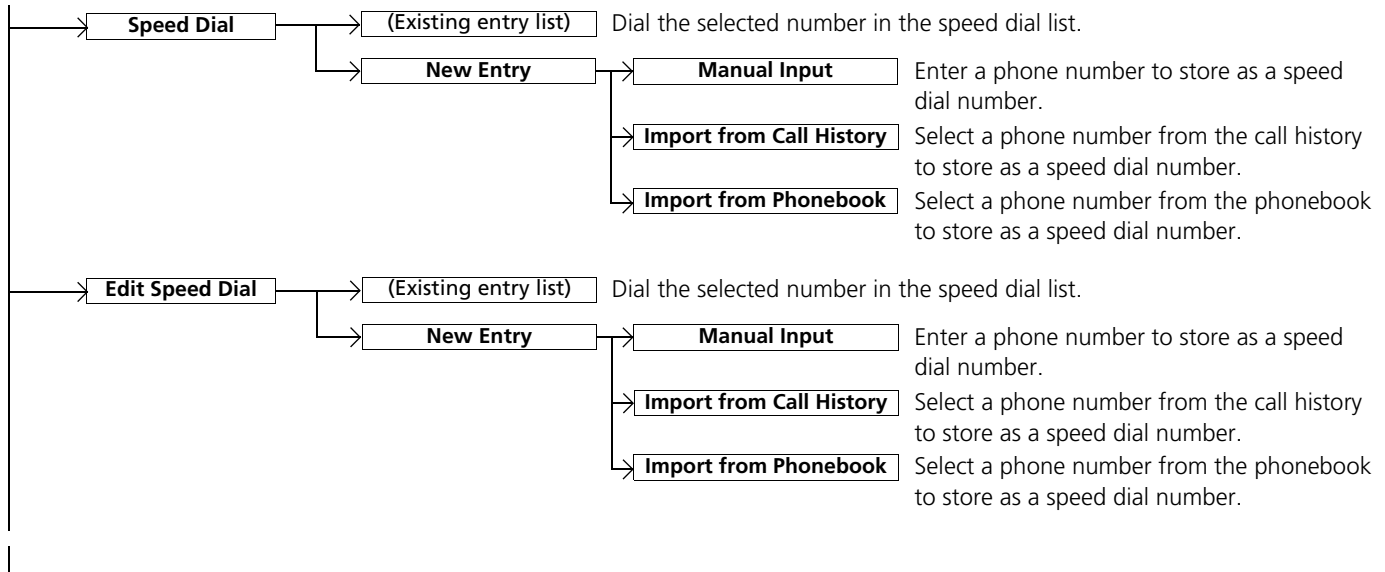


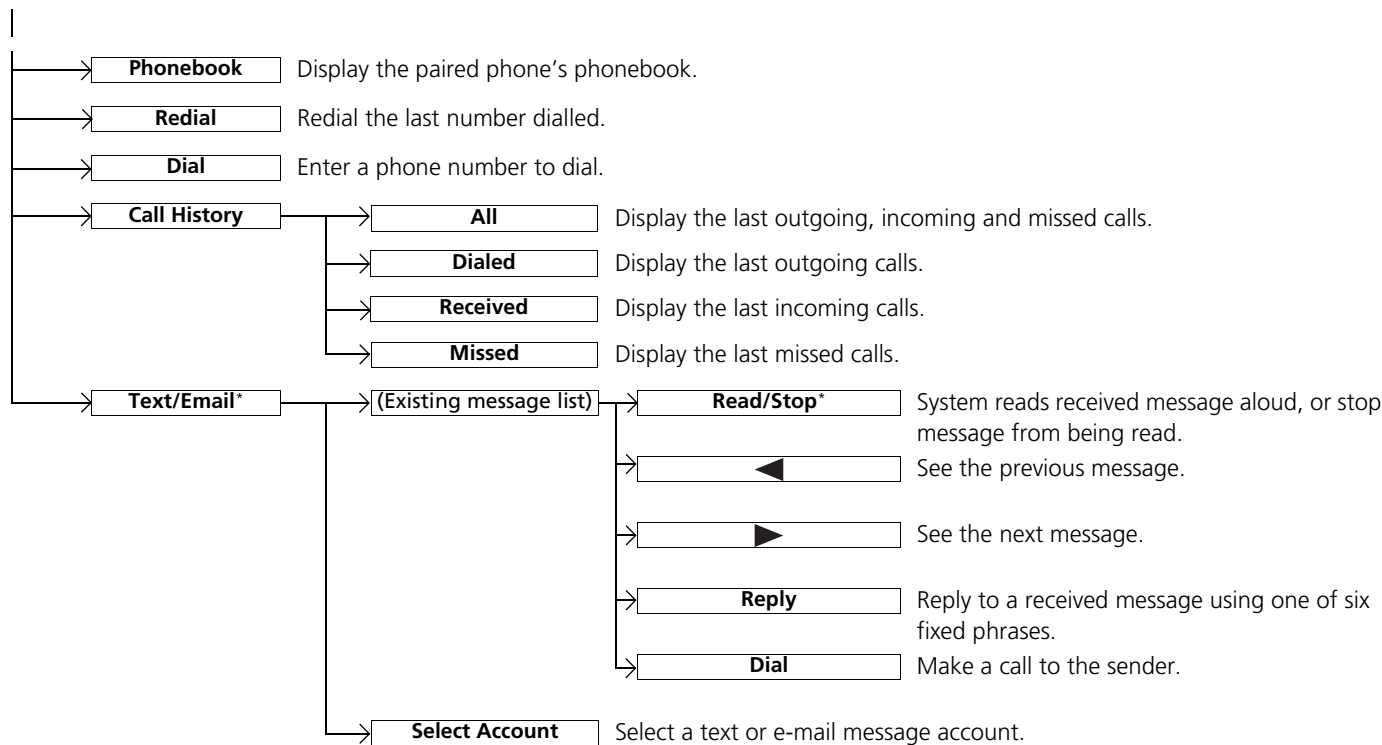


## ■ Phone Menu screen

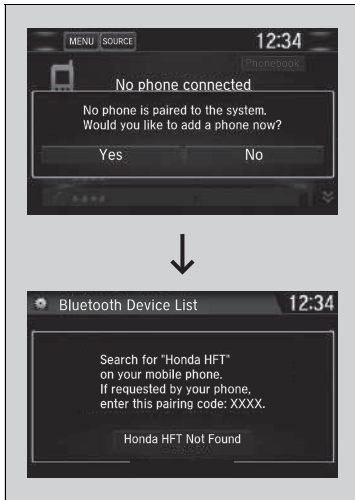


1. Select .
2. Select **MENU**.






## Phone Setup



### ■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select .
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
4. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
  - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Honda HFT Not Found, Continue**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list. If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.
  - ▶ You can prioritise a *Bluetooth*® device at the same time. Select **Yes** and then a device you want to prioritise.

### ☒ Phone Setup


Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.


#### Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

: The phone can be used with HFT.





: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable.

Continued



■ **To change the currently paired phone**

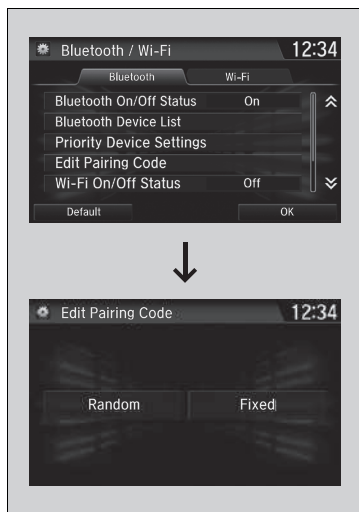
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 450
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
  - ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
4. Select **Connect**  , **Connect** , or **Connect** .

▶▶ To change the currently paired phone


If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

To change the *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> connection priority device setting, select **Priority Device Settings** from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.



■ **To change the pairing code setting**

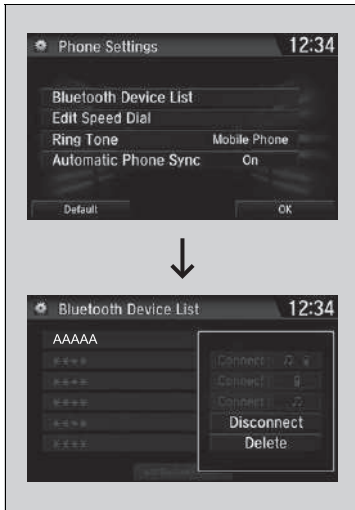
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Bluetooth** tab.
5. Select **Edit Pairing Code**.
6. Select **Random** or **Fixed**.

▶▶ To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.

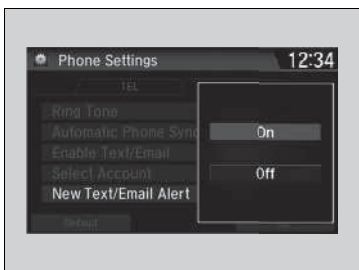
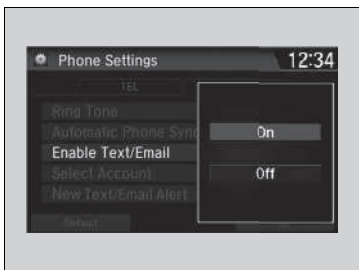


### ■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Settings** screen P. 450
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone you want to delete.
4. Select **Delete**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.



## ■ To Set Up Text/E-mail Message Options\*



### ■ To turn on or off the text/e-mail message function

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 450
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Enable Text/Email**.
  - ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

### ■ To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 450
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **New Text/Email Alert**.
  - ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

## ☒ To Set Up Text/E-mail Message Options\*

To use the text/e-mail message function, it may be necessary to set up on your phone.

Some text/e-mail message features may not be available depending on a mobile phone.

## ☒ To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice

**On:** A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new message.

**Off:** The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.

## Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



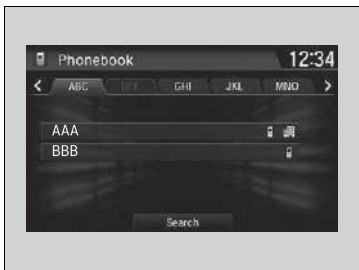
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 450
2. Select **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Fixed** or **Mobile Phone**.

### Ring Tone

**Fixed:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.  
**Mobile Phone:** Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

*Continued*

## ■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History



### ■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

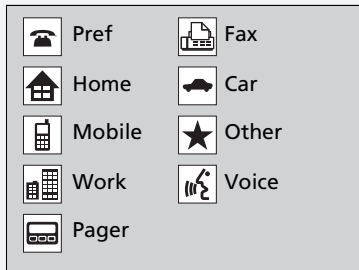
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

### ■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 450
2. Select **Automatic Phone Sync**.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

### ▶▶ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

## Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

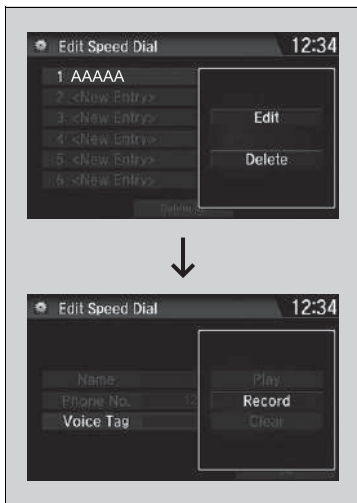


To store a speed dial number:


- Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 453
- Select **Speed Dial**.
- Select **New Entry**.  
 From **Import from Call History**:  
 ▶ Select a number from the call history.  
 From **Manual Input**:  
 ▶ Input the number manually.  
 From **Import from Phonebook**:  
 ▶ Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.
- When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.
- Select **Record**, or use the **[MFC]** button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

## Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the **[MFC]** button to call the number using the voice tag. Say the voice tag name.



■ **To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number**

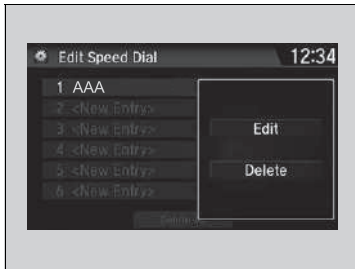
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 450
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
 ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.  
 ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
5. Select **Record**, or use the  button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

■ **To delete a voice tag**

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 450
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
 ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.  
 ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

▶▶ Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.  
 Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.  
 It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name.  
 For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."



### ■ To edit a speed dial

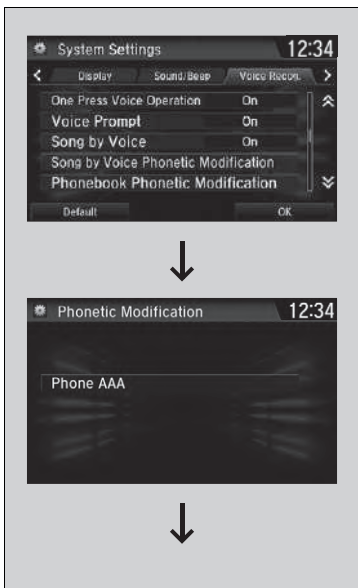
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 450
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
  - ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select a setting you want.

### ■ To delete a speed dial


1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 450
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
  - ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## ■ Phonebook Phonetic Modification \*

Add phonetic modifications or a new voice tag to the phone's contact name so that it is easier for HFT to recognize voice commands.




### ■ To add a new voice tag

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to add phonetic modification to.

## ▶▶ Phonebook Phonetic Modification \*

You can store up to 20 phonetic modification items.



7. Select **[New Voice Tag]**.
8. Select a contact name you want to add to.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
9. Select **Modify**.
10. Using **Record** or the  button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
11. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.



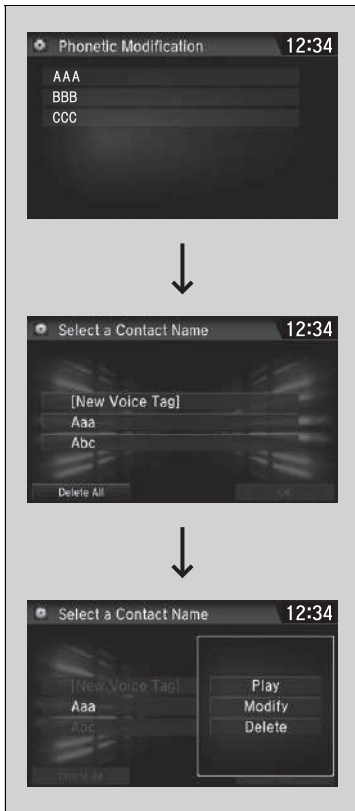


■ **To modify a voice tag**


1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to modify phonetic modification.
7. Select a contact name you want to modify.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
8. Select **Modify**.
9. Using **Record** or the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
10. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.

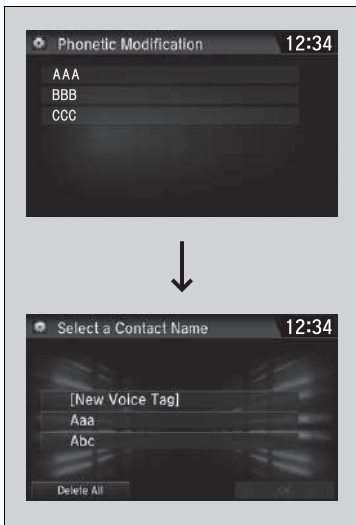
▶▶ Phonebook Phonetic Modification \*

You can only modify or delete contact names for the currently connected phone.




### ■ To delete a modified voice tag

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification.
7. Select a contact name you want to delete.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
8. Select **Delete**.
  - ▶ The selected contact name has been selected.
9. Select **OK**.



### ■ To delete all modified voice tags

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification.
  - ▶ The contact name list appears.
7. Select **Delete All**.
8. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **Yes**.


### ■ Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

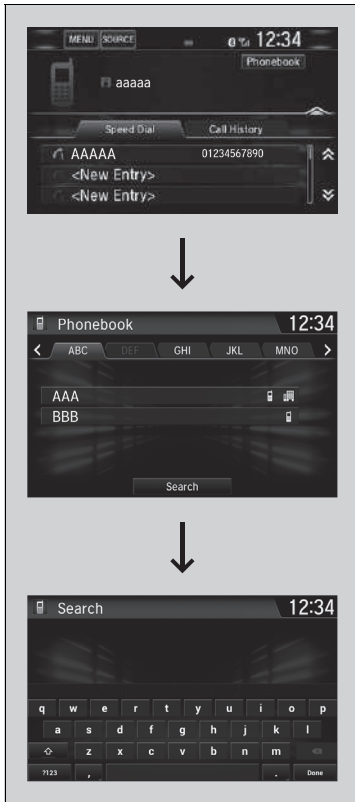
### ▶▶ Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialled by voice from most screens.


Press the  button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls can be made only from Apple CarPlay.



## ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Select .
2. Select **Phonebook**.
3. Select a name.
  - ▶ You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.
  - ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering name, if multiple numbers exist select a number.
4. Select a number.
  - ▶ Dialling starts automatically.

## ☒ To make a call using the imported phonebook


You can also select **Phonebook** on the **Phone Menu** screen.

You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 461



■ **To make a call using a phone number**

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 453
2. Select **Dial**.
3. Select a number.
  - ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select .
  - ▶ Dialling starts automatically.



■ **To make a call using redial**

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 453
2. Select **Redial**.
  - ▶ Dialling starts automatically.



■ **To make a call using the Call History**

- Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.
1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
    - ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 453
  2. Select **Call History**.
  3. Select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**.
  4. Select a number.
    - ▶ Dialling starts automatically.

☞ **To make a call using a phone number**

You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

- ▶ **Speed Dial** P. 461

☞ **To make a call using the Call History**


The call history displays the last 20 all, dialed, received, or missed calls. (Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)



### ■ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry


1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 453
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select a number.  
 ▶ Dialling starts automatically.

### ▶▶ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

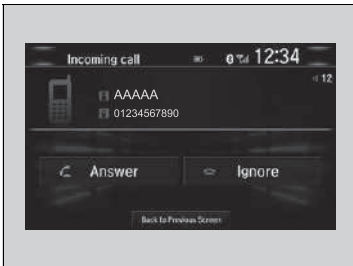
When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 461

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialled by voice from any screen.


Press the  button and follow the prompts.

## ■ Receiving a Call




When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming call** screen appears.


Press the  button to answer the call.

Press the  button to decline or end the call.


### ▶▶ Receiving a Call



#### Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the  and  buttons.

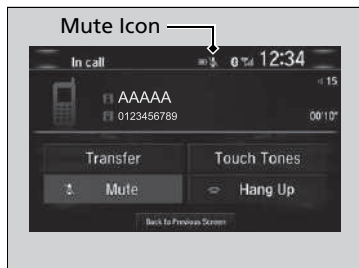
## ■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Transfer:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

**Touch Tones:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.

- ▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

## ☞ Options During a Call

**Touch Tones:** Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

## Receiving a Text/E-mail Message\*, \*1

HFT can display newly received text or e-mail messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a linked mobile phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.



1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text or e-mail message.
2. Select **Read** to listen to the message.
  - ▶ The text or e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
3. To discontinue the message read-out, select **Stop**.

\*1: Message will not be read out depending on the language.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## Receiving a Text/E-mail Message\*, \*1

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

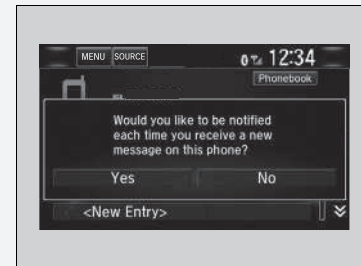
The system can only receive messages that are sent as text (SMS) messages. Messages sent using data services will not be displayed in the list.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text and e-mail messages.

Country or local laws may limit your use of the HFT text/e-mail message feature. Only use the text/e-mail message feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

When you receive a text or e-mail message for the first time since the phone is paired to HFT, you are asked to turn the **New Text/Email Alert** setting to **On**.

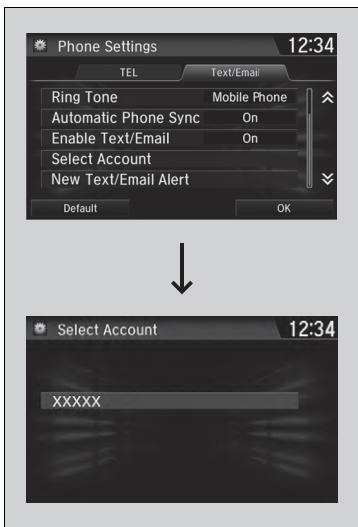
- ▶ **To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice** P. 458





## ■ Selecting a Text/E-mail Message Account\*

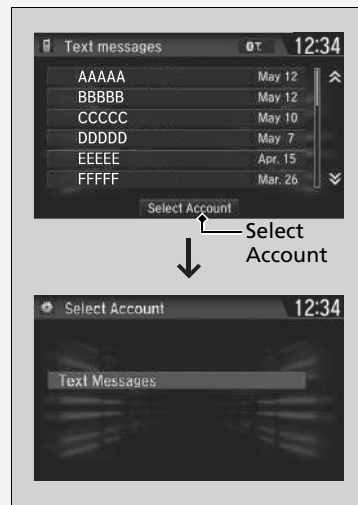
If a paired phone has text or e-mail message accounts, you can select one of them to be active and receive notifications.



1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 450
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Select Account**.  
 ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Text Messages** or an e-mail message account you want.

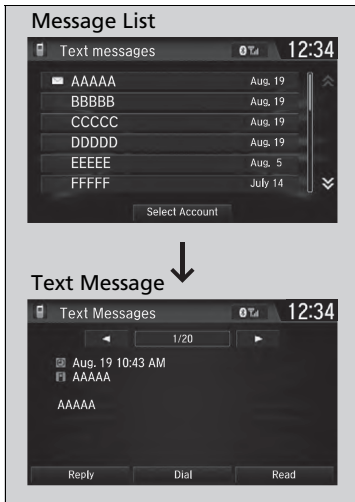
## ▶▶ Selecting a Text/E-mail Message Account\*

You can also select an e-mail message account from the folder list screen or the message list screen.



You can only receive notifications from one text or e-mail message account at a time.


## ■ Displaying Messages \*, \*1





### ■ Displaying text messages

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 453
2. Select **Text/Email**.  
 ▶ Select account if necessary.
3. Select a message.  
 ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

### ▶▶ Displaying Messages \*, \*1

The  icon appears next to an unread message.

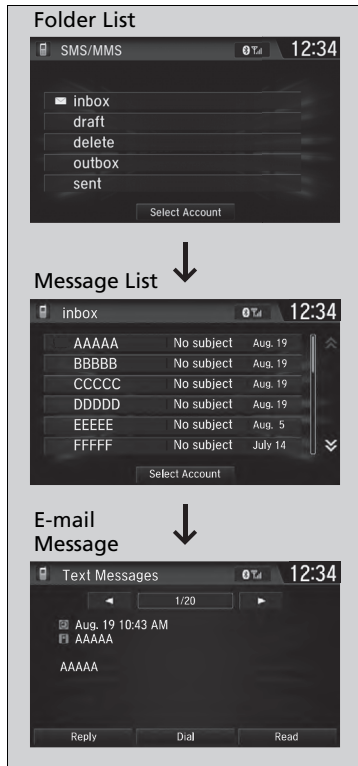
If you delete a message on the phone, the message is also deleted in the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's mailbox.

To see the previous or next message, select  (previous) or  (next) on the message screen.

\*1: Message will not be read out depending on the language.

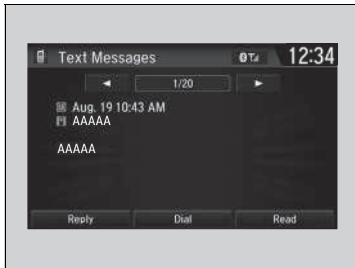
\* Not available on all models

*Continued*



### ■ Displaying e-mail messages

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 453
2. Select **Text/Email**.
  - ▶ Select **Select Account** if necessary.
3. Select a folder.
4. Select a message.
  - ▶ The e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.



### ■ Read or Stop reading a message

1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
  - ▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
    - ▣ **Displaying Messages\***, \*1 P. 475
2. Select **Stop** to stop reading.
  - Select **Read** again to start reading the message from the beginning.



### ■ Reply to a message

1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
  - ▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
    - ▣ **Displaying Messages\***, \*1 P. 475
2. Select **Reply**.
3. Select the reply message.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Send** to send the message.
  - ▶ **Message sent** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

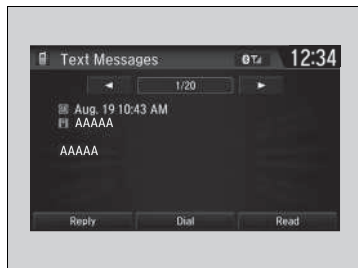
### ▣ Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:

- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I'm on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.

Only certain phones receive and send messages when paired and connected. For a list of compatible phones ask a dealer.



■ **Making a call to a sender**

1. Go to the text message screen.
2. Select **Dial**.

## Automatic emergency call



If your vehicle is involved in a collision, the SRS unit in the vehicle will attempt to connect to a Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) operator. Once a connection is established, various information about the vehicle will be sent to a PSAP operator with whom you will be able to speak. This information includes:

- Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- Type of vehicle (passenger vehicle or light-weight commercial vehicle)
- Type of energy stored for vehicle propulsion (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electricity/hydrogen)
- Last three locations of the vehicle
- Direction of travel
- Triggering mode (automatic or manual)
- Timestamp

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

When the power mode is set to ON. The eCall indicator lights up in green for 1 second, then in red for 1 second.

### Emergency Call (eCall)\*

Your vehicle is equipped with the 112-based eCall service system.

The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated when the power mode is set to ON. In the event of a collision, the system will determine the degree of the impact based on information collected from the on-board sensors and, depending on the severity of the collision, will initiate the emergency call.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed.

**Manual emergency call** P. 481

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC) and 2002/58/EC, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC).

Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of for which the single European emergency number 112 is designated.

\* Not available on all models

If the eCall system is working properly, the indicator will light up in green.

- Green: eCall system is ready.
- Blinking in green: eCall system is connected and making an eCall to a PSAP operator.
- Repeating a pattern of short flashes of the red light: The eCall system has failed to connect to an operator. The eCall indicator will continue this pattern for 30 seconds, then it will light up in green.

If the 112-based eCall system is disabled in the event of a critical system failure, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle:

- Red or blacked out: A problem with the eCall system has occurred. If the indicator stays red or blacked out even after you have restarted the vehicle, have the system check by a dealer.
- Blinking in red: The level of the backup battery is too low. While the power is in ON, the battery undergoes recharging. Once the battery has been recharged to a certain level, the eCall indicator lights up in green.

#### ►► Emergency Call (eCall)\*

Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country in which they are located and are the first to receive and for which the single European emergency number 112 is designated.

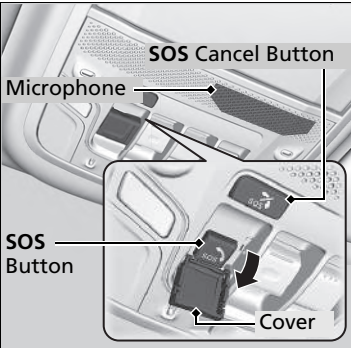
Your vehicle may NOT be able to connect to a PSAP operator if:

- both the 12V battery and backup battery are too low.
- your vehicle is in an area without adequate cellular coverage.
- There is a problem with the eCall system itself or its peripheral equipment such as the microphone or speakers.

The backup battery is designed to operate for at least 3 years, after which it may need to be replaced.

The backup battery is not available for direct purchase. For replacement, visit a dealer.

# Manual emergency call



If you need to make an emergency call, you can establish a connection manually: Press the **SOS** button and hold it for more than 0.5 seconds.

To cancel a call, press the **SOS** cancel button for more than 0.5 seconds, before 5 seconds has elapsed since the **SOS** button was pressed.

The **SOS** button is protected by a cover. Open the cover to gain access.

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

## Manual emergency call

Do NOT press the button while you are driving. If you need to contact an operator, park the vehicle in a safe place before you make a call.

If the eCall system at first fails to connect to a PSAP operator, it will try again until a connection is established. However, if 2 minutes have elapsed since the first try was attempted, the system will no longer attempt to establish a connection.

The **SOS** cancel button does not cancel a call once the system is connected to an operator.



#### Israeli models

מוצר : מערכת טלמטיקה ( כולל סוללת גיבו )

סימן רשום : DENSO

ארץ ייצור : ראה מוצר

דגם : OGEY02

שנת ייצור : ראה מוצר

Name of Importer: **Mayer's Cars and Trucks Co. Ltd.**

Importer's Address: 17 Yitzhak Sadeh St. Tel Aviv 677775, Israel

#### Emergency Call (eCall)\*

##### Data privacy

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed to ensure that:

- Data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
- It is not traceable or subject to any constant tracking during its normal operation status.
- Data in the internal memory of the system is automatically and continuously removed.

For the system to function normally, the vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so that the last three locations of the vehicle are kept up-to-date.

The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.

## ☒ Emergency Call (eCall)\*

**Owner's rights**

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC).

Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Honda eCall Service Information:

If you have any questions about eCall, contact the office relevant to the country in which you reside. See the service booklet for list of offices.



# Driving



This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

<b>Before Driving</b> .....	486	Agile Handling Assist .....	529	Front Sensor Camera .....	592
<b>Towing a Trailer</b> .....	490	Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System* .....	530	Radar Sensor .....	594
<b>Off-road Guidelines</b> .....	496	Deflation Warning System.....	531	<b>Braking</b>	
<b>When Driving</b>		Blind spot information System* .....	534	Brake System.....	595
Turning on the Power .....	498	High Voltage Battery.....	537	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	601
Precautions While Driving.....	501	Adjusting Headlight Distribution .....	538	Brake Assist System .....	602
Transmission .....	503	<b>Honda Sensing</b> .....	539	Emergency Stop Signal .....	603
Shifting .....	504	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) .....	542	<b>Parking Your Vehicle</b>	
SPORT Mode.....	510	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) .....	553	When Stopped .....	604
Deceleration Paddle Selector .....	511	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ..	570	Parking Sensor System* .....	606
ECON Mode .....	514	Road Departure Mitigation System... ..	578	Cross Traffic Monitor* .....	611
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System.....	515	Traffic Sign Recognition System .....	584	<b>Multi-View Rear Camera*</b> .....	616
Adjustable Speed Limiter.....	516			<b>Refueling</b> .....	618
Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	520			<b>Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions</b> ....	620
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System .....	527				

\* Not available on all models

## Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

### Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
    - ✦ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 665
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

### Exterior Checks

#### NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

## Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  - ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
    - ✦ **Load Limit** P. 489
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  - ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat\*.
  - ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  - ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  - ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
    - ✦ **Seats** P. 247
    - ✦ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 254
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  - ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
    - ✦ **Mirrors** P. 243
    - ✦ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 242

## Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  - ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  - 📖 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 55
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  - ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
    - 📖 **Indicators** P. 100

## Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

➤ **Specifications** P. 730

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

➤ **Specifications** P. 730

### ⚠ Load Limit

## ⚠ WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

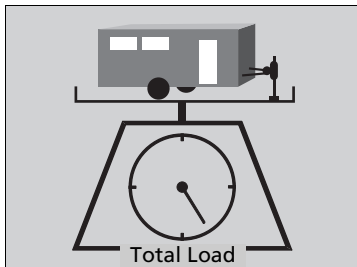
Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.



## Towing Preparation

### ■ Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



#### ■ Total trailer weight

Do not exceed the maximum towing weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes), luggage and everything in or on it.

Towing loads in excess of the maximum towing weight can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the power system and drivetrain.

### » Towing Load Limits

## ⚠ WARNING

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your luggage load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and then measure the tongue load with an appropriate scale or tongue gauge or estimate it based on luggage distribution. Refer to the trailer owner's manual for additional information.

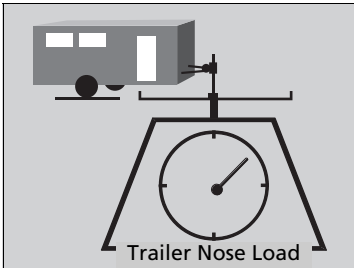
#### Break-in Period

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 1,000 km (625 miles).

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle and trailer weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 metres of elevation.

Never exceed the maximum towing weight and specified load limit.

» Specifications P. 730



### ■ Trailer nose load

The trailer nose load should never exceed 100 kg (220 lbs). This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for trailer weights of less than 750 kg (1,653 lbs), the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

- Excessive trailer nose load reduces front tyre traction and steering control. Too little trailer nose load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper trailer nose load, start by loading 60% of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40% toward the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

## ■ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

### ■ Towbars

The towbar must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

### ■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

### ■ Trailer brakes

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

### ■ Additional towing equipment

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

## ► Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets the regulations of the country where you are driving.

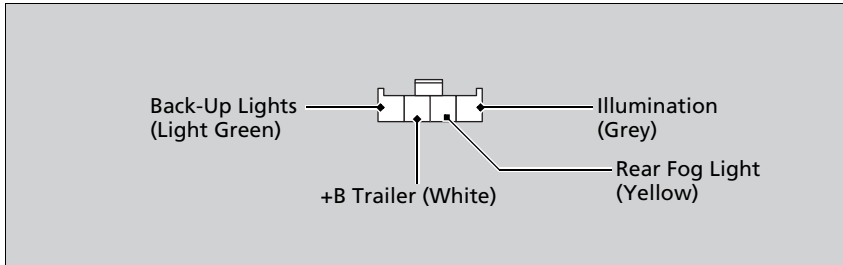
Consult your trailer maker for proper installation and setup of the equipment.

Improper installation and setup can affect the handling, stability, and braking performance of your vehicle.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

## ■ Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with the regulations of the country where you are driving. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.



We recommend that you have a dealer install a Honda wiring harness and converter. They are designed for your vehicle.

### ☒ Towing Equipment and Accessories

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

## Driving Safely with a Trailer

### ■ Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
  - ✎ **Towing Load Limits** P. 490
- Securely attach the towbar, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressures of the trailer tyres, including the spare.
- Check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.

### ✎ Driving Safely with a Trailer

Operating speed when towing a trailer must not exceed 100 km/h (62 mph).

#### Parking

In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.

We recommend you drive uphill of less than 12% slope. Follow the trailer association's recommendations for suitable roads.

Winds caused by passing large vehicles can sway your trailer, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead.

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when reversing.

## ■ Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.
- Use the **D** position when towing a trailer on level roads.

## ■ Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

## ■ Driving in Hilly Terrain

- Closely watch your high temperature indicator. If the indicator remains on, turn off the climate control system and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.

## General Information

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement, however, its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads. It is not designed for trail-blazing, or other challenging off-road activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills and that your vehicle will handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Pay attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

## Important Safety Precautions

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations:

- Be sure to store luggage properly and do not exceed your luggage load limits.
  - **Load Limit** P. 489
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

### Off-road Guidelines

## **WARNING**

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off pavement can cause an accident or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.
- Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

- **Important Handling Information** P. 46
- **Precautions While Driving** P. 501

## Avoiding Trouble

---

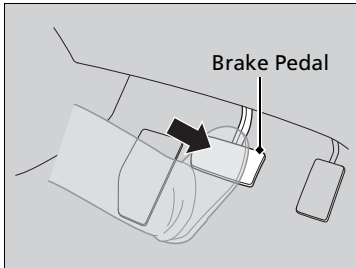
- **Check Out Your Vehicle** before you leave the pavement and make sure that all scheduled maintenance has been completed. Pay special attention to the condition of the tyres, and check the tyre pressures.
- **Remember** the route you choose presents limits (too steep or bumpy), you have limits (driving skill and comfort), and your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power). Failing to recognise these limits will likely put you and your passengers in a hazardous situation.
- **Accelerating and Braking** should be done slowly and gradually. Trying to start or stop too fast can cause a loss of traction and you could lose control.
- **Avoiding Obstacles and Debris** in the road reduces the likelihood of a rollover or damage to your suspension or other components.
- **Driving on Slopes** increases your risk of a rollover, particularly if you attempt to drive across a slope that is too steep. Going straight or down a slope is usually the safest. If you can't clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk it before you drive it. If there is any doubt whether you can safely pass, don't try it. Find another route. If you get stuck when climbing, do not try to turn around. Back down slowly following the same route you took up the hill.
- **Crossing a Stream** - Avoid driving through deep water. If you encounter water in your route (a small stream or large puddle, for example), evaluate it carefully before going ahead. Make sure it is shallow, flowing slowly, and has firm ground underneath. If you are not sure of the depth or the ground, turn around and find another route. Driving through deep water can also damage your vehicle. The water can get into the transmission and differential, diluting the lubricant and causing an eventual failure. It can also wash the grease out of the wheel bearings.
- **If You Get Stuck**, carefully go in the direction that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tyres as this will only make things worse and could damage the transmission. If you are unable to free yourself, your vehicle will need to be towed. Front and rear tow hooks are provided for this purpose.



## Turning on the Power



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
  - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.



2. Depress the brake pedal.

### Turning on the Power

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the power system.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce 12-volt battery drain.

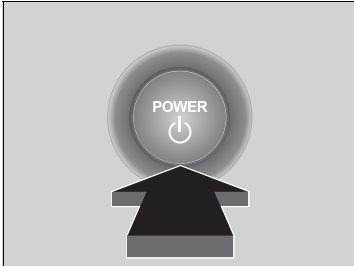
If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.





The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.

If an improperly coded device is used, the power system does not activate.

#### **Immobilizer System P. 206**

When you set the power mode to ON, you may feel as if the brake pedal is sinking down. This is normal.



3. Without depressing the accelerator pedal, press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal.
4. Check the  (Ready) indicator.
  - ▶ Keep depressing the brake pedal until the  indicator comes on.
  - ▶ The  indicator comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.
  - ▶ If the outside temperature is extremely low, you cannot drive until conditions are improved. In this case, the  indicator does not come on, as well as a warning message appears on the driver information interface.

▶ **Indicators** P. 100

## ■ Stopping the Power System

You can turn the power system off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Put the transmission into **P**.
2. Press the **POWER** button.

## ▶▶ Turning on the Power

Bring the keyless remote close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.



▶ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 704

The power system may not activate if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **POWER** button to start the power system.


If the power system does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

The engine may not run when the vehicle is ready for driving.

You can start driving with the  indicator on. If you press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal with the  indicator on, the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF and you cannot start driving.

▶ **Ready Indicator** P. 103

## ■ Starting to Drive


1. Depress the brake pedal and press the **POWER** button simultaneously.
2. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, check that the  indicator is on, then press the **D** button. Select **R** when reversing.
3. With the electric parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
  - ▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.
    - **Parking Brake** P. 595
    - **If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message** P. 718

## ■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator. Put the transmission into **D** when facing uphill, or **R** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

## ☒ Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

As a hybrid vehicle, the sounds and vibrations from the engine may be absent even though the vehicle is ready for driving. It also makes you fail to recognize that you can start. Make sure to check if the  indicator is on before you start to drive.

## ☒ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

## Precautions While Driving

### ■ Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt manoeuvres whenever possible.
- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the centre of gravity.
- Do not carry heavy luggage on the roof\*.

### ■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

### ■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

### ⊠ Precautions While Driving

**CAUTION:** Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

#### NOTICE

Do not select a shift button while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

#### NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not press the **N** button, as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

## ■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the power system or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

## ■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

## » Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km (625 miles) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the power system or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km (200 miles) after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors, to allow for proper break-in.

## » Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

- **Important Handling Information** P. 46
- **Precautions While Driving** P. 501

## » In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden regenerative braking can cause the tyres to skid.

## Transmission

---

### ■ Creeping

As with a conventional petrol-powered vehicle with an automatic transmission, this vehicle will creep.

Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

### ■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the vehicle to react similar to an automatic transmission vehicle, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

## Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

### ■ Shift button positions



**P** **Park**  
Used when parking or turning the power on or off.  
Transmission is locked.

**R** **Reverse**  
Used when reversing

**N** **Neutral**  
Transmission is not locked

**D** **Drive**

- Used for normal driving.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used when SPORT mode is on.

### ▶▶ Shifting

## ⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

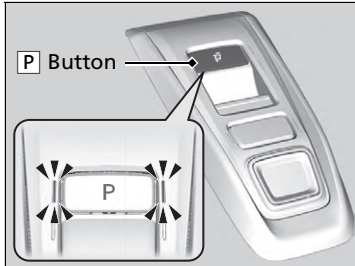
Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position Indicator.

To prevent malfunction and unintended engagement:

- Do not spill any liquids on or around shift buttons.
- Do not place or drop any objects on or around shift buttons.
- Do not let passengers or children operate the shift buttons.

While the High Voltage battery level is full, or the High Voltage battery temperature is low, regenerative braking may become less effective.

## ■ P (park) button



The shift position changes to **P** when you press the **P** button while the vehicle is parked with the power mode in ON. The indicators on the sides of the **P** button come on.

## ☒ Shifting

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when you depress the accelerator pedal with the shift position in **N**.

### ☒ Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages P. 123

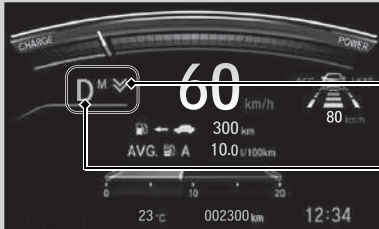
Change the shift position to **D** or **R** with the brake pedal depressed.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures ( $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

You may occasionally find that it takes longer than usual for the vehicle to start moving when you select **R**, release the brake pedal, and/or depress the accelerator pedal. This may occur when the High Voltage battery level is extremely low, and does not indicate a vehicle malfunction.



## ■ Shift Operation



Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator

Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)



**P** Press the **P** button.

**R** Press back the **R** button.

**N** Press the **N** button.

**D** Press the **D** button.

Shift Button Indicator

## ▶ Shift Operation

### NOTICE

When you change **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift position before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator and the shift button indicator to check the shift position before selecting a shift button.

If the indicator of the currently selected shift position, or the shift position indicator is blinking simultaneously, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The beeper sounds once when you change to **R**.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 161, 398

**■ When opening the driver's door**

If you open the driver's door under the following conditions, the shift position automatically changes to **P**.

- ▶ If you manually change the shift position from **P** with the brake pedal depressed, the shift position will automatically return to **P** once you release the brake pedal.
- The vehicle is stationary with the power mode in ON, or moving at 2 km/h (1 mph) or slower.
- The transmission is in other than **P**.
- You have unfastened the driver side seat belt.

**■ When turning off the power mode**

If you turn the power system off while the vehicle is stationary, and the transmission is in other than **P**, the shift position automatically changes to **P**.

**ⓘ When opening the driver's door**

While the system is designed to automatically change the shift position to **P** under the described conditions, in the interest of safety you should always select **P** before opening the driver's door. Make sure to park the vehicle in a safe place.

**➤ When Stopped P. 604**

If you want to drive the vehicle after the shift position has automatically changed to **P** under the described conditions, close the door, fasten the seat belt, depress the brake pedal, then change the shift position.

If you leave the vehicle, turn off the power system and lock the doors.

■ **If you want to keep the transmission in **N** position (car wash mode)**

With the power system on:

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Select **N**.
3. Within five seconds, press the **POWER** button.



The power mode changes to ACCESSORY.

- ▶ This puts the vehicle in car wash mode which must be used when your vehicle is pulled through a conveyor type automatic car wash where you or an attendant do not remain in the vehicle.
- ▶ The shift position remains in **N** with the power mode in ACCESSORY for 15 minutes, then, it automatically changes to **P**.

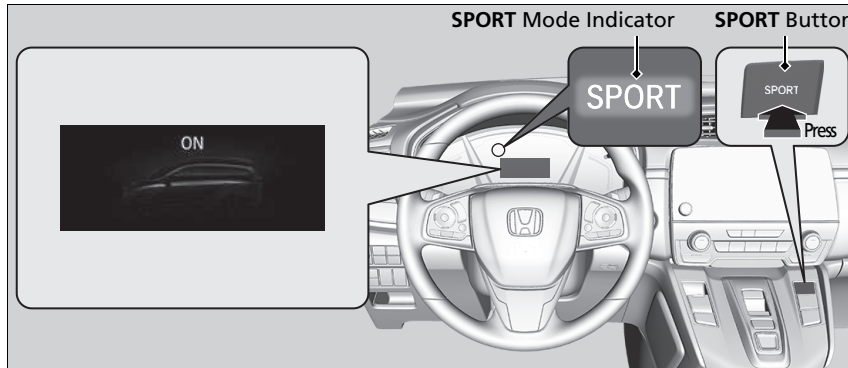
Manually changing to **P** cancels ACCESSORY mode.

**■ Restrictions on selecting a shift position**

You cannot select a shift position under certain circumstances that may lead to a crash.

When the transmission is in:	1. Under these circumstances:	2. If you try to change to the following:	3. The shift position remains in/changes to:	How to change the shift position
<b>P</b>	The brake pedal is not depressed.	Other shift position	<b>P</b>	Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.
	The accelerator pedal is depressed.			
<b>N</b>	The vehicle is moving at low speed without the brake pedal depressed.		<b>N</b>	
	The vehicle is moving at low speed with the accelerator pedal depressed.			
<b>N</b> or <b>D</b>	The vehicle is moving forward.	<b>R</b>	<b>P</b> or <b>N</b>	Park your vehicle in a safe place.
<b>R</b> or <b>N</b>	The vehicle is moving backward.	<b>D</b>		
<b>R</b> , <b>N</b> or <b>D</b>	The vehicle is moving.	<b>P</b>		
<b>P</b> or <b>N</b>	The  indicator is not on.	A shift position other than <b>P</b> or <b>N</b>	<b>P</b> or <b>N</b>	Make sure that the  indicator comes on.

## SPORT Mode



To turn the **SPORT** mode on and off, press the **SPORT** button.

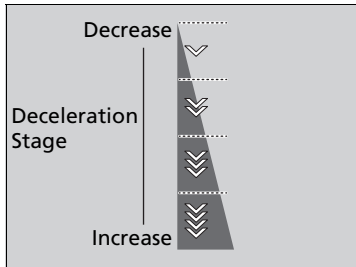
The **SPORT** mode increases engine performance.  
This mode is suitable for driving on hills or through curves on mountain roads.


The **SPORT** mode is turned off every time you turn on the power system, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

## Deceleration Paddle Selector

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without removing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through four stages of deceleration.



When descending a hill, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to help maintain the rate of deceleration, thereby allowing you to keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.




The default deceleration stage is . Each paddle selector operation makes a single stage deceleration change.

- ▶ The deceleration stage may not change if you pull the paddle selector continuously.

### To select the different stages of deceleration:

- Pull back the  selector (right side) to decrease the deceleration stage.
- Pull back the  selector (left side) to increase the deceleration stage.



Pull the  selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

### Deceleration Paddle Selector

## CAUTION

Rapidly increasing the deceleration rate by quickly shifting the deceleration paddle selector can cause the tyres to skid, resulting in a crash that could injure or kill someone.

Always maintain a reasonable rate of deceleration.

If you are descending a hill when you select stage , the vehicle may enter stage .

If you pull back right and left paddle selector at the same time, the deceleration stage may not change.

In the following situations, the stage may not change and the stage icon will blink even if you pull back the selector. The deceleration stage may decrease or cancel automatically:

- The High Voltage battery is fully charged or its temperature is too cold or too hot.
- The speed of the vehicle is beyond the deceleration range with SPORT mode off.
- Hybrid system protection is needed.
- The paddle selector is operated while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with LSF.

If either paddle selector is operated, ACC with LSF will cancel automatically.

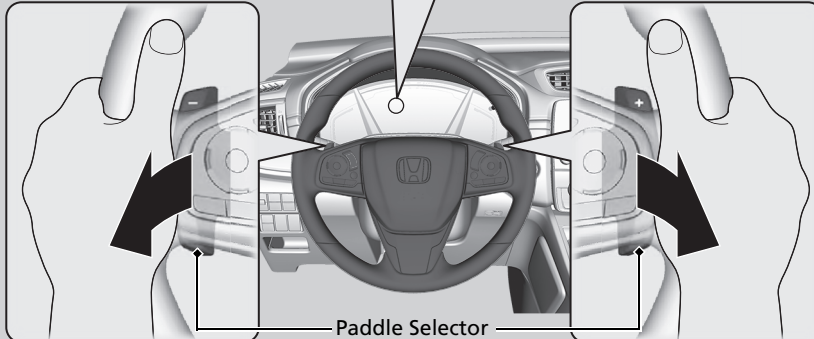
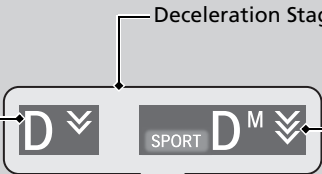
Continued

**When to use**

Shift position is in **D**

When SPORT mode is OFF, the deceleration stage appears.

When SPORT mode is ON, the deceleration stage and M appear.




Increase the deceleration stage when pulling the **-** paddle selector (left side)

Decrease the deceleration stage when pulling the **+** paddle selector (right side)

**■ When SPORT mode is OFF**


If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the driver information interface.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, pull the  selector (right side) for a few seconds.

The deceleration paddle selector will cancel automatically and deceleration stage in the driver information interface disappear when you drive with constant speed, situations of acceleration and decelerate just before stopping your vehicle.

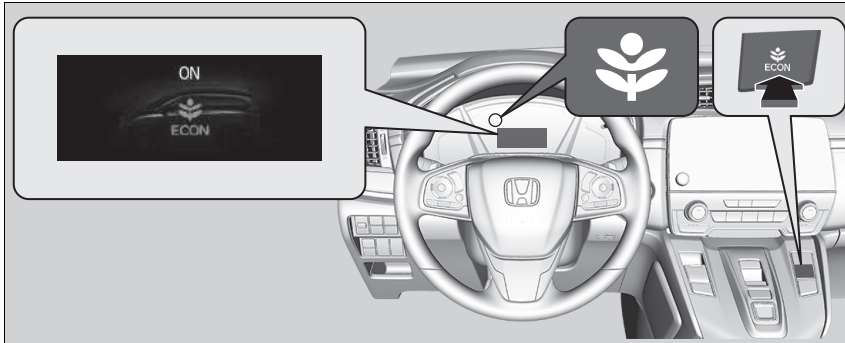
**■ When SPORT mode is ON**

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the driver information interface. The deceleration stage will not cancel automatically while SPORT mode is ON.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, turn the SPORT mode OFF, or pull the  selector (right side) for a few seconds. When cancelled, deceleration stage in the driver information interface disappears.



## ECON Mode



The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.  
The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine and climate control system.

### ▶▶ ECON Mode

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.

If you press the **SPORT** button while the ECON mode is ON, the SPORT mode takes the priority.

▶▶ **SPORT Mode** P. 510

## Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

Alerts pedestrians when a vehicle is propelled solely by electricity, approaching at speeds around 25 km/h (16 mph) or less.

## Adjustable Speed Limiter

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h (18 mph) to about 250 km/h (156 mph).

### Adjustable Speed Limiter

#### **WARNING**

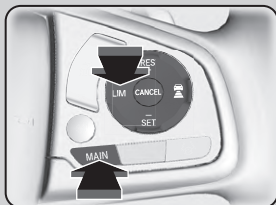
Adjustable Speed Limiter has limitations. It is always your responsibility to adjust the vehicle speed to obey the actual speed limit, and safely operate the vehicle.

#### **WARNING**

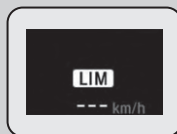
Do not depress the accelerator pedal more than necessary. Maintain an appropriate accelerator pedal position depending on the vehicle speed.

#### How to use

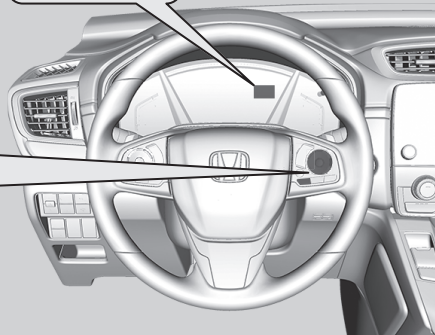
- Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel



If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to switch to the adjustable speed limiter.



The indicator is on in the instrument panel. Adjustable speed limiter is ready to use.

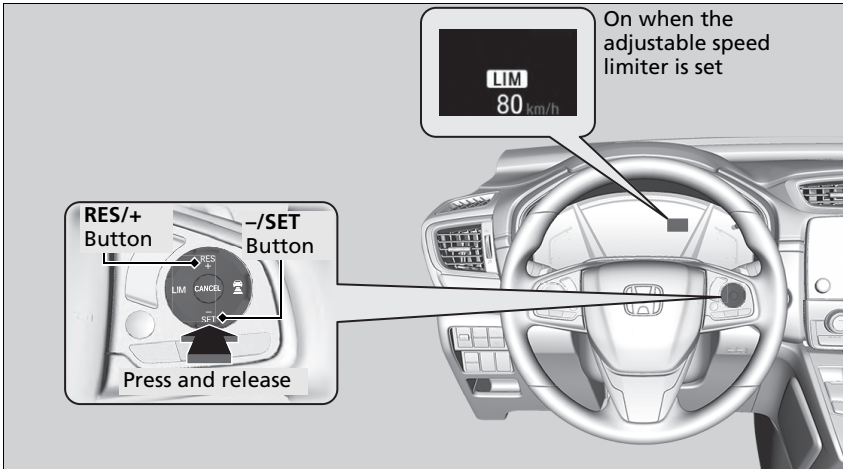


The adjustable speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the adjustable speed limiter: Turn off the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **MAIN** button.

You cannot use the adjustable speed limiter and the adaptive cruise control (ACC) with LSF or intelligent speed limiter at the same time.

## ■ To Set the Speed Limit



- Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.  
The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the speed limit is fixed, and the adjustable speed limiter is set. The speed limit is displayed.
- You can set the previously set speed limit by pressing the **RES/+** button.

## ☒ To Set the Speed Limit

If you set the speed limit while travelling at less than 30 km/h (18 mph), the speed limit is set to 30 km/h (18 mph).

The beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h (2 mph) or more on a steep descent.

The adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed if it is higher than the previously set speed limit when you press the **RES/+** button.

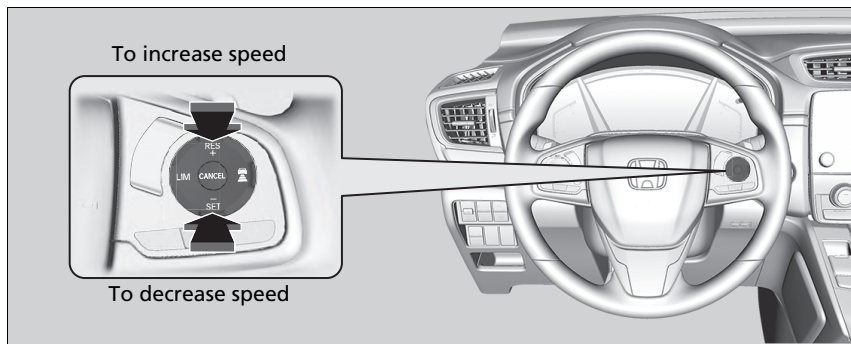
You can switch the displayed set speed measurements between km/h and mph on the driver information interface or audio/information display.

☒ **Speedometer** P. 144

☒ **Customized Features** P. 161, 398

## ■ To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the speed limit increases or decreases in increments of 10 km/h or 10 mph every 0.5 second until system limit is reached.
- The vehicle may accelerate or decelerate until the set speed is reached.

## ■ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal completely.

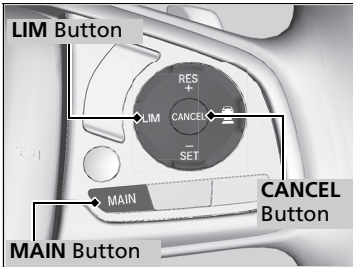
- ▶ The displayed limit speed blinks.
- ▶ The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

### ⌘ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the accelerator pedal depressed completely.

The adjustable speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

## ■ To Cancel

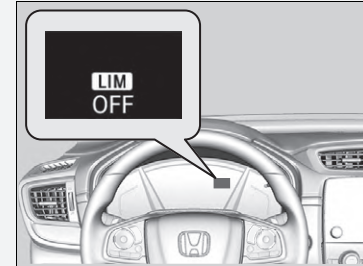


To cancel the adjustable speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

## ☒ To Cancel

The adjustable speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) with LSF or intelligent speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.



If there is a problem with the system when you are using the adjustable speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The adjustable speed limiter will be turned off.

## Intelligent Speed Limiter

Automatically sets the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. And the speed limit cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal. If you fully depress the accelerator the speed limit can be exceeded.

➤ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 584

### Intelligent Speed Limiter

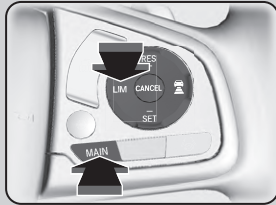
#### **WARNING**

Intelligent Speed Limiter has limitations. The Intelligent Speed Limiter may set itself to a speed above or below the actual speed limit, or may not work, particularly where the traffic sign recognition system does not operate correctly or where a road has no speed limit signs. It is always your responsibility to adjust the speed to obey the actual speed limit and to safely operate the vehicle.

Depending on the amount of depression of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will accelerate until it reaches the speed identified by the traffic sign recognition system.

**How to use**

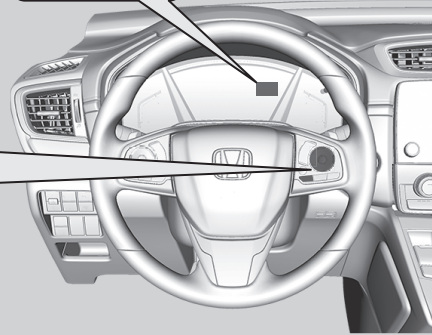
■ Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel



If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to change it to the intelligent speed limiter.



**The indicator is on in the instrument panel**  
Intelligent speed limiter is ready to use.



▶▶ Intelligent Speed Limiter

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be detected, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

▶ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 584

If the intelligent speed limiter is set to the wrong speed limit, try one of the following:

To cancel

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To exceed the speed limit temporarily

- Depress the accelerator pedal fully.

The intelligent speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

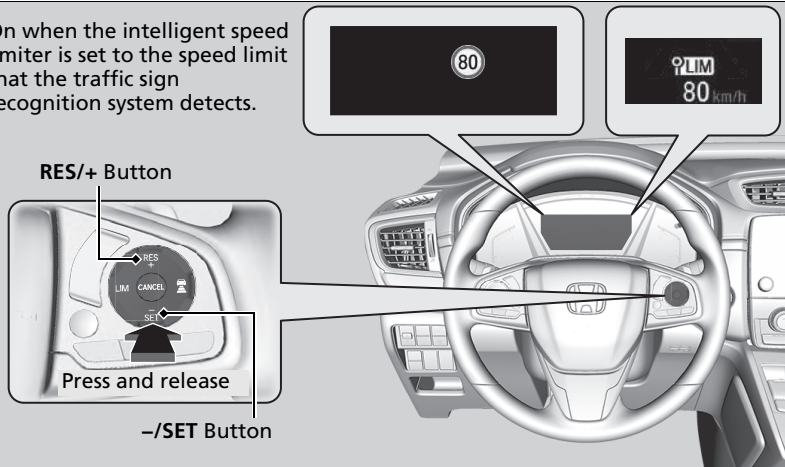
When not using the intelligent speed limiter, turn off the intelligent speed limiter by pressing the **MAIN** button.

You cannot use the intelligent speed limiter and adaptive cruise control (ACC) with LSF or adjustable speed limiter at the same time.



## ■ To Set the Speed Limit

On when the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.



- The moment you release the **-/SET** button or **RES/+** button, the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. The speed limit is displayed.

## ▶ Intelligent Speed Limiter

Do not use the intelligent speed limiter in areas of different units from the display unit of the intelligent speed limiter.

Change the displayed measurement of the set vehicle speed to the same units as the driving areas.

▶ **Speedometer** P. 144

▶ **Customized Features** P. 161, 398

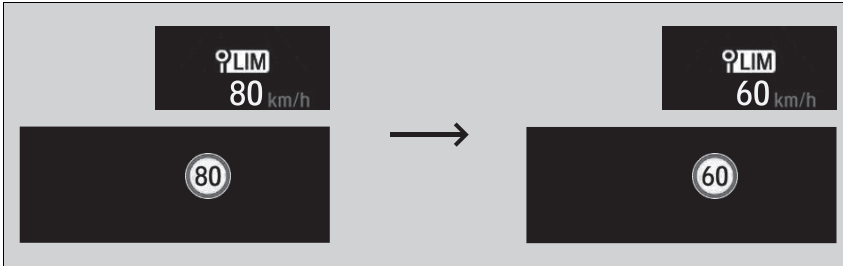
## ▶ To Set the Speed Limit

If you set the intelligent speed limiter when the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects is less than 30 km/h (20 mph), the speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause.

If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit or less. If necessary, slow down by depressing the brake pedal. And the beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h (2 mph) or more.

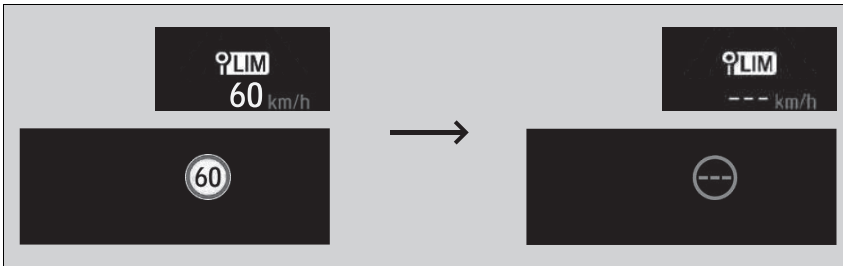
■ **When the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign**

The intelligent speed limiter is set to the new speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.



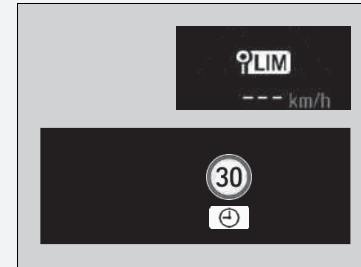
■ **The speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause if there is no speed limit sign in the screen of the traffic sign recognition system when:**

- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exits motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.



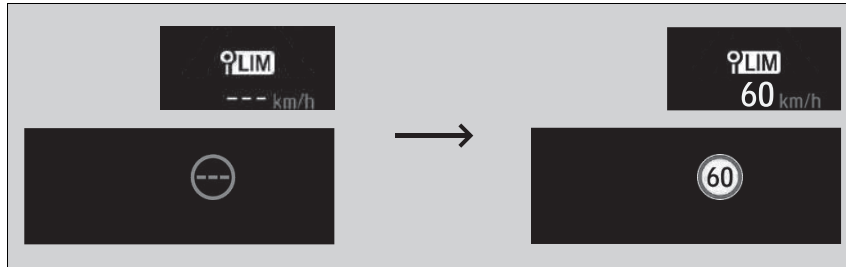
▶▶ To Set the Speed Limit

The intelligent speed limiter may also switch to pause when the traffic sign recognition system detects only additional speed limit signs.



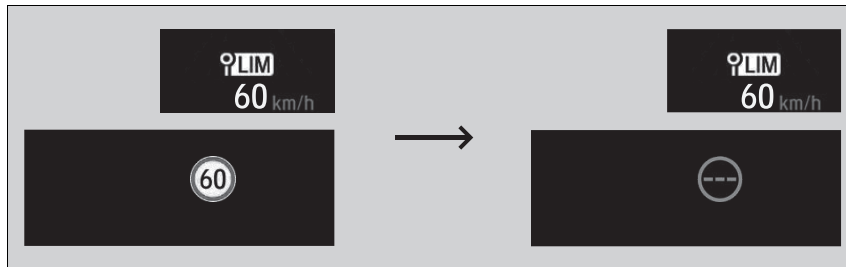
■ **When the traffic sign recognition system detects the speed limit sign while the intelligent speed limiter is paused**

The speed limitation function and warning function will be resumed automatically.



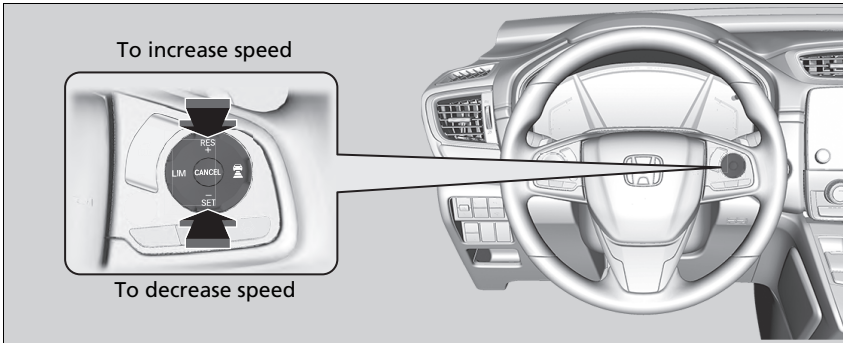
■ **When the traffic sign recognition system does not detect the speed limit sign for a time while the intelligent speed limiter is activated**

While driving, in addition to when the traffic sign recognition system detects no speed limit sign, the traffic sign recognition system may display no speed limit. But, intelligent speed limiter functions continue.



## ■ To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the speed limit is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- You can increase the speed limit up to +10 km/h or +5 mph on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can decrease the speed limit up to -10 km/h or -5 mph on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can accelerate until the set speed is reached. If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit.

## ■ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

- ▶ The displayed speed limit blinks.  
The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

## ☒ To Adjust the Speed Limit

A negative or positive offset with respect to the speed limit will be reset automatically when the traffic sign recognition system detects a new speed limit sign.

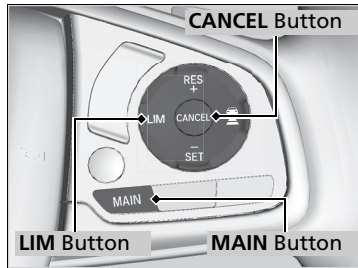
You cannot decrease the speed limit to less than 30 km/h (18 mph).

## ☒ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the accelerator pedal depressed completely.

The intelligent speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

## ■ To Cancel



To cancel the intelligent speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

## ▶▶ To Cancel

The intelligent speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) with LSF or adjustable speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.



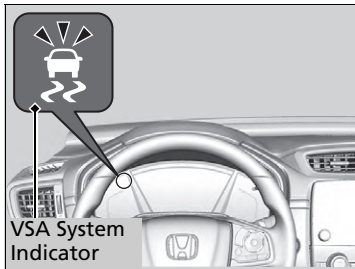
If there is a problem with the system or traffic sign recognition system when you are using the intelligent speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The intelligent speed limiter will be turned off.

▶▶ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 584

## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine and motor output and selectively applying the brakes.

### VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine and motor do not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

### Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

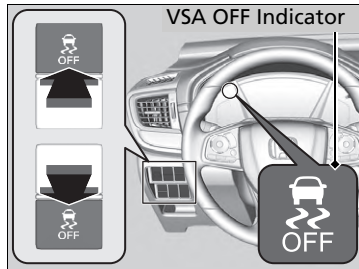
When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.


The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (LSF), road departure mitigation, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, parking brake and brake system (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.


Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the  button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## ▶▶ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the  button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after turning the power system on or while driving. This is normal.

## Agile Handling Assist

---

Lightly brakes each of the front and rear wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps to support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

### ⓘ Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.



## Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System\*

Your vehicle is equipped with the AWD system. When the system senses a loss of front wheel traction, it automatically transfers some power to the rear wheels. This allows you to utilise all available traction and may increase mobility.

You still need to exercise the same care when accelerating, steering, and braking that you would in a two wheel drive vehicle.

If you excessively spin all four wheels and overheat the AWD system, only the front wheels receive power. Stop until the system cools down.

### ⓘ Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System\*

#### NOTICE

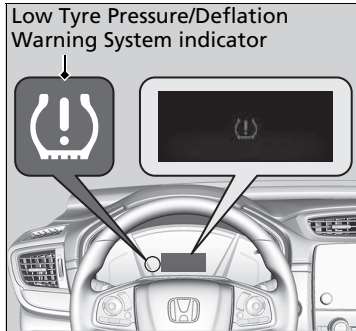
Do not continuously spin the front tyres of your vehicle. Continuously spinning the front tyres can cause transmission or rear differential damage.

The AWD system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

🔧 **Tyre and Wheel Replacement** P. 667

## Deflation Warning System

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface.

### Deflation Warning System Initialisation

You must start deflation warning system initialisation every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before initialising the deflation warning system:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

▶ **Checking Tyres** P. 665

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The transmission is in **[P]**.
- The power mode is in ON.

### Deflation Warning System

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

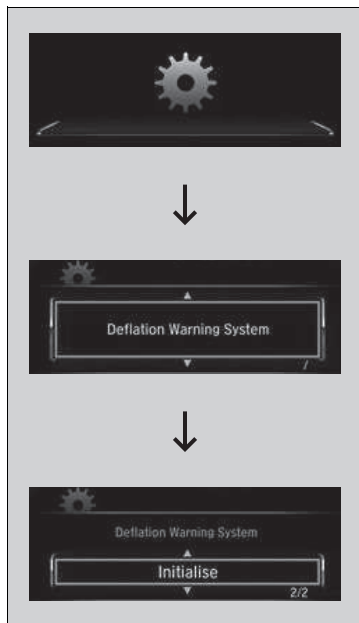
The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

▶ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 665

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (LSF), road departure mitigation, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, parking brake and brake system (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



**Models with colour audio system**

You can initialise the system from the customized features on the driver information interface.

1. Press the then button to select (Customize Settings), then press the **ENTER** button.

▶ **Deflation Warning System** appears on the display.

2. Press the **ENTER** button.

▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.

3. Press the button and select **Initialise**, then press the **ENTER** button.

▶ **Completed** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat steps 2-3.
- The initialisation process finishes automatically.

**Deflation Warning System**

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains are used.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at initialisation.
- Tyre chains are used.

**Deflation Warning System Initialisation**

- The initialisation process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40-100 km/h (25-62mph).
- During this period, if the power mode is set to on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the initialisation process is not yet complete.

If the tyre chains are installed, remove them before initialising the deflation warning system.


If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.



**Models with Display Audio**

You can initialise the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Select .
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Vehicle**.
5. Select **Deflation Warning System**.
6. Select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.

- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat steps 4-5.
- The initialisation process finishes automatically.

## Blind spot information System\*

Is designed to detect vehicles in specified alert zones adjacent to your vehicle, particularly in harder to see areas commonly known as “blind spots.” When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on for a few seconds, providing assistance when you change lanes.

### Blind spot information System\*

#### **WARNING**

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.



Do not rely only on the blind spot information system when changing lanes.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

#### **Important Safety Reminder**

Like all assistance systems, blind spot information system has limitations. Over reliance on the blind spot information system may result in a collision.

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur.

- The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on due to obstruction (splashes, etc.) and the  message appears on the driver information interface.
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may come on even with the  message on the driver information interface.

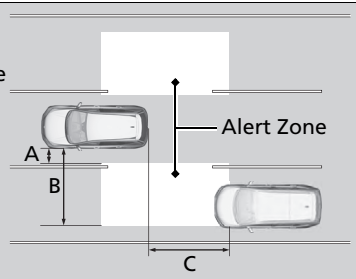
## ■ How the system works

- Radar sensors detect a vehicle in the alert zone when your vehicle is moving forward at 20 km/h (12 mph) or faster.

### Alert zone range

- A: Approx. 0.5 m (1.6 ft.)
- B: Approx. 3 m (10 ft.)
- C: Approx. 3 m (10 ft.)

Radar Sensors: underneath the rear bumper corners



## ▣ Blind spot information System\*

You can change the setting for the blind spot information system.

### ▣ Customized Features P. 398

Turn the system off when towing a trailer.

The system may not work properly for the following reasons:

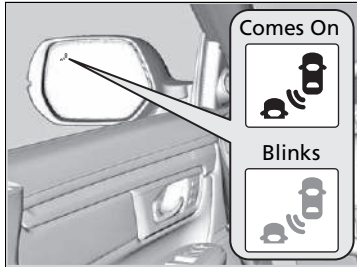
- The added mass tilts the vehicle and changes the radar coverage.
- The trailer itself can be detected by the radar sensors, causing the blind spot information system alert indicators to come on.

The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- A vehicle does not stay in the alert zone for more than two seconds.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle you are passing is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- A vehicle running in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

The system does not operate when in **[R]**.

## ■ When the system detects a vehicle



Blind spot information System Alert Indicator:  
Located on the outside rearview mirror on  
both sides.

### Comes on when:

- A vehicle enters the alert zone from behind to overtake you with a speed difference of no more than 50 km/h (31 mph) from your vehicle.
- You pass a vehicle with a speed difference of no more than 20 km/h (12 mph).

### Blinks and a beeper sounds when:

You move the turn signal lever in the direction of the detected vehicle. The beeper sounds three times.

## ▶▶ Blind spot information System\*

Blind spot information system may be adversely affected when:

- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well, such as a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up external electrical interference.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.
- The orientation of the sensors has been changed.
- In bad weather (rain, snow, and fog).
- Driving on a bumpy road.
- Making a short turn that slightly tilts the vehicle.

For a proper blind spot information system operation:

- Always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the rear bumper corner area or the radar sensors to be repaired, or the rear bumper corner area is strongly impacted.

## High Voltage Battery

---

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery charge level will become low. Extended periods of time at a low state of charge will shorten battery life. To maintain the battery state of charge, drive your vehicle for more than 30 minutes at least once every three months.

Extreme high temperatures can affect the battery life. You can minimize the effects by parking the vehicle in the shade during the summer.

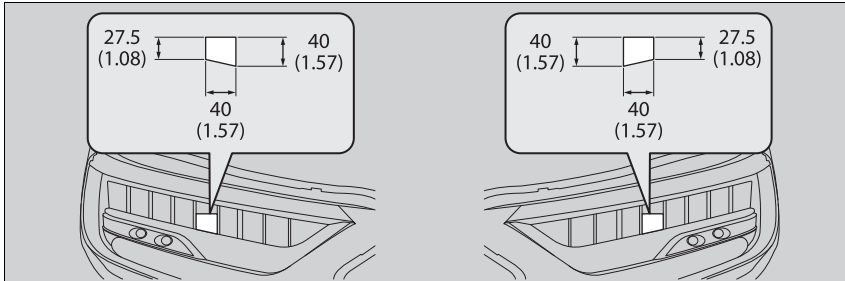
### ⚠ High Voltage Battery

Be careful not to let the High Voltage battery drain too much. If the battery level becomes close to zero, it will make it impossible to start the power system.



## Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Driving the right-hand type vehicle in right-hand traffic, or the left-hand type vehicle in left-hand traffic causes headlight glare to oncoming vehicles. You need to alter the headlight beam distribution using masking tape.



1. Prepare for two pieces of masking tape, measuring 40 mm (1.57 inches) wide and 40 mm (1.57 inches) long.
  - ▶ Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
2. Affix the tape to the outer portion of the lens as shown.

### Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Be careful not to adhere the tape to an incorrect location. If the headlight beam is distributed incorrectly, it may not comply with your country's legal requirements. Ask your dealer for details.

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors: a radar sensor located in the front grille and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

Honda Sensing has following functions.

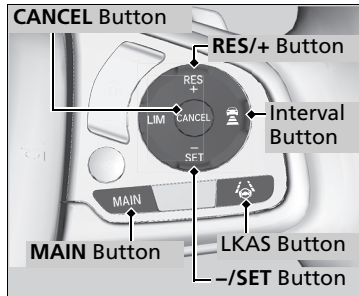
## ■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ⓘ P. 542
- Road Departure Mitigation System ⓘ P. 578
- Traffic Sign Recognition System ⓘ P. 584

## ■ The functions which require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) ⓘ P. 553
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ⓘ P. 570

## ■ Operation Switches for the ACC with LSF/LKAS



### ■ MAIN Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC with LSF and LKAS. Or press to cancel these systems.


### ■ LKAS Button

Press to activate or cancel the LKAS.

### ■ RES/+ and -/SET Buttons

Press **RES/+** button to resume the ACC with LSF or increase the vehicle speed.  
Press **-/SET** button to set the ACC with LSF or decrease the vehicle speed.

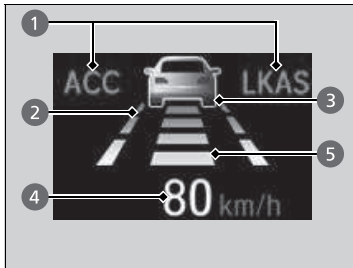
### ■ Interval Button

Press the  (interval) button to change the ACC with LSF following-interval.

### ■ CANCEL Button

Press to cancel ACC with LSF.

## Driver Information Interface Content



You can see the current state of ACC with LSF and LKAS.

- ① Indicates that ACC with LSF and LKAS are ready to be activated.
- ② Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
- ③ Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.
- ④ Shows the set vehicle speed.
- ⑤ Shows the set vehicle interval.

## Driver Information Interface Content

You can have the head-up display\* show you the current state of each function.

▶ **Head-Up Display\*** P. 172

\* Not available on all models

## Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of your vehicle. The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

### Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

#### **Important Safety Reminder**

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

➤ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 547

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

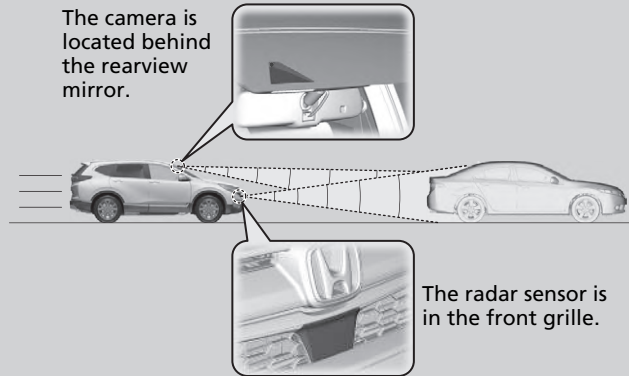
➤ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 592

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

➤ **Radar Sensor** P. 594

## How the System Works

### When to use



The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h (3 mph) and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h (3 mph) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h (62 mph) or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
  - Vehicles detected in front of you that are stationary, oncoming, or travelling in your same direction.
  - A pedestrian who is detected in front of you.
- Your vehicle speed is above 100 km/h (62 mph), and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with a vehicle detected in front of you travelling in your same direction.

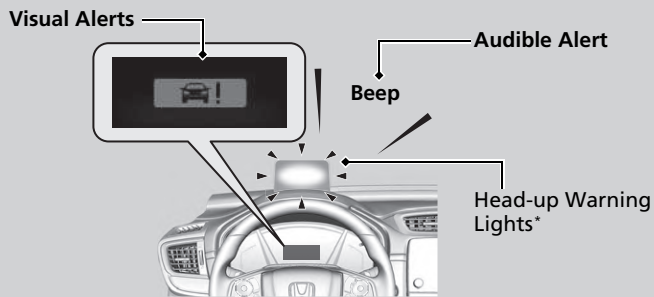
### How the System Works

When the CMBS activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

## ■ When the system activates

The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



At system's earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (**Far/Normal/Near**) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through the driver information interface or audio/information screen setting options.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 161, 398

## ▶ How the System Works

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.

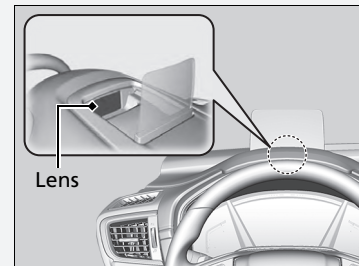
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.

Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

▶ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 547

The head-up warning\* uses a lens located at the front end of the dashboard.

Do not cover the lens or spill any liquid on it.



## ■ Collision Alert Stages

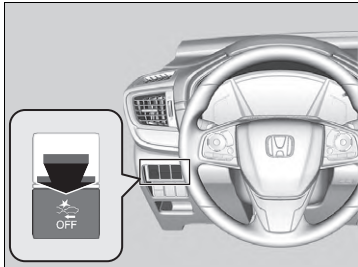
The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS			
		The sensors detect a vehicle	E-pretensioner	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	—	When in <b>Far</b> , visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in <b>Normal</b> setting, and in <b>Near</b> , at a shorter distance than in <b>Normal</b> .	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Retracts the driver's seat belt gently a few times, providing a physical warning. 	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.	Forcefully tightens driver and front passenger seat belts. 		Forcefully applied

Driving



## ■ CMBS On and Off



Press and hold the button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS is off:

- The CMBS indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the driver information interface reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## ▶▶ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the CMBS indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions.

▶▶ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 547

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed.

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (LSF), road departure mitigation, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, parking brake and brake system (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS functions.

📷 **Front Sensor Camera** P. 592

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, pedestrians or other vehicles may not be detected).

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.

## 📷 CMBS Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- When tyre chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.

**■ Detection limitations**

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

**Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only**

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands are raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

**■ Automatic shutoff**

CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the CMBS indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

## ■ With Little Chance of a Collision

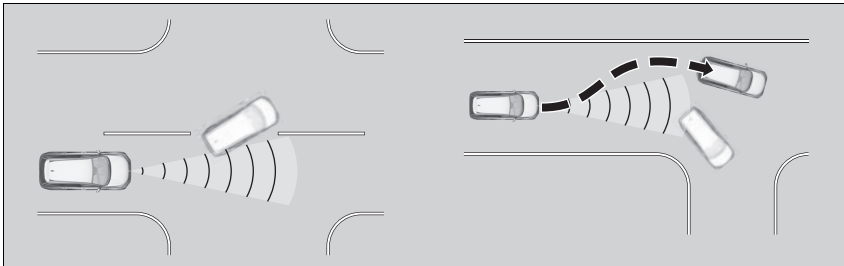
The CMBS may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

### ■ When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

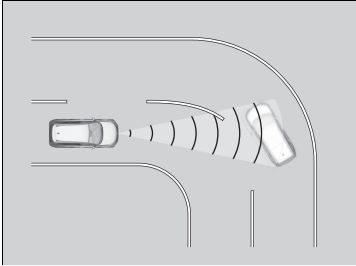
### ■ At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.



■ **On a curve**

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

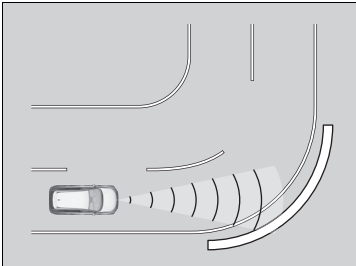


■ **Through a low bridge at high speed**

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

■ **Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.**

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects (such as a traffic sign and guard rail) on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.

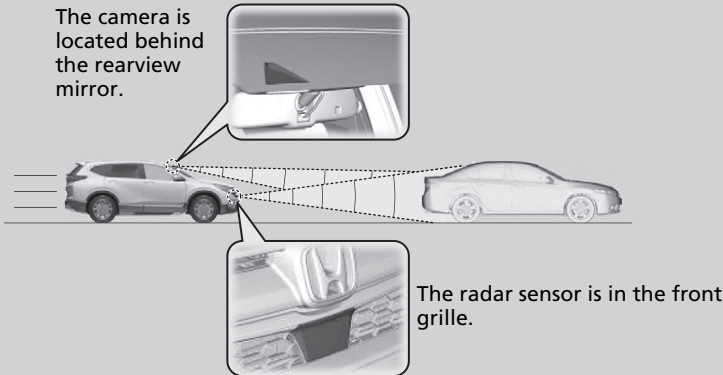


## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with LSF slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

### When to use



- Vehicle speed for ACC with LSF: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with LSF range** – ACC with LSF operates at speeds up to 180 km/h (112 mph).  
**No vehicle is detected within ACC with LSF range** – ACC with LSF operates at the speed of 30 km/h (18 mph) or above.
- Shift position for ACC with LSF: In **D**.

### Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)

#### ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of ACC with LSF can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with LSF only when driving on motorways and in good weather conditions.

#### ⚠ WARNING

ACC with LSF has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

#### Important Reminder

As with any system, there are limits to ACC with LSF. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

▶ **Radar Sensor** P. 594

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

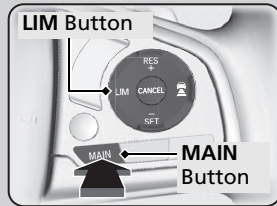
▶ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 592



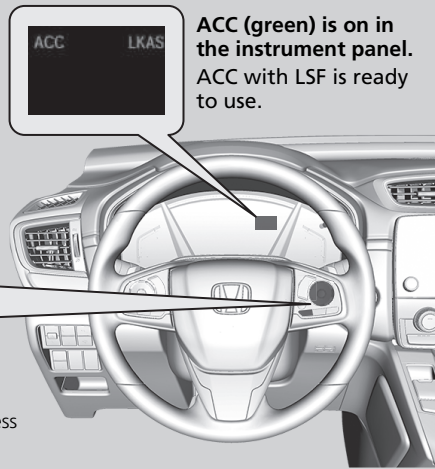
## ■ How to activate the system

### How to use

- Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel.



If a different instrument panel is displayed, press the **LIM** button to change it to ACC with LSF.



### ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, both ACC with LSF and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

ACC with LSF may not work properly under certain conditions.

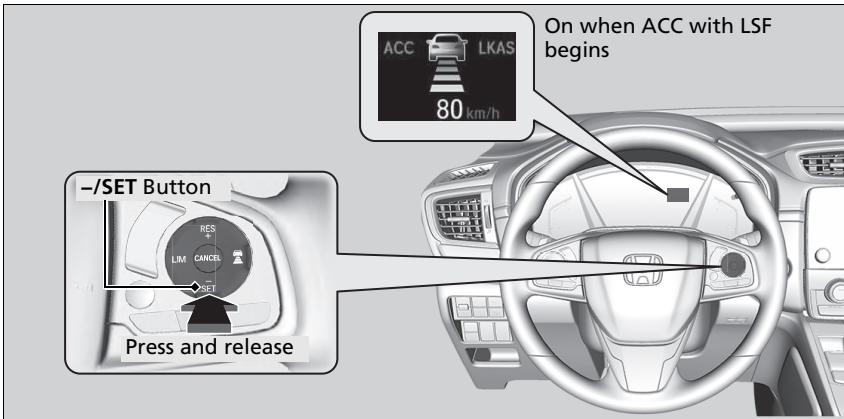
- ▶ **ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations**  
P. 560

When not using ACC with LSF: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

Do not use ACC with LSF under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC with LSF will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



**When driving at about 30 km/h (18 mph) or above:** Take your foot off the pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with LSF begins.

**When driving slower than about 30 km/h (18 mph):** If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h (18 mph) regardless of current vehicle speed.

If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.

### ⚠ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)

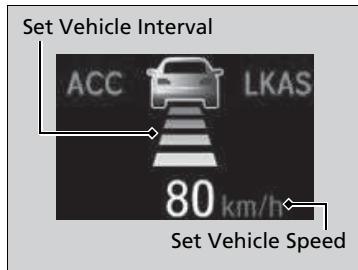
The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (LSF), road departure mitigation, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, parking brake and brake system (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

### ⚠ To Set the Vehicle Speed

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface or audio/information screen between km/h and mph.

➤ **Speedometer** P. 144

➤ **Customized Features** P. 161, 398



When ACC with LSF starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

When you use ACC with LSF, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.

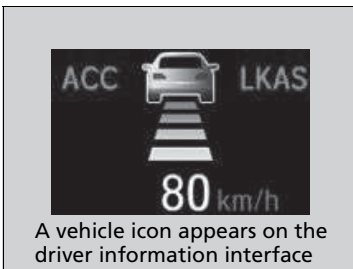
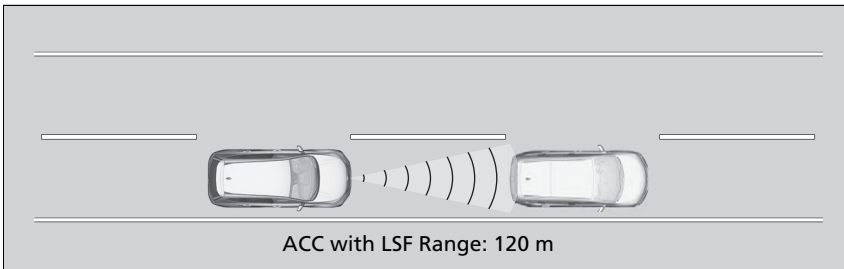
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

## ■ When in Operation

### ■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with LSF monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with LSF range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with LSF system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

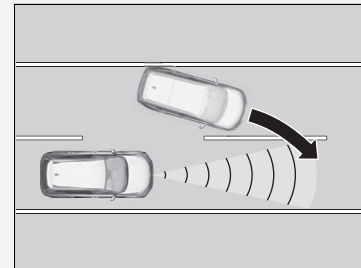
🚩 **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 564



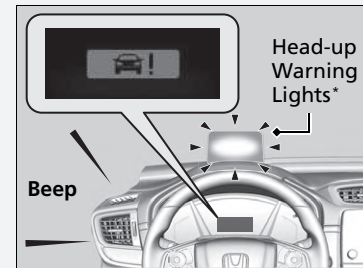
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed is detected in front of you, your vehicle starts to slow down.

## 🚩 When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface, and the head-up warning lights\* flash.

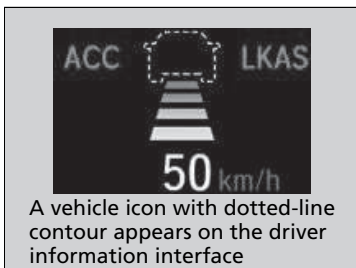


Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



\* Not available on all models

### ■ There is no vehicle ahead



Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with LSF accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

### ■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with LSF range. ACC with LSF stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with LSF range.

### 🔗 When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with LSF may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with LSF detecting range. Change the **ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep** setting.

🔗 **Customized Features** P. 161, 398

### Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with LSF. Additionally, ACC with LSF may not work properly under certain conditions.

🔗 **ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations**  
P. 560

■ **A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with LSF range and slows to a stop**



Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **.....** message appears on the driver information interface.

When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, the vehicle icon on the driver information interface blinks. If you press the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with LSF operates again within the prior set speed.

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with LSF will operate again within the prior set speed.



ⓘ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with LSF range and slows to a stop

**⚠ WARNING**

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with LSF system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with LSF.

## ■ ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

➤ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 592

### ■ Environmental conditions

Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

### ■ Roadway conditions

Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (Wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the front grille is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains are installed.

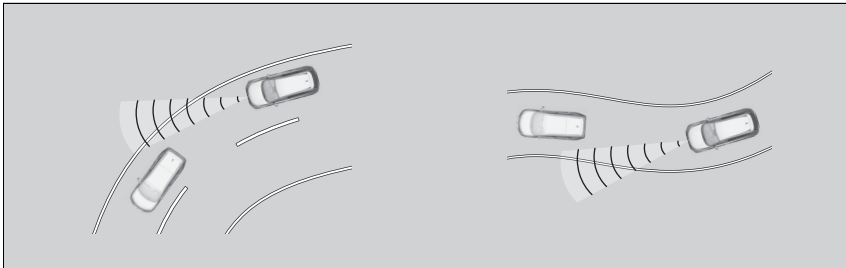
## ⚠ ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the **MAIN** button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

■ **Detection limitations**

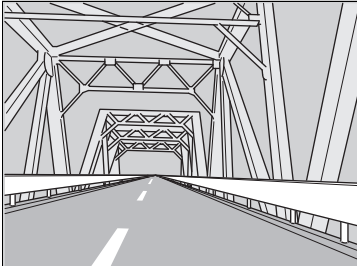
- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.



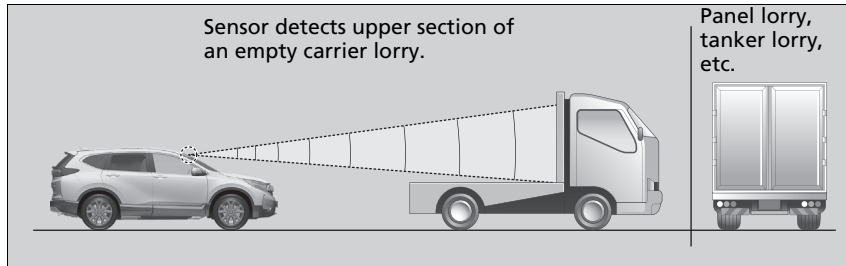
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.



- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.



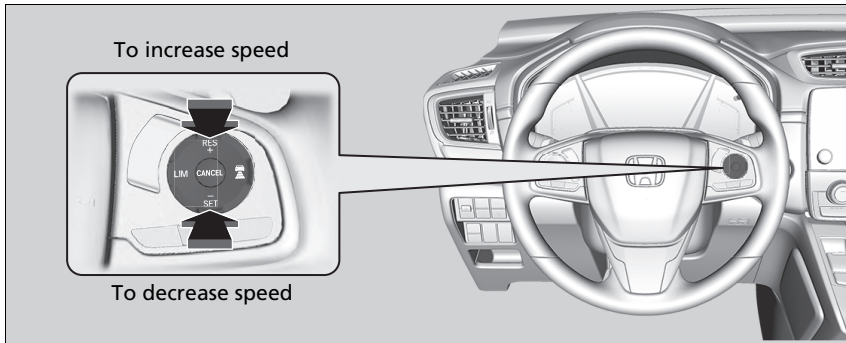
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.



- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button on the steering wheel.



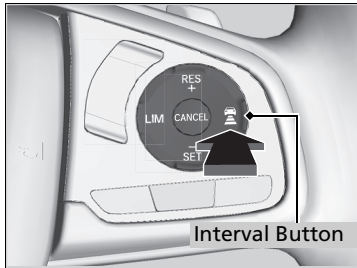
- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h or 10 mph accordingly.


## ☒ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with LSF may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **-/SET** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

## ■ To Set or Change Following-interval




Press the  (interval) button to change the ACC with LSF following-interval.

Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through short, middle, long and extra long following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

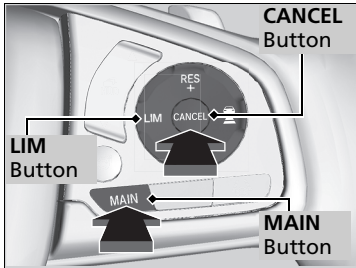
Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h (50 mph)	104 km/h (65 mph)
Short		24.7 metres 81.0 feet 1.1 sec	31.5 metres 103.3 feet 1.1 sec
Middle		34.2 metres 112.2 feet 1.5 sec	43.4 metres 142.4 feet 1.5 sec
Long		46.8 metres 153.5 feet 2.1 sec	60.8 metres 199.4 feet 2.1 sec
Extra Long		63.5 metres 208.3 feet 2.9 sec	83.4 metres 273.6 feet 2.9 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with LSF interval setting.

⚠ To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

## ■ To Cancel



To cancel ACC with LSF, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
  - ▶ ACC with LSF indicator (green) goes off.
- Press the **LIM** button.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.

## ▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with LSF, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with LSF has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

## ■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with LSF is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with LSF to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA or CMBS is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with LSF range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- When the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.

The ACC with LSF automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The power system is turned off.

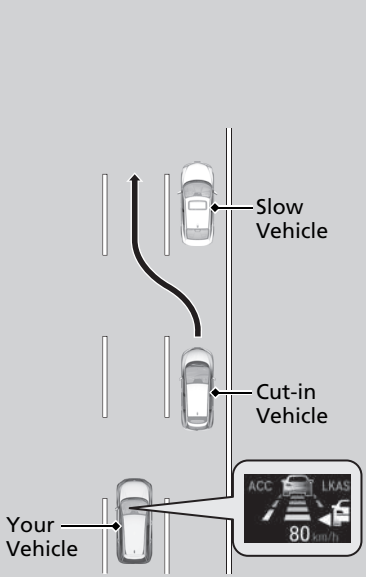
## ⌘ Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC with LSF to cancel improves, then press the **-/SET** button.

## ■ Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Function

Provides an early prediction for a cut-in situation. The system detects that a vehicle running in the adjacent slower lane has an intention to cut in front of you and adjusts the speed of your vehicle in advance while ACC with LSF is activated.

### ■ How the system works



The radar sensor in the front grille detects vehicles ahead of you including those in the adjacent lane, and the camera behind the rearview mirror detects the lane markings.

This system improves ACC with LSF's following/tracking property; it adjusts your vehicle speed in advance predicting a situation that a vehicle running in the adjacent slower lane catches up with a slower vehicle ahead of it and changes the lane to cut in front of you early.

When such a cut-in situation is predicted, your vehicle speed decreases a little. When detected, your vehicle speed decreases according to the vehicle cutting in front of you.

As the speed is adjusted by the system, the cut in vehicle icon appears on the driver information interface to indicate that the system is activated.

Left-hand drive type is shown.

**■ How the system activates**

When a vehicle cuts in front of you is going faster than the vehicle ahead of it, and your vehicle is going faster than the cut-in vehicle (i.e., when you need to slow down), ACC with LSF predicts the cutting-in and adjust your vehicle speed.

The system activates when all the following conditions are met:

- When ACC with LSF is activated.
- When you are driving on a multi-lane road.
- When your vehicle speed is between about 80 km/h (50 mph) and about 180 km/h (112 mph).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- When a vehicle cuts in from a slower lane.

**■ Intelligent adaptive cruise control on and off**

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

📖 **Customized Features** P. 161, 398

**📖 Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Function**

When traffic changes from right hand side to left hand side, driving on a road where there is oncoming traffic for some distance automatically switches the lane to be detected from right to left.

Intelligent adaptive cruise control may not activate under the following conditions:

- When the speed difference between the cut-in vehicle and the vehicle ahead of it in the adjacent lane is small
- When the speed difference between the cut-in vehicle and your vehicle is small (i.e., when speed adjustment is not required)
- When a vehicle simply cuts in front of your vehicle with no vehicle ahead in the adjacent lane
- When a vehicle cuts in from a faster lane



## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

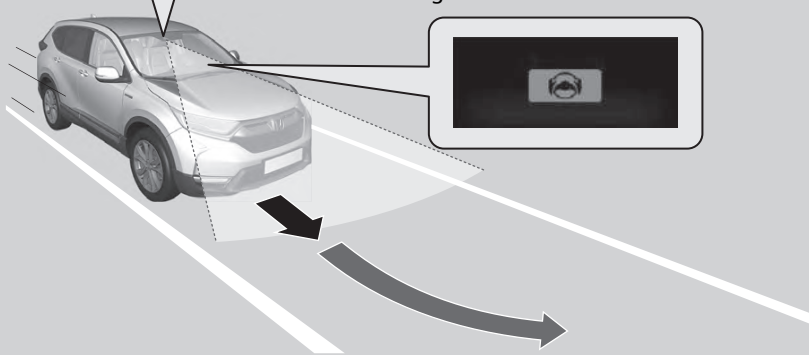
### ■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.

■ Front sensor camera  
Monitors the lane lines

### ■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

### ▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

#### Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

#### ▶ Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages P. 123

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the front windshield and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

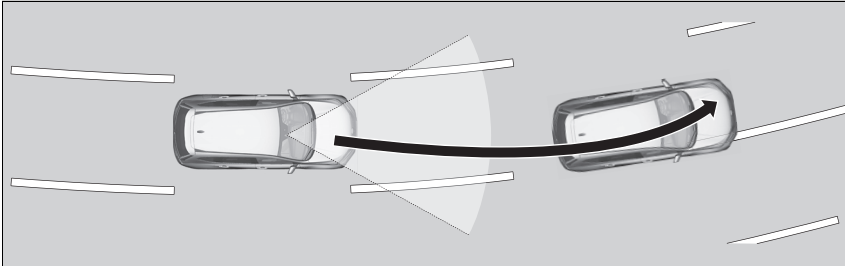
#### ▶ LKAS Conditions and Limitations P. 575

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

#### ▶ Front Sensor Camera P. 592

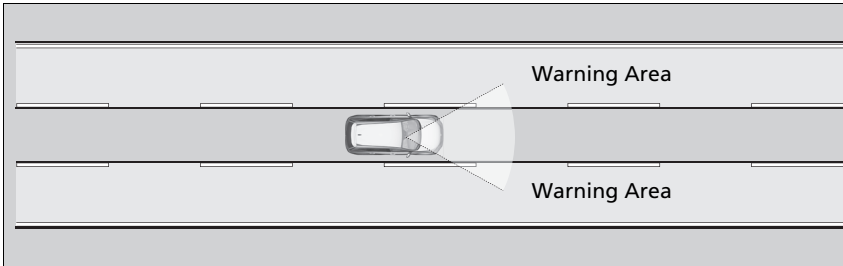
### ■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane, when the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



### ■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



### ⌘ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

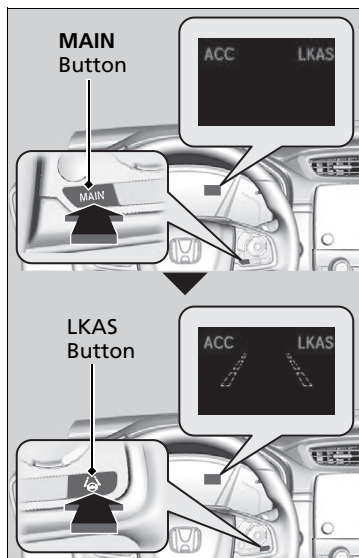
When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

## ■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 185 km/h (45 and 115 mph).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in high speed operation.

## ■ How to activate the system



1. Press the **MAIN** button.
  - ▶ The LKAS is on in the driver information interface.  
The system is ready to use.
2. Press the LKAS button.
  - ▶ Lane outlines appear on the driver information interface.  
The system is activated.

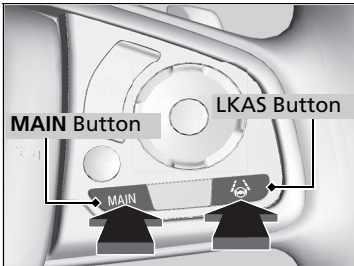
## ▶▶ When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



3. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
  - ▶ The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

## ■ To Cancel

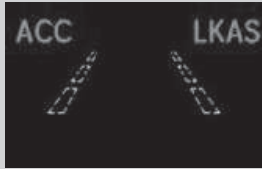


To cancel the LKAS:  
Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

## ☒ To Cancel

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC with LSF on and off.



When the LKAS is suspended, the lane lines on the driver information interface change to contour lines, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

■ **The system operation is suspended if you:**

- Set the wipers to **HI**.
  - ▶ Turning the wipers off or setting it to **LO** resumes the LKAS.

**Models with automatic intermittent wipers**

- Set the wiper switch to **AUTO** and the wipers operate at high speed.
  - ▶ The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate at low speed.

**All models**

- Decrease the vehicle speed to 64 km/h (40 mph) or less.
  - ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to 72 km/h (45 mph) or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:**

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is quickly turned.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h (115 mph).
- The Road Departure Mitigation System is activated.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

**■ The LKAS may automatically be cancelled when:**

- The camera temperature gets extremely high or low.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

The beeper sounds if the LKAS is automatically cancelled.

**■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations**

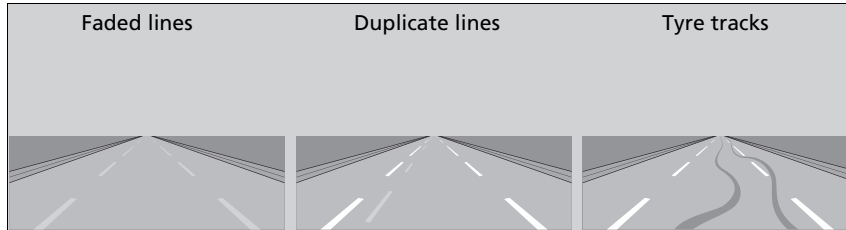
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

**■ Environmental conditions**

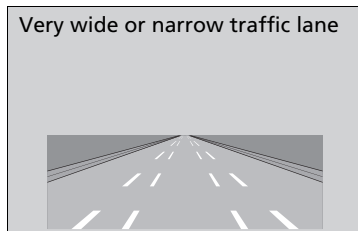
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.

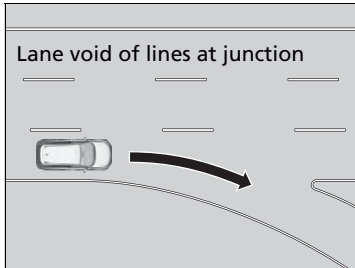


- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.



#### ■ Vehicle conditions

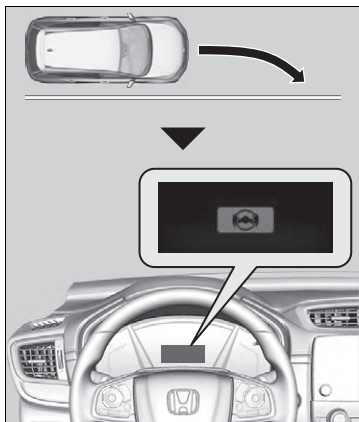
- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated tyre, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.



## Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings or the edge of the pavement, or leaving the roadway altogether.

### How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow) and the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings or the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

If the system determines that the vehicle is about to veer off the edge of the pavement, it will alert the driver with an audible warning instead of steering wheel vibrations.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 161, 398

As a visual alert,  message appears on the driver information interface.

### ▶▶ Road Departure Mitigation System

#### Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.

Over-reliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 592

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

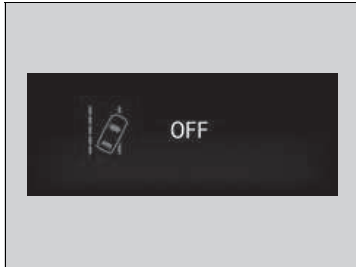
▶ **Road Departure Mitigation System Conditions and Limitations** P. 582

There are times when you may not notice Road Departure Mitigation functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

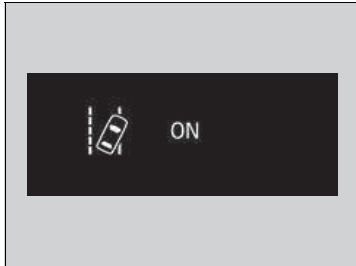
If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

▶ Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.



If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the warning sound is given only.

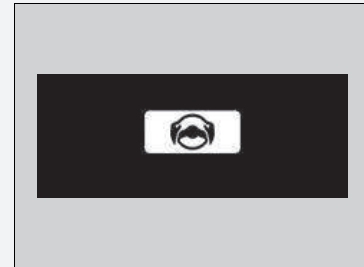


After a few minutes, the message to the left is displayed and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

⌘ Road Departure Mitigation System

If LKAS is off and you have selected **Normal** or **Early** from the customised options using the driver information interface or audio/information screen, the message below will appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings or the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border). If you have selected **Delayed**, however, the message will only appear if the vehicle is about to cross over the outer edge of the pavement.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 161, 398




## ■ How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h (45 and 112 mph).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.
- The vehicle is not accelerating or braking, and the steering wheel is not being turned.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

## ▣ How the System Activates

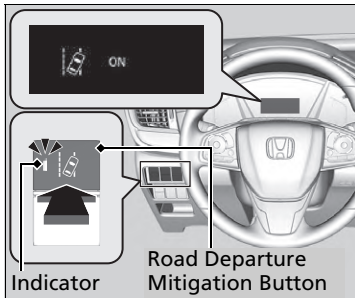
The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the  indicator comes and stays on.

▣ **Indicators** P. 114

Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

## Road Departure Mitigation System On and Off



Press the Road Departure Mitigation button to turn the system on and off.

- ▶ The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the driver information interface when the system is on.

### ⊠ Road Departure Mitigation System On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the driver information interface or audio/information screen the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 161, 398

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (LSF), road departure mitigation, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, parking brake and brake system (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Road Departure Mitigation System Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.
- The outer edge of the pavement is bordered by objects, material etc. other than grass or gravel.

**■ Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

**■ Vehicle conditions**

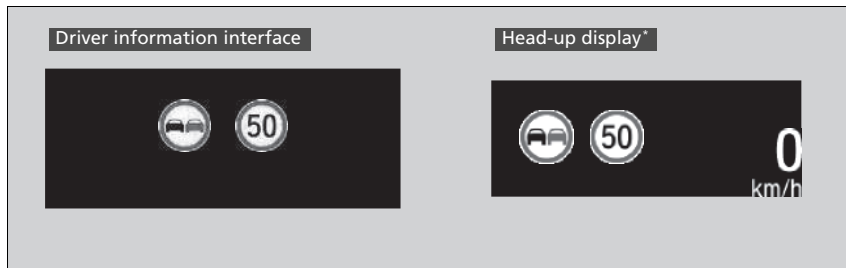
- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated tyre, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains are installed.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

## Traffic Sign Recognition System

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit and that overtaking is prohibited, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the driver information interface and the head-up display\*.

### How the System Works

When the camera located behind the rearview mirror captures traffic signs while driving, the system displays the ones that are recognised as designated for your vehicle. The sign icon will be displayed until the vehicle reaches a predetermined time and distance.



The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:

- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exists motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.

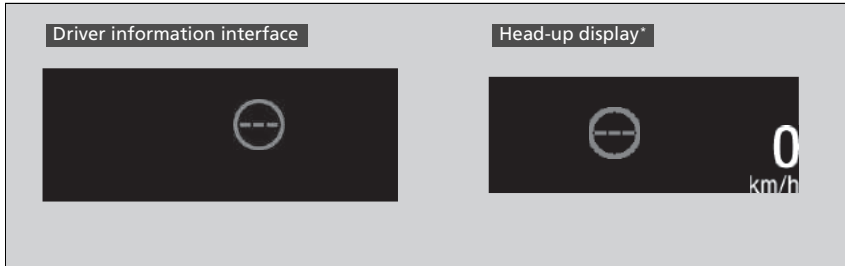
### Traffic Sign Recognition System

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

Do not rely too much on the system. Always drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.



Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally. Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the image below may appear.





⊠ Traffic Sign Recognition System

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

If  appears, the Traffic Sign Recognition System does not work, and  will be displayed.

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the air flow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If  appears, the Traffic Sign Recognition System does not work, and  will be displayed.

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

\* Not available on all models



### ▶▶ Traffic Sign Recognition System

If your vehicle exceeds the detected speed limit, an icon representing the speed limit sign for the current area will blink in the display.

The system's ability to accurately notify the driver of the speed limit is dependent on certain conditions such as the units displayed on the traffic sign as well as the speed and direction of travel of the vehicle. In some cases, the system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information.

▶▶ **Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations** P. 587

The unit for speed limits (mph or km/h) varies from country to country. If you enter a country whose unit differs to the one of the country from which you came, use the driver information interface or audio/information display to change the unit, otherwise the system will not work correctly.

▶▶ **Speedometer** P. 144

▶▶ **Customized Features** P. 161, 398

## ■ Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

The Traffic Sign Recognition system may not be able to recognise the traffic sign in the following cases.

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- There are portions remaining to be wiped.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated tyre, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.


### ■ Environmental conditions

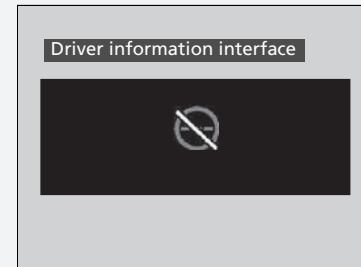
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- When you drive in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night, in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- A vehicle in front of you is travelling flying up spray or snow.

\* Not available on all models

Continued

## ⊠ Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

When the Traffic Sign Recognition System malfunctions,  appears on the driver information interface. If this message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



■ **The position or the condition of the traffic sign**

- A sign is hard to be found since it is in a complicated area.
- A sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- A sign is located where the beam of the headlight is hard to reach.
- A sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- Faded or bent signs.
- Rotated or damaged signs.
- A sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- A part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or the sign itself is hidden by a vehicle and others.
- Light (a streetlight) or a shadow is reflected on the surface of the sign.
- A sign is too bright or too dark (an electric sign).
- A sign of a small size.

■ **Other conditions**

- When you are driving at a high speed.

The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not operate correctly, such as displaying a sign that does not follow the actual regulation for the roadway or does not exist at all in the following cases.

- ▶ A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.
- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric sign, numbers on the sign are blurred, etc.).
- A sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving even though it is not for the lane (speed limit sign situated at the junction between the side road and the main road, etc.).
- There are things that look similar to the colour or shape of the recognition object (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).
- A lorry or another large vehicle with a sticker of the speed limit sign on the back are travelling in front of you.

## ■ Signs Displayed on the Driver Information Interface and Head-Up Display\*

Two traffic signs can be simultaneously displayed next to each other when detected.

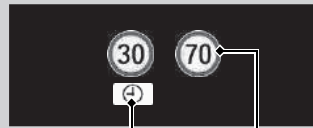
The speed limit sign icon is displayed on the right half of the screen. The overtaking prohibition sign icon appears on the left. Any additional sign that indicates speed limit based on weather (snow, etc.) or specific period of time can appear on either side.

### ■ When main mode is selected

#### Driver information interface



Overtaking Prohibition Sign\*1  
Speed Limit Sign



Additional Speed Limit Sign Based on Conditions\*2  
Speed Limit Sign

#### Head-up display\*



Overtaking Prohibition Sign\*1  
Speed Limit Sign



Additional Speed Limit Sign Based on Conditions\*2  
Speed Limit Sign

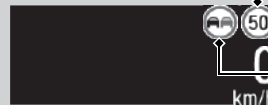
### ■ When main mode is not selected

#### Driver information interface



Speed Limit Sign  
Overtaking Prohibition Sign\*1

#### Head-up display\*



Speed Limit Sign  
Overtaking Prohibition Sign\*1

Depending on situation, \*1 can be replaced with \*2, or \*2 can appear on the right side.

■ **Selecting to display traffic signs when main mode is off**

You can continue displaying reduced-size traffic sign icon on the driver information interface and head-up display\* even while the main mode is not selected.

\* Not available on all models

## Front Sensor Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF), Traffic Sign Recognition System, and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

### Front Sensor Camera

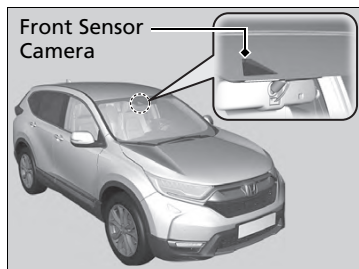
Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, bonnet, or front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.

After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

### Camera Location and Handling Tips




This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.


To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing.

Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

## » Front Sensor Camera

If the  message appears:

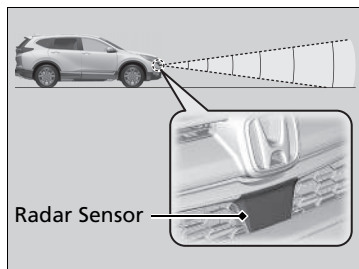
- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the air flow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the  message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



## Radar Sensor



The radar sensor is in the front grille.

### ▣ Radar Sensor

Avoid strong impacts to the radar sensor cover.

For the CMBS to work properly:

- Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.
- Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.
- Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by using the CMBS OFF button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

▣ **CMBS On and Off** P. 546

If the vehicle is involved in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- Your vehicle is involved in a frontal collision.
- Your vehicle drives through deep water or is submerged in deep water.
- Your vehicle strongly strikes a bump, curb, chock, or embankment that could jar the radar sensor.

## Brake System

### ■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



#### ■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has 12-volt battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on.



#### ■ To release

The power mode must be ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
  - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.

#### ⊗ Brake System

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

#### ⊗ Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.

⊗ **If the Battery Is Dead** P. 706

**If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the electric servo brake system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.**

### ■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

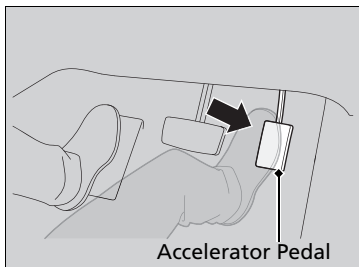
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.

🔧 **Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature** P. 597

### ■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

- The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The power system is on.
- The transmission is not in **P** or **N**.

### 🔧 Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the power system is turned off while the brake hold system is applied.
- When there is a problem with brake hold system while the brake hold is applied.
- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with LSF is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with LSF.
- When the power system is turned off while ACC with LSF is activated.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

## ■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Put the transmission into **P**.
2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
  - ▶ Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator has come on.
3. Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within 3 seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
  - ▶ Two beeps indicates that the feature has been activated.
  - ▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
  - ▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the power system.
  - ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature while putting your vehicle through a conveyor type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, you can follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
2. Set the power mode to OFF and then within 2 seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
  - ▶ Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
  - ▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both ACC with LSF and the automatic brake hold system.
  - ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.

### ▣ Parking Brake

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Parking brake and brake system indicator
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

The parking brake is applied while the vehicle is moving with the electric parking brake switch being pulled.

### ▣ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

## ■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you to retain steering control when braking very hard.

➤ **Brake Assist System** P. 602

➤ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 601

## ☒ Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Applying constant pressure to the brakes while going down a long hill can cause the brakes to heat up, resulting in a loss of stopping power. Therefore, when descending a long hill, release the accelerator pedal and allow regenerative braking to slow the vehicle down. To adjust the rate of deceleration, use the deceleration paddle selector.

When the High Voltage battery is recharging, regenerative braking may not be possible.

➤ **POWER/CHARGE Gauge** P. 145


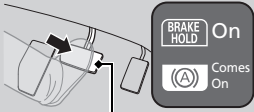
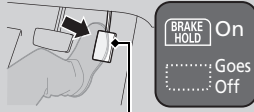
➤ **High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge**  
P. 145

➤ **Deceleration Paddle Selector** P. 511

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

## Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

<p>■ Turning on the system</p>  <p>Automatic Brake Hold Button</p> <p>Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the power system. Press the automatic brake hold button.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.</li> </ul>	<p>■ Activating the system</p>  <p>Brake Pedal</p> <p>Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The transmission must not be in <b>P</b> or <b>R</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.</li> <li>• Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.</li> </ul>	<p>■ Cancelling the system</p>  <p>Accelerator Pedal</p> <p>Depress the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in a position other than <b>P</b> or <b>N</b>. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.</li> </ul>
---	---	---

### Automatic Brake Hold

#### ⚠ WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in **P** and applying the parking brake.

Continued

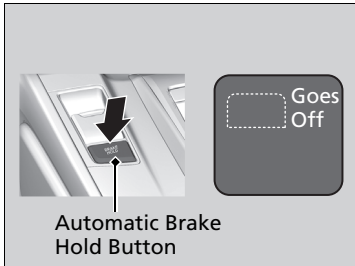
■ **The system automatically cancels when:**

- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into **P** or **R**.

■ **The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:**

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power system is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ **Turning off the automatic brake hold system**



While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

⌘ Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the power system or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

⌘ **When Stopped** P. 604

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the power system is off.

⌘ Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

## Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

### ■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

### ■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h (6 mph), the ABS stops.

### ⌘ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

#### NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the power system has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.



## Brake Assist System

---

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

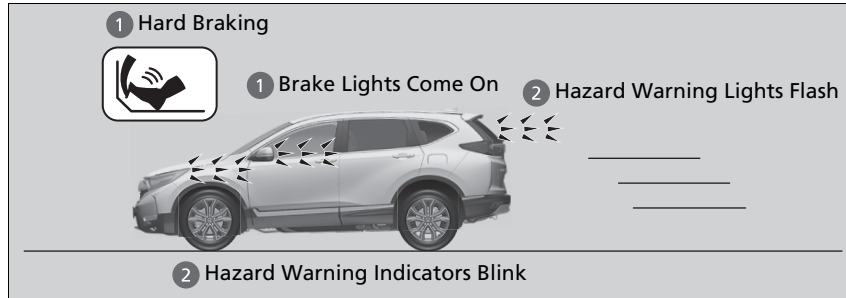
### ■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

## Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h (37 mph) or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

### ■ When the system activates:



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

### ☒ Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

## When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Change the transmission to **P**.
4. Turn off the power system.
  - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off in about 15 seconds.

Always confirm the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

### ▣ Parking Your Vehicle

#### **WARNING**

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

## »» When Stopped

**NOTICE**

The following can damage the driveline:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Changing to **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

When facing uphill, do not hold the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal.

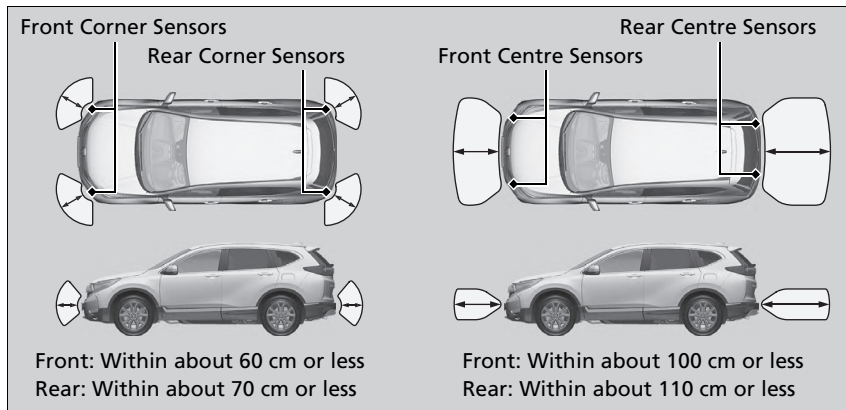
Doing so may cause the power system to overheat and fail.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

## Parking Sensor System \*

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

### ■ The sensor location and range



### ▣ Parking Sensor System \*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

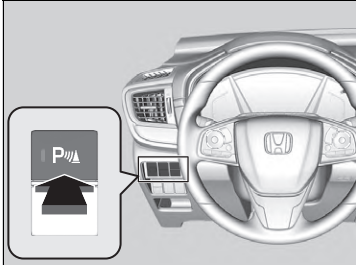
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

## ■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner, rear centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in **[R]**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

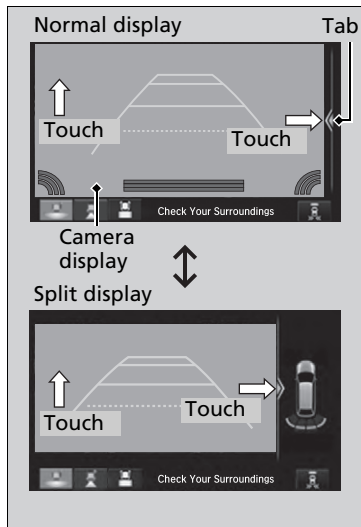
The front centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is not in **[P]** or **[R]**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

## ☒ Parking sensor system on and off

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

*Continued*

## ■ Screen Operation



You can switch the display to normal display or split display by touching the tab vicinity or on the camera display.

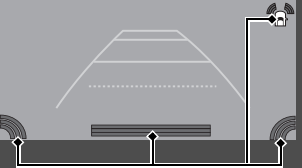
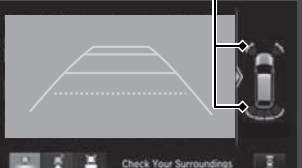

## ▶▶ Screen Operation

If the parking sensor system is off or there is a malfunction in the system, the tab disappears, and the split display returns to the normal display.

You can also switch the display to normal display or split display using the audio/information screen.

▶▶ **Customized Features** P. 398

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles becomes shorter

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface/ Audio/information screen
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	Front: About 100-60 cm Rear: About 110-60 cm	Blinks in Yellow*1	 <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p>
Short	Front: About 60-45 cm Rear: About 70-45 cm	About 60-50 cm	Blinks in Amber	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 50-40 cm	Blinks in Amber	
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 40 cm or less	Blinks in Red	 <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p> 

\*1: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.



## ■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
3. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
  - ▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

## ☒ Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you shift to **[R]**, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

## Cross Traffic Monitor\*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient especially when you are getting out of a parking space backwards.

### ⚠ Cross Traffic Monitor\*

## ⚠ WARNING

Cross traffic monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

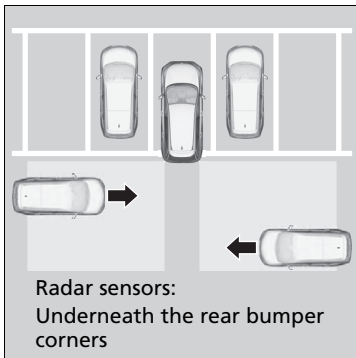
Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

The parking sensor system's alerting buzzer overrides the cross traffic monitor buzzer when the sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ How the System Works



The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
  - ▶ **Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off** P. 615
  - ▶ **Customized Features** P. 398
- The transmission is in **R**.
- Your vehicle is moving at 5 km/h (3 mph) or lower.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

## ▶▶ Cross Traffic Monitor\*

Cross traffic monitor may not detect or may delay detecting an approaching vehicle, or may alert detection without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle and a wall, near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 5 km/h (3 mph) or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 10 km/h (6 mph) and 25 km/h (16 mph).
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.

▶ Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

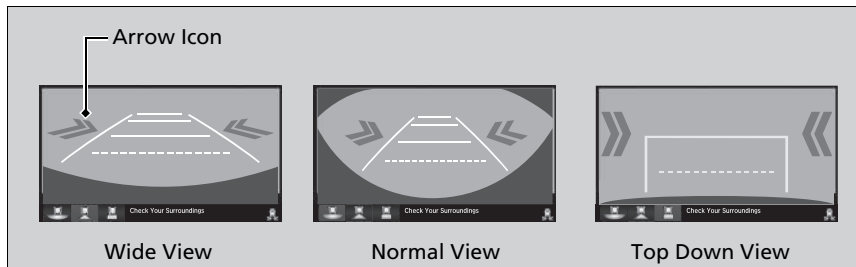
⊠ Cross Traffic Monitor\*

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.  
Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

\* Not available on all models



*Continued*


## ■ When the System Detects a Vehicle



An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.

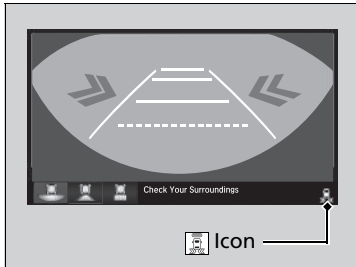
## ▶▶ When the System Detects a Vehicle

If the  on the lower right changes to  in amber when the transmission is in **R**, mud, snow, ice and other debris may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily cancelled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

If the  comes on when the transmission is in **R**, there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the transmission in **R**, there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off



Tap to turn the system on and off. The indicator (green) comes on with the system on.

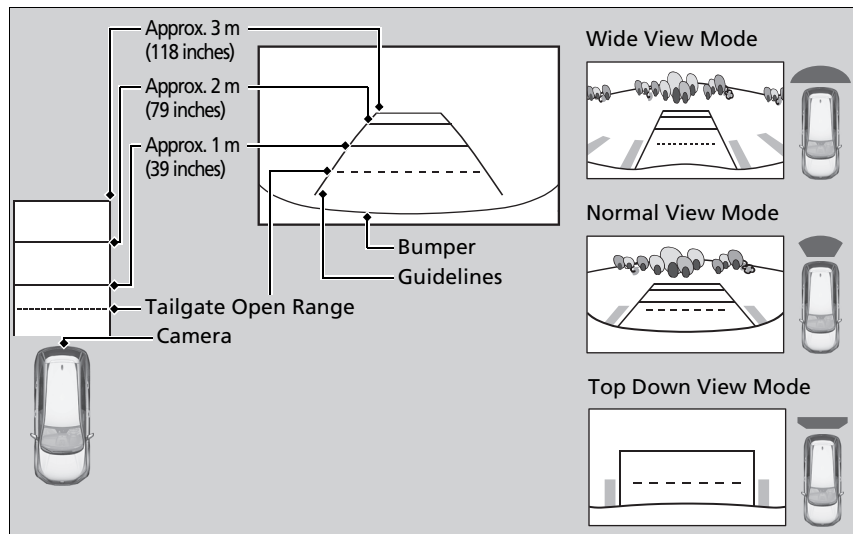
You can also switch on and off the system using the audio/information screen.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 398

## About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into **R**.

### Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



### About Your Multi-View Rear Camera




The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen.

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.

- : Wide view mode
- : Normal view mode
- : Top down view mode

- If the last used viewing mode was Wide or Normal, the same view mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into **R**.
- If Top down view mode was last used before you turned off the power system, Wide View mode is selected next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into **R**.
- If Top down view mode was last used more than 10 seconds after you put the transmission out of **R**, Wide View mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into **R**.

⌘ About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 398

**Fixed Guideline**

**On:** Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into **R**.

**Off:** Guidelines do not appear.

**Dynamic Guideline**

**On:** Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

**Off:** Guidelines do not move.



## Fuel Information

### Fuel recommendation

**EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel**  
**Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher**

Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded petrol with a research octane of 95 or higher.

If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher may be used temporarily.

The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

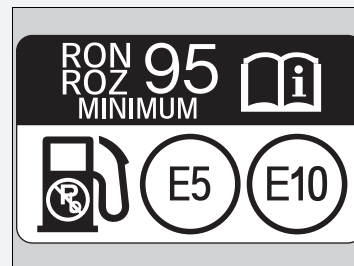
### Fuel tank capacity: 57 L

### Fuel Information

#### NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

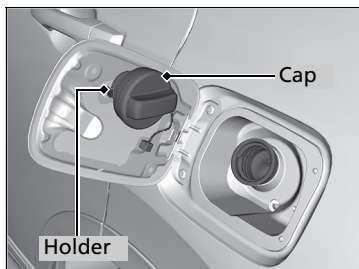
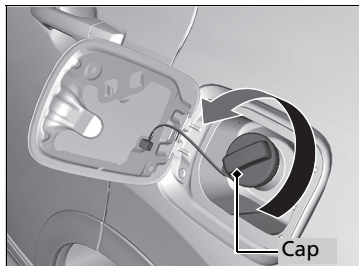
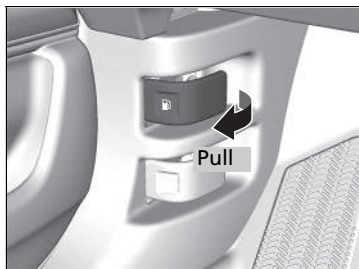
- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems



#### Oxygenated Fuels

Oxygenated fuels are blended with petrol and ethanol or ether compounds. Your vehicle is also designed to operate on oxygenated fuels containing up to 10% ethanol by volume and up to 22% ETBE by volume, based on the EN 228 standards. For more information, ask your dealer.

## How to Refuel



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the power system.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
  - ▶ The fuel fill door opens.
4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
  - ▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
  - ▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

### How to Refuel

## ⚠ WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Turn the power system off, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

## Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO<sub>2</sub> emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

### Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet. On vehicles without service reminder system, follow the Maintenance schedule.

#### ➤ Maintenance Schedule\* P. 631

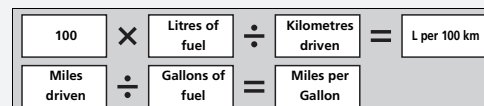
- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.

#### ➤ Recommended Engine Oil P. 642

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

### ➤ Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



# Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



## **Before Performing Maintenance**

Inspection and Maintenance .....	622
Safety When Performing Maintenance .....	623
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance	
Service .....	624
About Your Maintenance Service .....	625
<b>Service Reminder System</b> * .....	626
<b>Maintenance Schedule</b> * .....	631
<b>Maintenance Under the Bonnet</b>	
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet .....	639
Opening the Bonnet .....	640
Recommended Engine Oil .....	642

Oil Check .....	644
Adding Engine Oil .....	645
Cooling System .....	646
Inverter Coolant .....	649
Transmission Fluid .....	651
Brake Fluid .....	652
Refilling Window Washer Fluid .....	653
Fuel Filter .....	654
<b>Replacing Light Bulbs</b> .....	655
<b>Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades</b> .....	660
<b>Checking and Maintaining Tyres</b>	
Checking Tyres .....	665

Wear Indicators .....	666
Tyre Service Life .....	666
Tyre and Wheel Replacement .....	667
Tyre Rotation .....	668
Snow Traction Devices .....	669
<b>12-Volt Battery</b> .....	670
<b>Remote Transmitter Care</b>	
Replacing the Button Battery .....	676
<b>Climate Control System Maintenance</b> .....	678
<b>Cleaning</b>	
Interior Care .....	681
Exterior Care .....	683
<b>Accessories and Modifications</b> .....	686

\* Not available on all models

## Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book\* that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule\*** P. 631

### ■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

#### ■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

#### ■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  - **Brake Fluid** P. 652
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 665
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 655
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 660

## Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

### Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery, all High Voltage system, and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  - ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  - ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

#### ⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

## ■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  - ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  - ▶ Make sure to let the power system including the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  - ▶ Do not activate the power system unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts. When the power system is on, the engine can automatically start, or the radiator fan may start operating without the engine running.
- Do not touch the high-voltage battery and wiring (orange).

## Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

---

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

## About Your Maintenance Service

---

If the service reminder system is available in your vehicle, you are informed by the driver information interface when your vehicle's maintenance services are due. Refer to the service book that came with your vehicle for an explanation of the service item codes that appear on the display.

📖 **Service Reminder System**\* P. 626

If the service reminder system is not available, follow the maintenance schedules in the service book that came with your vehicle.

If your vehicle is without the service book, follow the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual.

📖 **Maintenance Schedule**\* P. 631

### 📖 About Your Maintenance Service

#### Models with service reminder system

If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the service reminder system applied countries, consult a dealer for how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country.

\* Not available on all models



# Service Reminder System\*



Provides information of which service items are to be performed. Service items are represented by a code and icon. The system tells you when to take your vehicle to a dealer by days remaining.

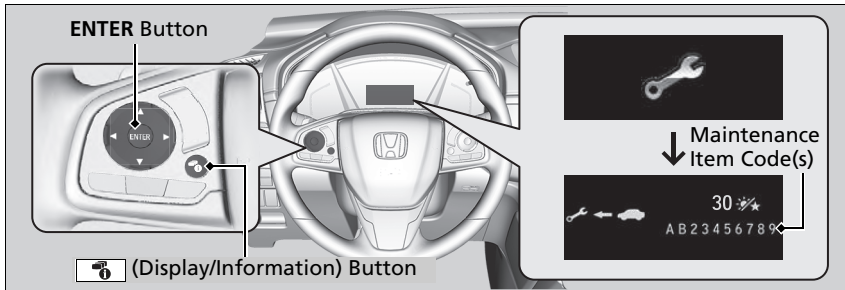
When the next maintenance service timing is near, coming or passed, a warning icon will also appear on the driver information interface every time you set the power mode to ON.

## Service Reminder System\*

You can choose to have a corresponding warning message displayed with the warning icon on the driver information interface.

## ■ Displaying the Service Reminder Information

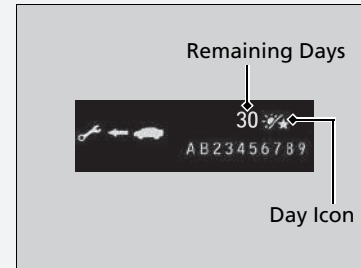
1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the  (display/information) button several times until  is displayed.
3. Press the **ENTER** button to go to the service reminder information screen. The maintenance item(s) appears on the driver information interface.









The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the service reminder information.

## ▶▶ Displaying the Service Reminder Information

Based on engine operating conditions and engine oil conditions, the system calculates the remaining days before the next service is to be performed.




## Warning Icons and Service Reminder Information on the Driver Information Interface

Warning Icon	Service Reminder Information	Explanation	Information
<p><b>Service Due Soon</b></p> 		<p>One or more of the service items are required in less than 30 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions.</p>	<p>The remaining days will be counted down per day.</p>
<p><b>Service Due Now</b></p> 		<p>One or more of the service items are required in less than 10 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions.</p>	<p>Have the indicated service performed as soon as possible.</p>
<p><b>Service Over Due</b></p> 		<p>The indicated maintenance service is still not done after the remaining time reaches 0.</p>	<p>Your vehicle has passed the service required point. Immediately have the service performed and make sure to reset the service reminder system.</p>

## ■ Service Reminder Items

Service items displayed on the driver information interface are in code and icon. For an explanation of the service reminder codes and icons, refer to the service book that came with your vehicle.

## ■ Availability of the Service Reminder System

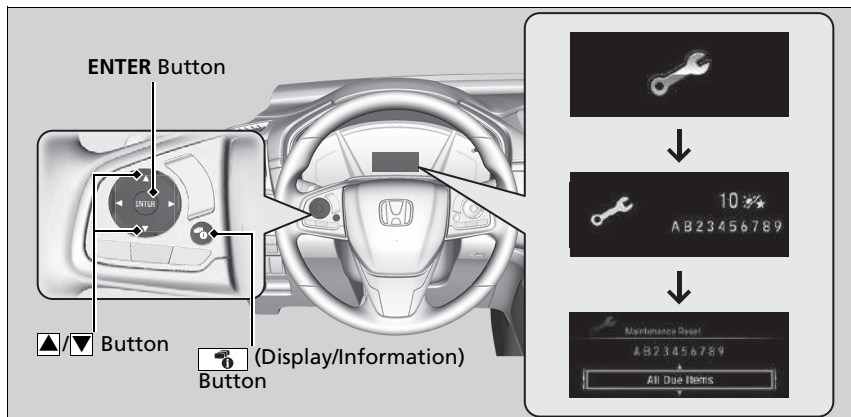
Even if the service reminder information appears on the driver information interface while pressing the  (display/information) button, this system is not available in some countries. Refer to the service book that came with your vehicle, or ask a dealer if you can use the service reminder system.




## ☒ Availability of the Service Reminder System

If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the service reminder system applied countries, consult a dealer on how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country.

## ■ Resetting the Display

Reset the service reminder information display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the  (display/information) button several times until  is displayed.
3. Press the **ENTER** button.
4. Press and hold the **ENTER** button for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
5. Press the  button to select a maintenance item to reset, or to select **All Due Items** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
6. Press the **ENTER** button to reset the selected item.
7. Repeat from step 4 for other items you wish to reset.

## ▶▶ Resetting the Display

### NOTICE

Failure to reset the service reminder information after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

### Models with Display Audio

You can also reset the service reminder system information display using the audio/information screen.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 398

The dealer will reset the service reminder information display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the service reminder information display yourself.

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except European and Ukrainian models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles X 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil* <sup>1</sup>	Normal	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter* <sup>1</sup>	Normal	Every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 2 years									
	Severe	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element	Every 30,000 km (18,500 miles)										
Inspect valve clearance	Every 120,000 km (75,000 miles)* <sup>2</sup>										
Replace fuel filter	Normal	Every 210,000 km (131,000 miles)									
	Severe	Every 130,000 km (81,000 miles)* <sup>3</sup>									
Replace spark plugs	Every 100,000 km (62,500 miles)										
Replace engine coolant	At 200,000 km (125,000 miles) or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km (62,500 miles) or 5 years										

\*1: Only severe schedule is required in some countries: refer to the local warranty booklet.

\*2: Sensory Method

Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km (75,000 miles) if they are noisy.

\*3: It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles X 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace transmission fluid	Every 80,000 km (50,000 miles) or 4 years										
Replace rear differential fluid	AWD	•				•				•	
Inspect front and rear brakes	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months										
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years										
Replace dust and pollen filter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Check expiry date for temporary tyre repair kit bottle	Every year										
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles)										
<b>Visually inspect the following items:</b>											
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months										
Suspension components											
Driveshaft boots											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Exhaust system											
Fuel lines and connections											



**Ukrainian models**

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	180	195
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144	156
Replace engine oil	Normal	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
	Severe	Every 7,500 km or 6 months												
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
	Severe	Every 7,500 km or 6 months												
Replace air cleaner element	Every 30,000 km													
Inspect valve clearance* <sup>1</sup>	Every 120,000 km													
Replace fuel filter	Normal	Every 210,000 km												
	Severe	Every 120,000 km* <sup>2</sup>												
Replace spark plugs	Every 120,000 km (Inspect: 15,000 km)													
Replace engine coolant	At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years													

\*1: Sensory method

Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

\*2: It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	180	195
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144	156
Replace transmission fluid	Every 75,000 km or 5 years													
Replace rear differential fluid	AWD		•						•					
Inspect front and rear brakes		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years													
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Check lights alignment		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Test drive (noise, stability, dashboard operation)		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Check expiry date for temporary tyre repair kit bottle		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)	Every 15,000 km													

**Visually inspect the following items:**

Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots														
Suspension components														
Driveshaft boots														
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid														
Exhaust system														
Fuel lines and connections														

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and filter	A, B, C, D and E

►► Maintenance Schedule\*

- The condition is considered as severe when you drive:
- A. Less than 8 km (5 miles), or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperatures per trip.
  - B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
  - C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
  - D. With a trailer towing, or loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
  - E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

## Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

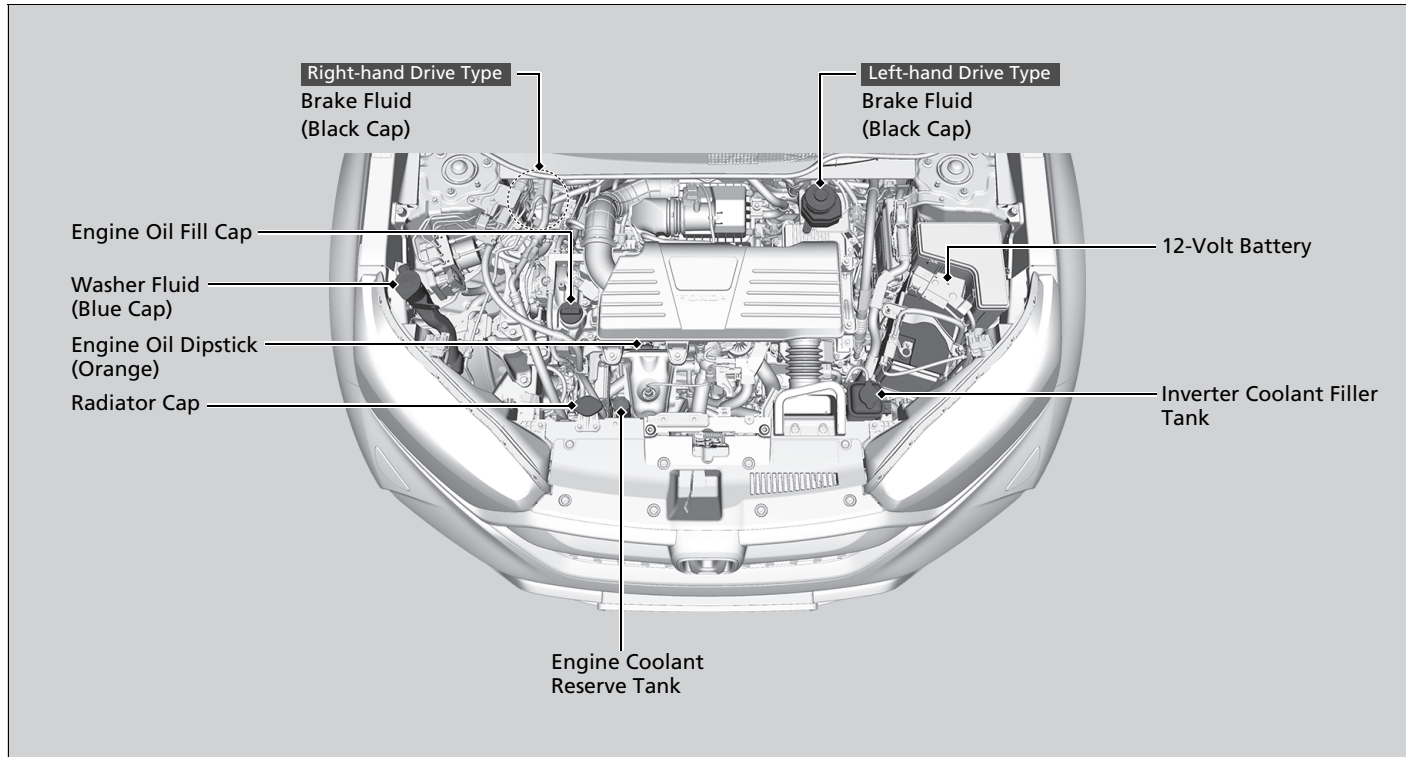
Except European and Ukrainian models

Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
<b>20,000 km</b> 12,500 Mi. (or 12 Mo.)		
<b>40,000 km</b> 25,000 Mi. (or 24 Mo.)		
<b>60,000 km</b> 37,500 Mi. (or 36 Mo.)		
<b>80,000 km</b> 50,000 Mi. (or 48 Mo.)		
<b>100,000 km</b> 62,500 Mi. (or 60 Mo.)		
<b>120,000 km</b> 75,000 Mi. (or 72 Mo.)		
<b>140,000 km</b> 87,500 Mi. (or 84 Mo.)		
<b>160,000 km</b> 100,000 Mi. (or 96 Mo.)		
<b>180,000 km</b> 112,500 Mi. (or 108 Mo.)		
<b>200,000 km</b> 125,000 Mi. (or 120 Mo.)		

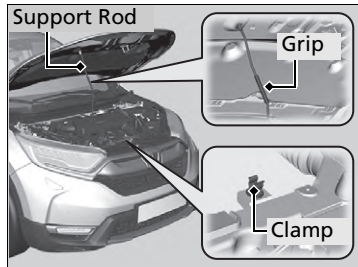
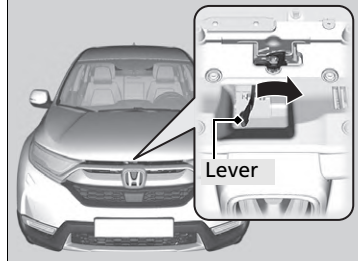
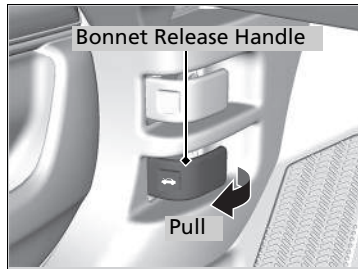
Ukrainian models

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
<b>15,000 km</b> (or 12 Mo.)			
<b>30,000 km</b> (or 24 Mo.)			
<b>45,000 km</b> (or 36 Mo.)			
<b>60,000 km</b> (or 48 Mo.)			
<b>75,000 km</b> (or 60 Mo.)			
<b>90,000 km</b> (or 72 Mo.)			
<b>105,000 km</b> (or 84 Mo.)			
<b>120,000 km</b> (or 96 Mo.)			
<b>135,000 km</b> (or 108 Mo.)			
<b>150,000 km</b> (or 120 Mo.)			
<b>165,000 km</b> (or 132 Mo.)			
<b>180,000 km</b> (or 144 Mo.)			
<b>195,000 km</b> (or 156 Mo.)			

## Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



## Opening the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
  - The bonnet will pop up slightly.
3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.
4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

### ► Opening the Bonnet

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The bonnet support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine.

To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod:  
Use the foam grip instead.

#### **NOTICE**

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

» Opening the Bonnet



- Grab the foam.
- The support rod gets very hot.
- Refer to the owner's manual.



## Recommended Engine Oil

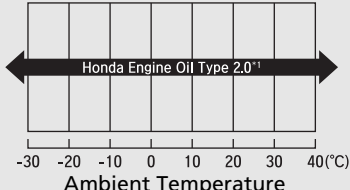
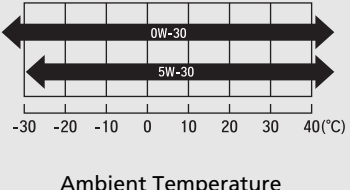
Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

See the engine oil fill cap markings in the image that follows and on the actual cap to check if the vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter\*.

➔ **Adding Engine Oil** P. 645

### European and Ukrainian models

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Honda Engine Oil Type 2.0*1</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil</li> <li>ACEA C2/C3</li> </ul>
 <p>Ambient Temperature</p>	 <p>Ambient Temperature</p>

\*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.

### Recommended Engine Oil

#### Engine Oil Additives


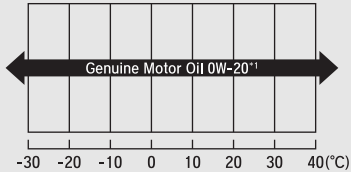
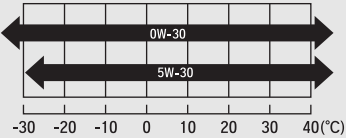

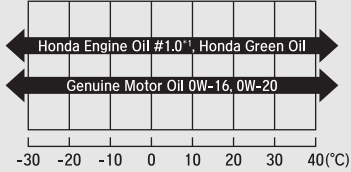
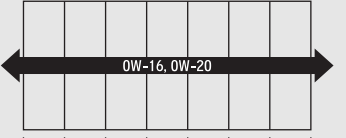
#### Models with gasoline particulate filter

You cannot use Engine Oil Additives.

#### Models without gasoline particulate filter

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Except European and Ukrainian models

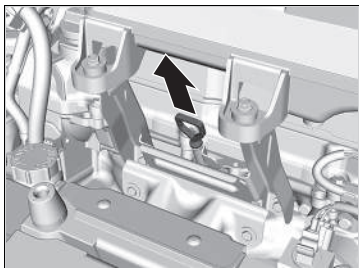
Model	Engine Oil Fill Cap Markings	Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
With Gasoline Particular Filter		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Honda Genuine Motor Oil</li> </ul>  <p>Ambient Temperature</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ACEA C2/C3</li> </ul>  <p>Ambient Temperature</p>
Without Gasoline Particular Filter		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Honda Engine Oil #1.0*1</li> <li>• Honda Green Oil</li> <li>• Honda Genuine Motor Oil</li> </ul>  <p>Ambient Temperature</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil</li> <li>• ACEA A5/B5</li> </ul>  <p>Ambient Temperature</p>

\*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.

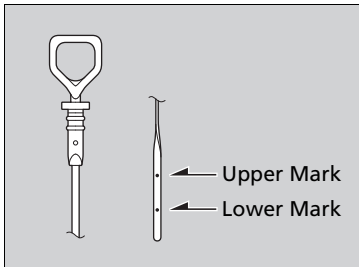
## Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel. Park the vehicle on level ground.

Turn off the power system. You can check the oil level without the engine having run beforehand. If the engine has been running, wait approximately three minutes before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.



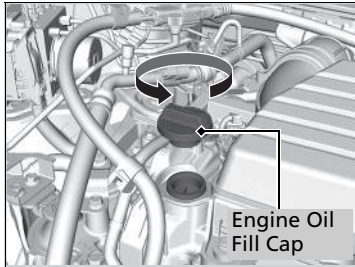
4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

### Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km/625 miles. Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.

## Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

### Adding Engine Oil

#### NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

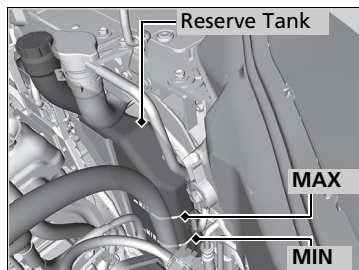
## Cooling System

### Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

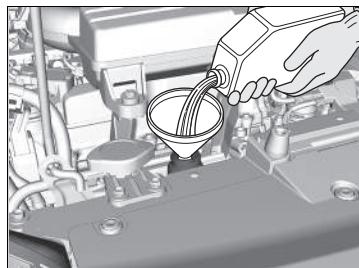
This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the engine coolant reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

### Reserve Tank



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
  - If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.



3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

### ►► Cooling System

## ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

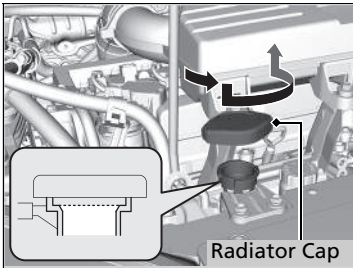
### NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

## Radiator



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anti-clockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anti-clockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

### ⌘ Radiator

#### NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

*Continued*

## ■ Radiator Cap



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 108 kPa.

## Inverter Coolant

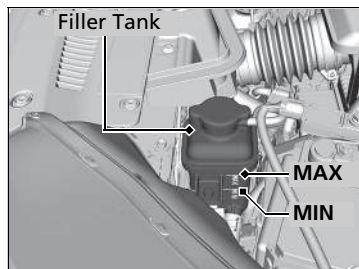
### Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the inverter coolant level every time you refuel.

Have a dealer replace inverter coolant.

### Checking the Coolant



1. Check the fluid level in the tank.
2. If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at a dealer.
  - ▶ Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks.

### ⓘ Inverter Coolant

#### NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines.

Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the motor components.



## ■ Inverter Coolant Filler Tank Cap



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 49 kPa.

## Transmission Fluid

**Specified fluid: Honda ATF DW-1**

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.  
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change transmission fluid.

📄 **Maintenance Schedule**\* P. 631

Do not attempt to check or change the transmission fluid yourself.

### Transmission Fluid

#### NOTICE

**Do not mix Honda ATF DW-1 with other transmission fluids.**

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda ATF DW-1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda ATF DW-1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

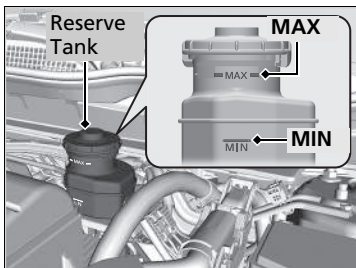
\* Not available on all models

## Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

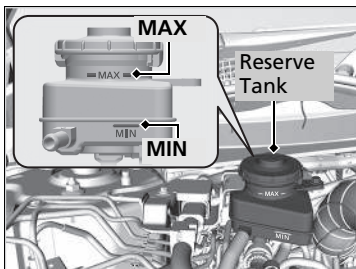
### ■ Checking the Brake Fluid

#### Left-hand Drive Type



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

#### Right-hand Drive Type



#### » Brake Fluid

##### NOTICE

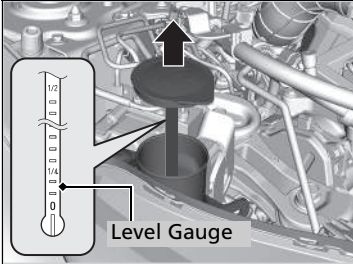
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

## Refilling Window Washer Fluid

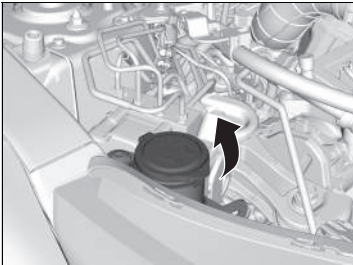
### Models with level gauge



Check the amount of window washer fluid using the washer fluid level gauge on the cap.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

### Models without level gauge



If the washer fluid is low, a symbol appears on the driver information interface.

### All models

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

### ⌘ Refilling Window Washer Fluid

#### NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump. Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid. Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

## Fuel Filter

---

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

### » Fuel Filter

#### Models with service reminder system

The fuel filter should be replaced according to the service reminder indication.

## Headlights

---

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Front Fog Lights

---

Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

### ⌘ Headlights

---

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

## **Position/Daytime Running Lights**

---

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## **Active Cornering Lights \***

---

Active cornering lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## **Front Turn Signal Lights**

---

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## **Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights**

---

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## **Brake/Taillights and Rear Turn Signal Lights**

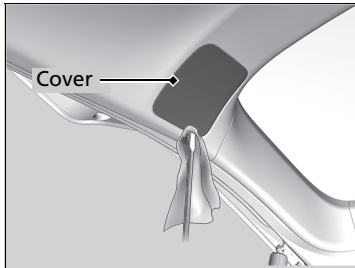
---

Brake/taillights and rear turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

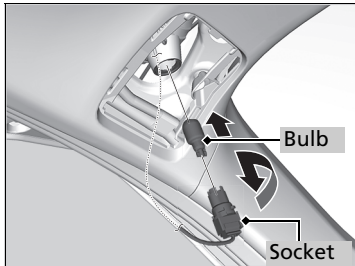
## Taillights and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Taillight: LED**  
**Back-Up Light: 16 W**



1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge using a flat-tip screwdriver.
  - ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it. Remove the old bulb.
3. Insert a new bulb.

### ⌘ Taillights and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



## **Rear Licence Plate Light**

---

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## **High-Mount Brake Light**

---

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## **Rear Fog Light**

---

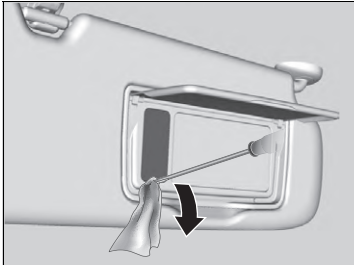
Rear fog light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Other Light Bulbs

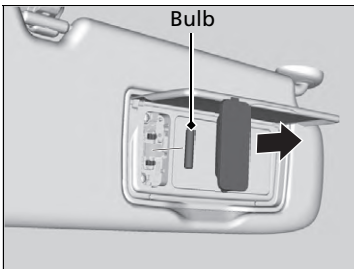
### ■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs\*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Vanity Mirror Light: 1.4 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
  - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



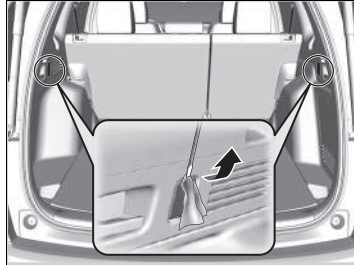
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

\* Not available on all models

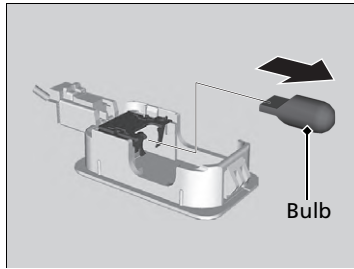
### ■ Luggage Area Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Luggage Area Light: 5 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
  - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

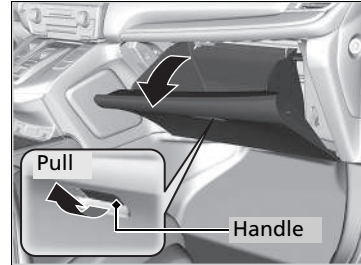


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

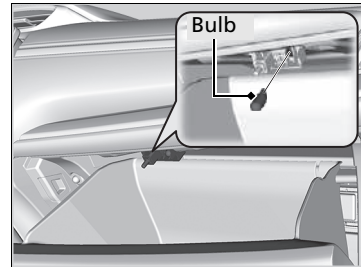
### ■ Glove Box Light Bulb\*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Glove Box Light: 3.4 W**



1. Open the glove box.

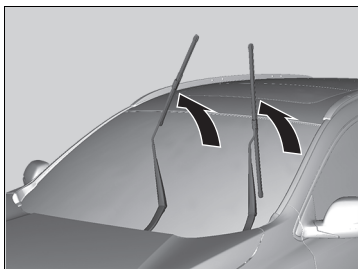
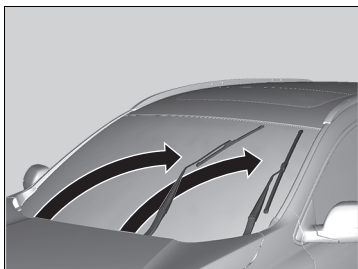


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

## Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

## Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

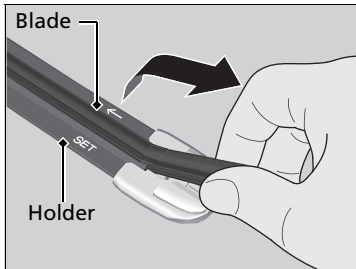
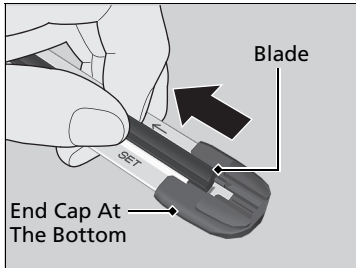
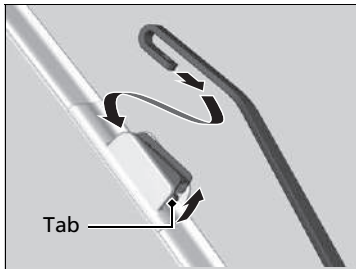


1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
2. While holding the wiper switch in the **MIST** position, set the power mode to ON, then to VEHICLE OFF.
  - ▶ Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.
3. Lift both wiper arms.

### Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

#### NOTICE

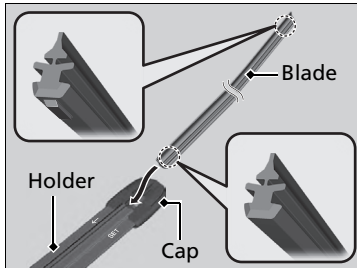
Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windshield, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windshield.



4. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

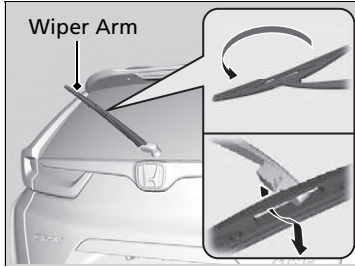
5. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.

6. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.

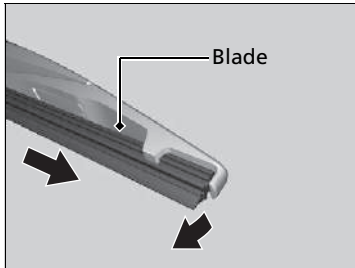


7. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
8. Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
9. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
10. Lower both wiper arms.
11. Set the power mode to ON and hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position until both wiper arms return to the standard position.

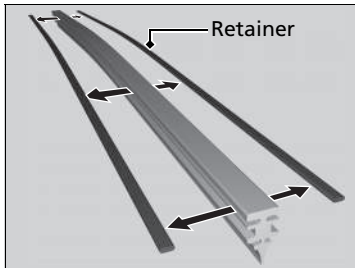
## Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.



3. Slide the blade out of the wiper.



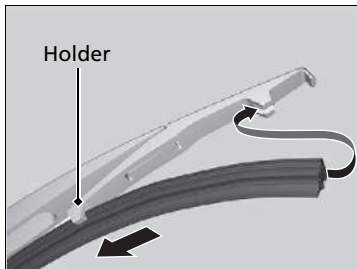
4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.

### Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

#### NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the rear window.

Continued



5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
  - ▶ Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

## Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

### ■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

### ■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.

Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

➤ **Wear Indicators** P. 666

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

### ☒ Checking Tyres

## ⚠ WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

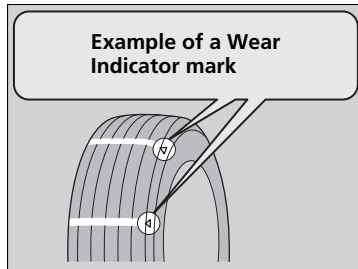
If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must initialise the deflation warning system.

➤ **Deflation Warning System** P. 531



## Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm (about 1/16 inch) shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre.

**Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

## Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

### ☒ Checking Tyres

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

## Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

### ⚠ Tyre and Wheel Replacement

#### **⚠ WARNING**

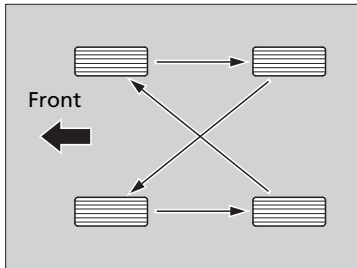
Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

## Tyre Rotation

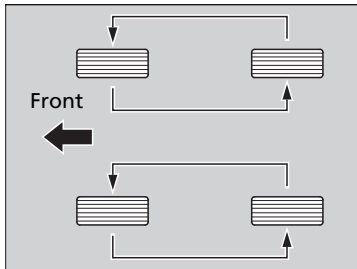
Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

### ■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

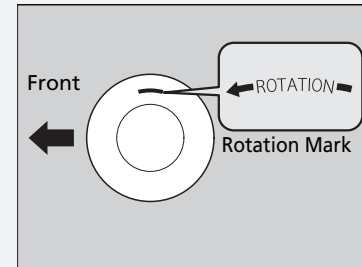
### ■ Tyres with rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

### ▣ Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must initialise the deflation warning system.

▣ **Deflation Warning System** P. 531

## Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
<b>235/60R18 103H</b>	<b>RUD-matic classic 4716134</b>

\*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

### ☒ Snow Traction Devices

## ⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

### NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

According to the EU legislation for tyres, when winter tyres are used, it is necessary to affix a sticker with the allowable max. speed of the winter tyres clearly in the field of view of the driver, if the designed max. speed of vehicle is higher than the allowed max. speed of winter tyre. A sticker is obtainable from your tyre dealer. If you have any question, consult a dealer.

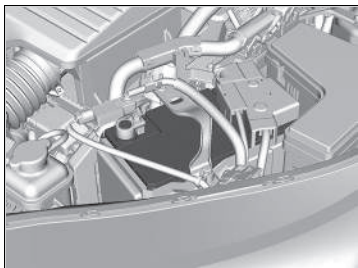
When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

## Checking the 12-Volt Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.
  - **Reactivating the audio system** P. 291
- The clock resets.
  - **Clock** P. 180
- **Right-hand drive type**

The immobilizer system needs to be reset.

- **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 112

### 12-Volt Battery

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

**KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN**

⌘ 12-Volt Battery

**Emergency Procedures**

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution.

Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.

Consult a dealer for more information.

## Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

### ⌘ 12-Volt Battery

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF), Road Departure Mitigation, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber), and Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

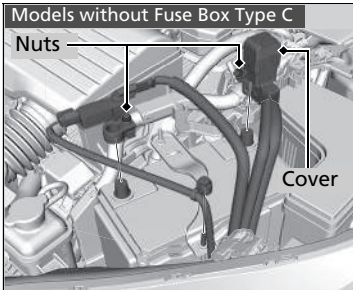
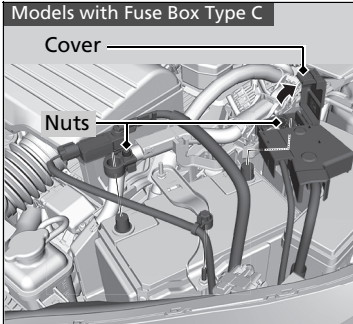
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## Replacing the 12-Volt Battery

When you remove and replace the 12-volt battery, always follow the maintenance safety and the warnings for when checking the battery to prevent potential hazards.

➤ **Maintenance Safety** P. 623

➤ **Checking the 12-Volt Battery** P. 670



1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Open the bonnet.
2. Loosen the nut on the negative battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the negative (-) terminal.
3. Open the positive battery terminal cover. Loosen the nut on the positive battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the positive (+) terminal.

### ▶▶ Replacing the 12-Volt Battery

#### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

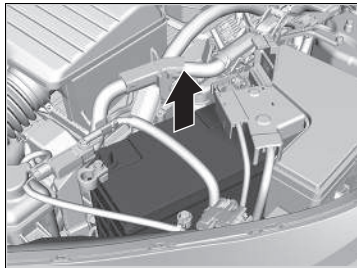
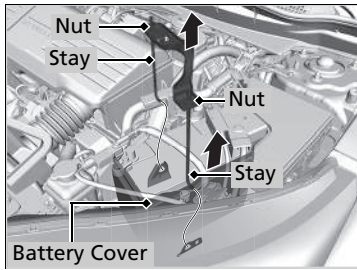
This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.



To install a new battery, reverse this procedure.

Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.





4. Loosen the nut on each side of the battery bracket with a wrench.
5. Pull the bottom end of each battery stay out of the hole on the battery base, and remove the combination of the battery bracket and the stays.
6. Remove the battery cover.
7. Take out the battery carefully.

## Battery Label



Example

### ⌘ Battery Label

#### **DANGER**

- Keep flames and sparks away from the battery. The battery produces explosive gas that can cause an explosion.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery to avoid risk of burns or loss of eyesight if exposed to battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children to handle the battery, under any circumstance. Ensure that anyone handling the battery has a proper understanding of the hazards and correct handling procedures involved.
- Handle battery electrolyte with extreme care, as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Exposure to eyes or skin can cause burns or loss of eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully, and understand it before handling the battery. Failure to do so can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use the battery if the level of electrolyte is at or below the recommended level. Using the battery with low electrolyte can cause it to explode, causing serious injury.

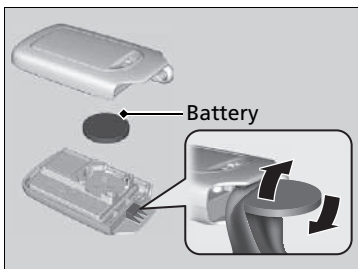
## Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



**Battery type: CR2032**

1. Remove the built-in key.
2. Remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
  - ▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
  - ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



### Replacing the Button Battery

#### ⚠ ⚠ WARNING

##### CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

**CAUTION:** Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

**CAUTION:** Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

**CAUTION:** Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

**CAUTION:** Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.

#### ▶▶ Replacing the Button Battery

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery\*.

#### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.



Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

\* Not available on all models

## Air Conditioning

For proper and safe operation of the climate control system, the refrigerant system should only be served by a qualified technician.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

### Climate Control System Maintenance

#### NOTICE

Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.


Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.


The air conditioner label is found under the bonnet:


➤ **Safety Labels** P. 97


➤ **Specifications** P. 730



 : Caution

 : Flammable Refrigerant

 : Requires a qualified technician to service

 : Air Conditioning System

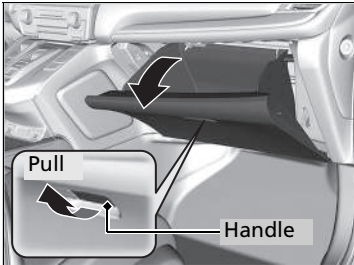
## Dust and Pollen Filter

### ■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

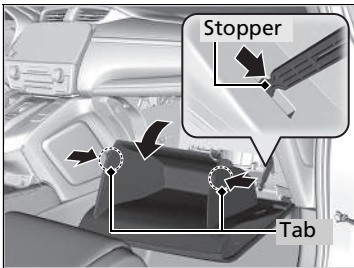
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

📖 **Maintenance Schedule\*** P. 631

### ■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.



2. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel, then push down the stopper.

3. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

### 📖 Dust and Pollen Filter

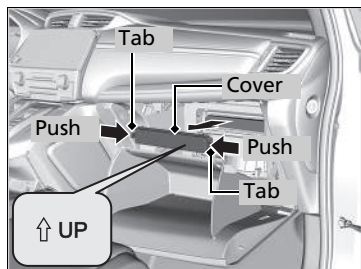
If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

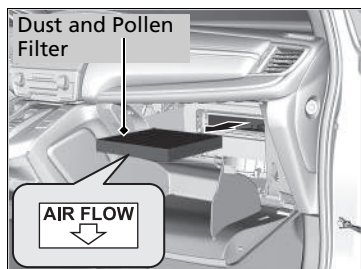
If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*



4. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.



5. Remove the filter from the case.

6. Install a new filter in the case.

- Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

## Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

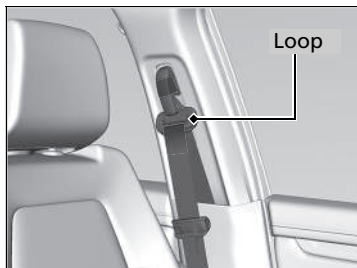
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

### ■ Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



### ▣ Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles. Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.



## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

## ■ Maintaining Genuine Leather\*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

## ▣ Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front sensor camera and the rainfall/light sensor\*.

## ▣ Maintaining Genuine Leather\*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

## Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

### ■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

### ■ Using an Automated Car Wash

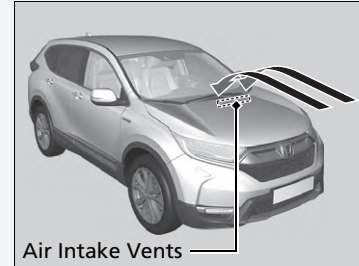
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

### ■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

### ⊠ Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



If you need to lift the wiper arms away from the windscreen, first set the wiper arms to the maintenance position.

➤ **Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber**  
P. 660

### ⊠ Using an Automated Car Wash

When using an automated car wash that pulls the vehicle through with a conveyor, make sure vehicle is in car wash mode.

➤ **If you want to keep the transmission in N position (car wash mode)** P. 508

*Continued*

## ■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

## ■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

## ■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

## ►► Applying Wax

### NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

## ►► Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

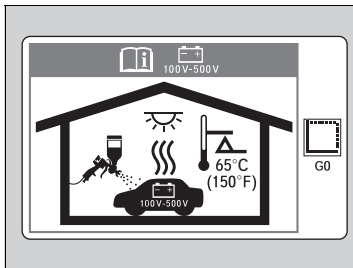
## ■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## ■ Painting the Vehicle



High temperature may damage the high-voltage battery used to power the electric motor.

When painting the vehicle in a heated paint booth, make sure the temperature does not exceed 65°C.

## Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  - **Fuses** P. 719
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

### Accessories and Modifications

#### **WARNING**

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

#### **WARNING**

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured high-voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.

A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.

Only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.

## Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high-voltage hybrid power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's high-voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda high-voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's hybrid power system and have been designed, engineered and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine high-voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

### Accessories and Modifications

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.



# Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.



## **Tools**

Types of Tools..... 690

## **If a Tyre Goes Flat**

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre..... 691

Handling of the Jack ..... 701

## **Power System Won't Start**

Checking the Procedure ..... 703

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak.. 704

Emergency Power System Off..... 705

**If the Battery Is Dead** ..... 706

## **Overheating**

How to Handle Overheating..... 709

## **Indicator, Coming On/Blinking**

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On ..... 712

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On ..... 712

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks ..... 713

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks ..... 714

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On ..... 715

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On ..... 716

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks..... 717

If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears..... 718

If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message... 718

## **Fuses**

Fuse Locations ..... 719

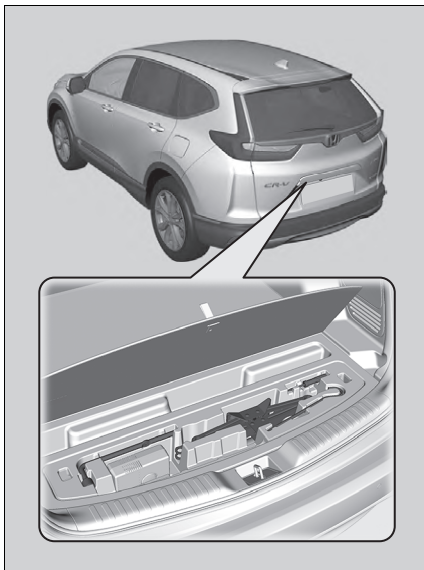
Inspecting and Changing Fuses..... 725

**Emergency Towing**..... 726

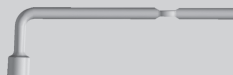
**If You Cannot Open the Tailgate** .... 727



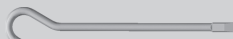
## Types of Tools



Jack



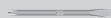
Wheel Nut Wrench/  
Jack Handle



Jack Handle Bar



Grip



Screwdriver

### Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

## Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.


If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into **P**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
  - ▶ When towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer.

### Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch).
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.

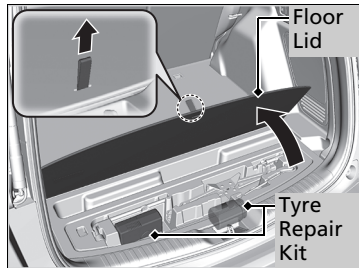
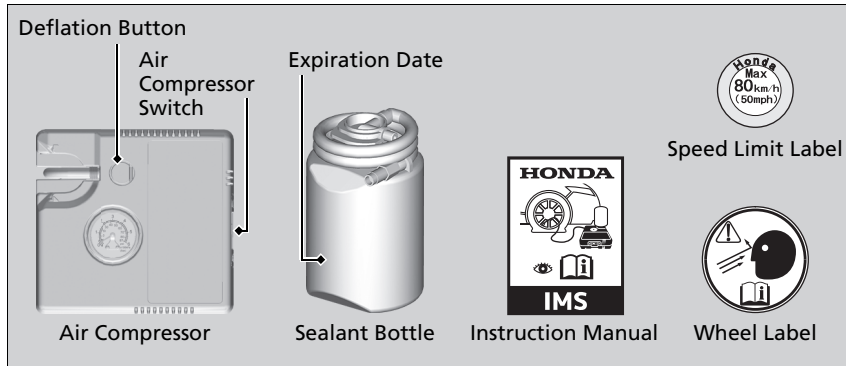


When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	Yes
Larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	No

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- A rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

## ■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

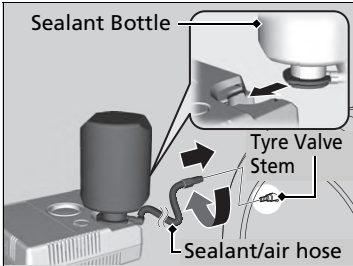
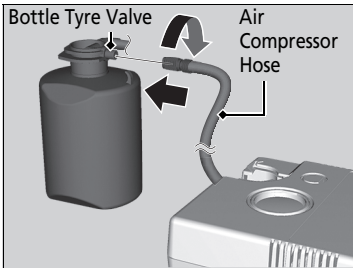
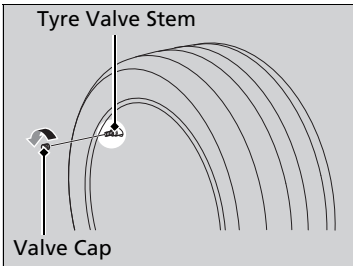


1. Open the tailgate.
2. Pull up the strap and open the luggage area floor lid.
3. Take the kit out of the case.
4. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

## ▶▶ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

## ■ Injecting Sealant and Air



1. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.
2. Shake the sealant bottle.
3. Attach the air compressor hose onto the bottle tyre valve. Screw it until it is tight.
4. Upside down the sealant bottle, then attach the bottle into the cutout of the air compressor.
5. Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

## ▶▶ Injecting Sealant and Air

### ⚠ WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

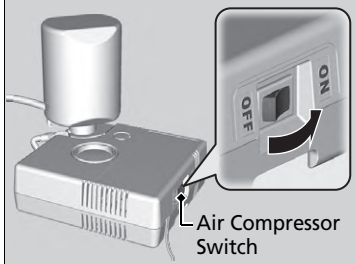
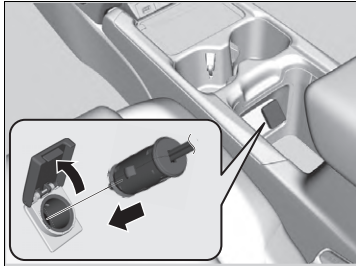
If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before using.

The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.



6. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
  - ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
    - **Accessory Power Sockets** P. 272
7. Turn the power system on.
  - **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 96
8. Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre.
  - ▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
9. After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the kit.

➤ Injecting Sealant and Air

**⚠ WARNING**

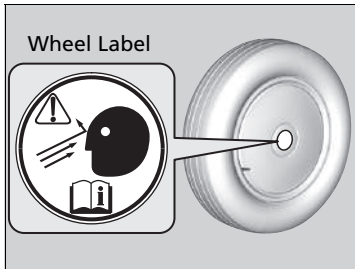
Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

**NOTICE**

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tyre is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.



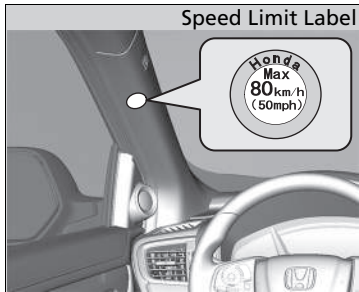
10. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
11. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
12. Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
  - ▶ The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

#### ✘ Injecting Sealant and Air

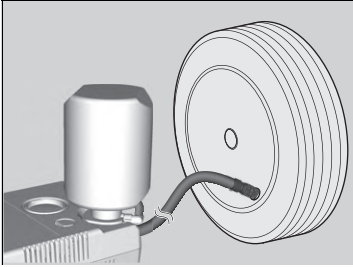
If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.

## ■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

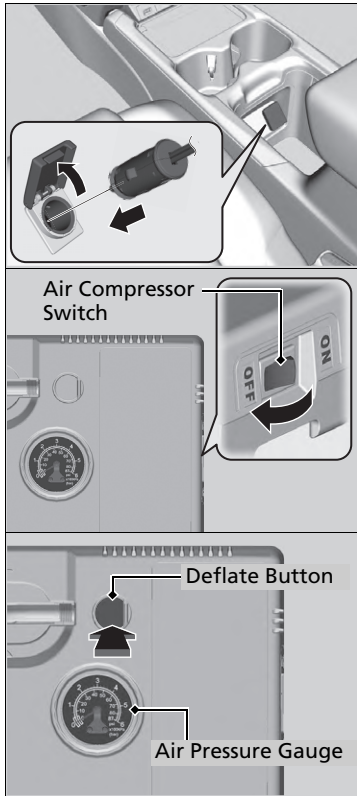


1. Apply the speed limit label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.
  - ▶ Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.



4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.
    - ▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.
  5. If the air pressure is:
    - Less than 120 kPa (1.2 bar, 18 psi):  
Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.
      - ✘ **Emergency Towing** P. 726
    - Front: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)/rear: 220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi) or more:  
Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- ▶ If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.





- Greater than 120 kPa (1.2 bar, 18 psi), but less than front: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)/rear: 220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi): Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre until the tyre pressure reaches front: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)/rear: 220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi).

► **Injecting Sealant and Air** P. 693

Then drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station.

Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

- You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.

6. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.
7. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
8. Press the deflate button until the gauge returns to 0 kPa (0 bar, 0 psi).
9. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

►► Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

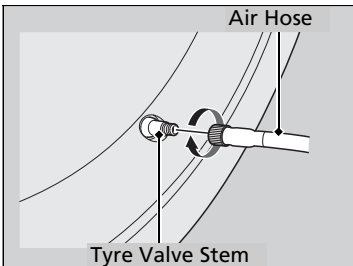
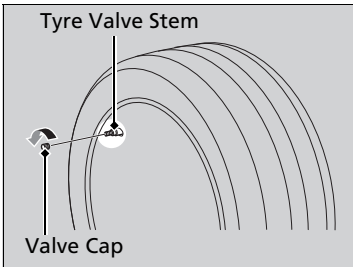
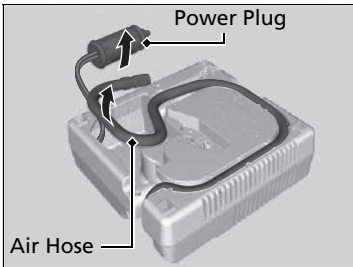
**⚠ WARNING**

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

## ■ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



1. Take the kit out of the luggage area.
  - **Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre** P. 692
2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
3. Remove the air hose from the kit.
4. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.
5. Attach the air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

## ▶▶ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

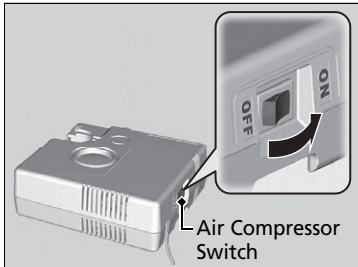
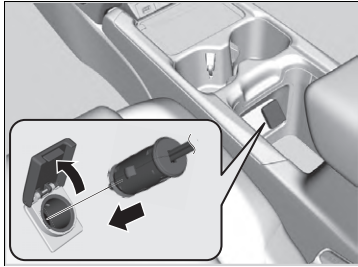
### ⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

### NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.



**6.** Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.

- ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

▶ **Accessory Power Sockets** P. 272

**7.** Turn the power system on.

- ▶ In freezing temperatures, start the engine and leave it running while the flat tyre is being serviced.

▶ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 96

**8.** Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.

- ▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
- ▶ If you have started the engine, leave it running while injecting air.

**9.** Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.

**10.** Turn off the kit.

- ▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
- ▶ If overinflated, press the deflate button.

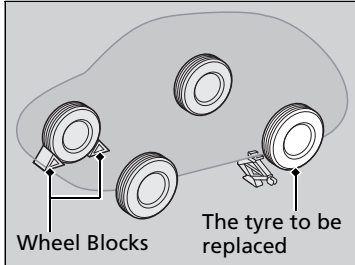
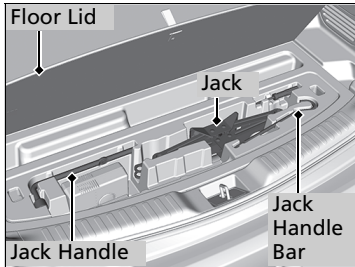
**11.** Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.

**12.** Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.

**13.** Repackage and properly stow the kit.

## Handling of the Jack

### How to Set Up the Jack



1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into **P**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
4. Open the luggage area floor lid.
5. Take the jack, jack handle and jack handle bar out of the luggage area.
6. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

### How to Set Up the Jack

## WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

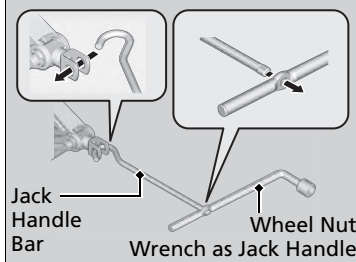
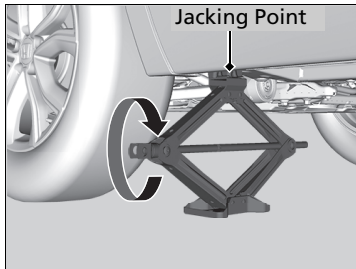
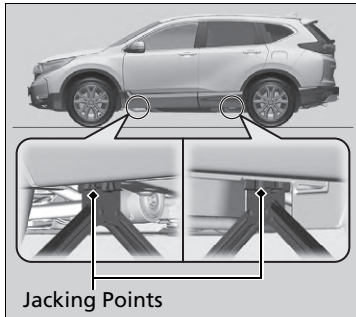
Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

**WARNING:** The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.

1.	2.	3.

1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.



7. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

8. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.  
▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

9. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

#### How to Set Up the Jack


Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.




## Checking the Procedure

When the ready indicator does not come on and  does not appear on the driver information interface, check the following items and take appropriate action.

### Checking the Procedure


If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

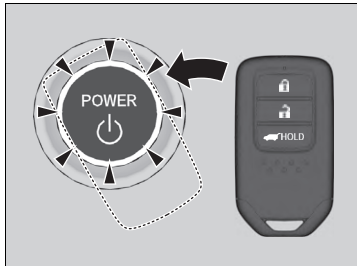
➤ **If the Battery Is Dead** P. 706

Checklist	Condition	What to Do
Check if the related indicator or driver information interface messages come on.	 appears.	➤ <b>Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages</b> P. 123
	 appears. ▶ Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range. ➤ <b>POWER Button Operating Range</b> P. 219	➤ <b>If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 704
	The power system indicator comes on.	Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	The transmission system indicator blinks and  appears.	➤ <b>If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message</b> P. 718
Check the brightness of the interior lights.	The interior lights are dim or do not come on at all.	Have the 12-volt battery checked by a dealer.
	The interior lights come on normally.	Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➤ <b>Inspecting and Changing Fuses</b> P. 725
Check the shift position.	The transmission is not in <b>P</b> .	Put the transmission into <b>P</b> . ➤ <b>Turning on the Power</b> P. 498
<b>Check the power system starting procedure.</b> Follow the instructions, and try to start the power system again.		
Check the immobilizer system indicator.	When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.	➤ <b>Immobilizer System Indicator</b> P. 112

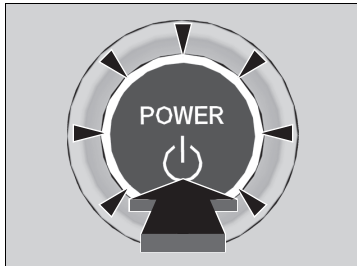
If you cannot turn on the power system after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds,  appears on the driver information interface, the **POWER** button flashes, and the ready indicator does not come on, turn on the power system as follows:



1. Touch the centre of the **POWER** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **POWER** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
  - ▶ The **POWER** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **POWER** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **POWER** button changes from flashing to on.
  - ▶ The ready indicator comes on.
  - ▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

## Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

The shift position automatically changes to **[P]** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then, the power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

### ⚠ Emergency Power System Off

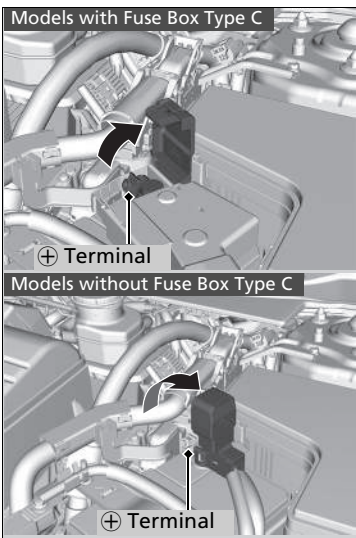
Do not press the **POWER** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the power system to be turned off.

If you press the **POWER** button while driving, the beeper sounds.



## Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the bonnet.



1. Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's 12-volt battery positive ⊕ terminal.

### If the Battery Is Dead

## WARNING

A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

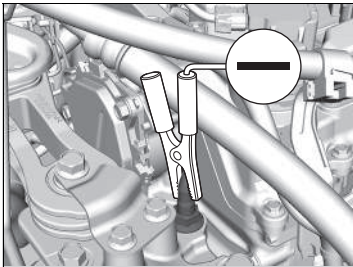
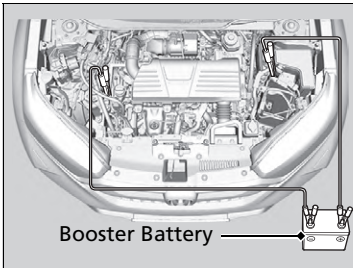
Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

### NOTICE

If a 12-volt battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen 12-volt battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.



2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's 12-volt battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
  - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
  - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.
5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

#### Jump Starting Procedure

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF), road departure mitigation system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, VSA OFF, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you turn the power system on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ What to Do After the Engine Starts



Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.


Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

## How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

-  appears on the driver information interface.
-  appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

### **Appears on the Driver Information Interface**

 appears on the driver information interface when the power system temperature is high.

 **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 123

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
  - ▶ Set the parking brake, and put the transmission into **P**. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. Keep the power mode in ON, and wait until the symbol disappears.
  - ▶ If the symbol does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

 **Appears on the Driver Information Interface**

■ **First thing to do**

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
  - ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the power system on and open the bonnet.
  - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the power system and wait until it subsides. Then open the bonnet.


▶▶ How to Handle Overheating

 **WARNING**

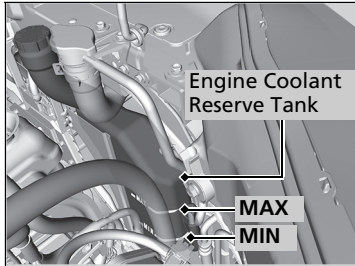
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.


Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

**NOTICE**

Continuing to drive with  on the driver information interface may damage the engine.


### ■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and turn the power system off once  on the driver information interface disappears.
  - ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately turn the power system off.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
  - ▶ If the coolant level in the engine coolant reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
  - ▶ If there is no coolant in the engine coolant reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

### ■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, turn the power system on.

If  does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

#### ▶▶ How to Handle Overheating

### ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

## If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

### ■ What to do as soon as the indicator comes on

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

### ■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Turn the power system off and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.  
➤ **Oil Check** P. 644
3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.
  - ▶ The indicator goes off: Start driving again.
  - ▶ The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

## If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the 12-volt battery is not being charged.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the climate control system, rear demister, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

### ☒ If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

#### NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

### ☒ If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the power system. The power system uses the 12-volt battery to activate. You may not be able to turn the power system on again if you have turned it off with this indicator on.

## If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on if there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

### ▶▶ If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h (30 mph) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.



## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks



(Red)

### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, use the deceleration paddle selector to slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

### ■ Reasons for the indicator to blink

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks

- Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

### ☒ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.

It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, use the deceleration paddle selector to slower your vehicle's speed.

☒ **Deceleration Paddle Selector** P. 511

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

☒ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 715

## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On



(Red)

■ **If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically**

➤ **Parking Brake** P. 595



(Amber)

- If the brake system indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  - ▶ Preventing the vehicle from moving, put the transmission into **P**.
- If only the brake system indicator (red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

⚠ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

## If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On

---



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn on the power system again. If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been initialised. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- ▶ Initialise the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

🔧 **Deflation Warning System Initialisation** P. 531

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

🔧 If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

## If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears



### ■ Reasons for the symbol to appear

Appears when the engine oil level is low.

### ■ What to do as soon as the symbol appears

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

### ■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

🔧 **Oil Check** P. 644

## If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to blink

The transmission is malfunctioning.

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks

- Immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

### 🔧 If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears

#### NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil level can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

This system activates after the engine warms up. If the outside temperature is extremely low, you may have to drive for a long time until the system senses the engine oil level.

If the symbol appears again, stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

### 🔧 If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message

You may not be able to turn on the power system.

Make sure to set the parking brake when parking your vehicle.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

🔧 **Emergency Towing** P. 726

## Fuse Locations

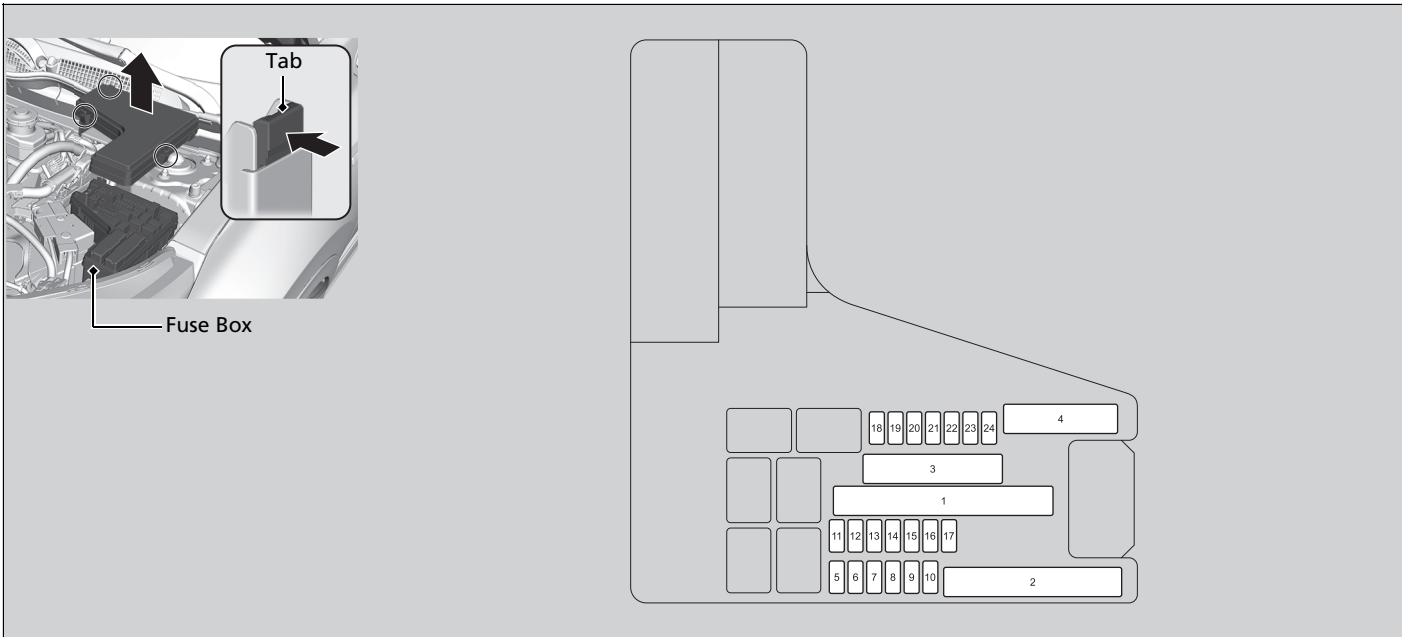
If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

### ■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box Type A

Located near the 12-volt battery. Push the tabs to open the box.

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

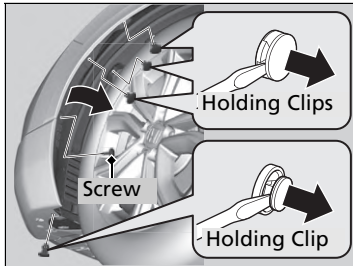
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	OP BLOCK 2	40 A
	ESB	40 A
	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	R/MOD1	30 A
	IG MAIN 2	30 A
	R/MOD2	30 A
	MAIN FUSE	150 A
2	EPS	70 A
	IG MAIN	30 A
	FUSE BOX OPTION	40 A
	FUSE BOX MAIN	60 A
	WIPER	30 A
3	P-ACT	30 A
	REAR DEMISTER	40 A
	HEADLIGHT WASHER*	30 A
	FUSE BOX MAIN2	40 A
	ABS/VSA MOTOR	40 A
	–	–
	BLOWER MOTOR	40 A
4	POWER TAILGATE*	40 A
	OP BLOCK 1*	40 A
	AWD*	20 A
	REAR SEAT HEATER*	20 A
5	–	–
6	WASHER	15 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
7	IGP	15 A
8	FI SUB	15 A
9	STOP LIGHTS	10 A
10	IG HOLD 1	10 A
11	IGPS (LAF)	7.5 A
12	BACKUP FI ECU	10 A
13	PCU EWP	10 A
14	HAZARD	10 A
15	IG COIL	15 A
16	RFC RELAY COIL	5 A
17	HEATED WINDSCREEN*	15 A
18	BACK UP	10 A
19	AUDIO	15 A
20	EPT L	20 A
21	EPT R	20 A
22	FR FOG	10 A
23	A/C WATER PUMP	10 A
24	HORN	10 A
25	–	–
26	–	–
27	–	–

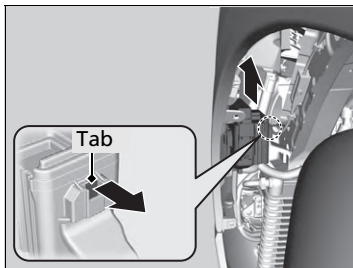
Handling the Unexpected

## ■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box Type B

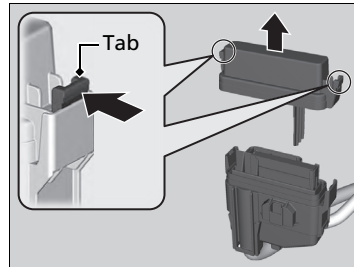
Located inside the left side of the front bumper.



1. Turn the steering wheel to the right.
2. Remove the holding clips and screw, and pull the inner fender back.



3. Pull the tab to remove the fuse box.



4. Pull out the fuse box inside the inner fender, then push the tabs to open the box.

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover mark.

## ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

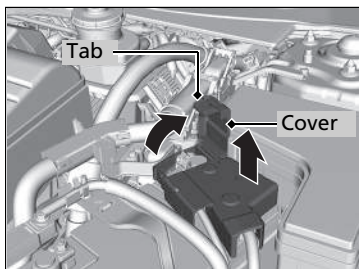
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	A/C PTC1/2	(40 A)
	-	(20 A)
	A/C PTC3/4	(40 A)
	EVTC	(20 A)
	Main Fan	(40 A)
	Engine Water Pump	(30 A)



Models with Fuse Box Type C

**Engine Compartment Fuse Box Type C**

Located near the ⊕ terminal on the battery.




1. Open the ⊕ terminal cover by pulling the tab.
2. Remove the cover as shown.

Fuse location is shown on the fuse box cover.

Replacement of the fuse should be done by a dealer.

**■ Circuit protected and fuse rating**

	Circuit Protected	Amps
	Sub Fuse	100 A

## Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.

The image shows the interior fuse box location under the dashboard and two diagrams for different drive types. The left-hand drive diagram shows a fuse panel with a 4x4 grid of fuses (1-13) and a 3x4 grid of fuses (14-26). The right-hand drive diagram shows a fuse panel with a 3x4 grid of fuses (1-13) and a 3x4 grid of fuses (14-26). Both diagrams include a fuse puller and a fuse chart.

**Left-hand drive type**

27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39
14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13

**Right-hand drive type**

27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39
14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13

Handling the Unexpected

**■ Circuit protected and fuse rating**

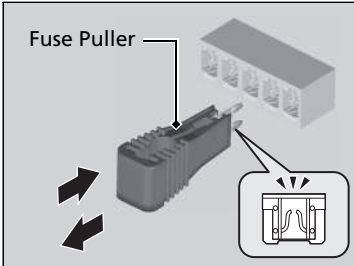
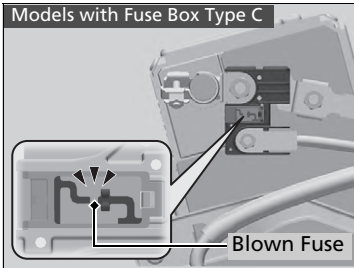
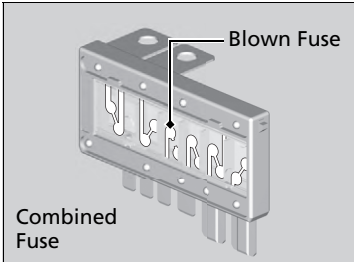
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	ACCESSORY	10 A
2	ACC KEY LOCK	5 A
3	IG1 P-DRV	5 A
4	IG1 OPTION 2	5 A
5	IG1 OPTION	10 A
6	IG1 SRS 2	10 A
7	IG1 METER	10 A
8	IG1 FUEL PUMP	15 A
9	IG2 A/C	10 A
10	CTR ACCESSORY SOCKET	20 A
11	IG1 MONITOR	5 A
12	R SIDE DOOR LOCK	10 A
13	L SIDE DOOR UNLOCK	10 A
14	P/W RR L	20 A
15	P/W AS	20 A
16	DOOR LOCK	20 A
17	IG1 TCU	10 A
18	DR POWER LUMBAR	10 A
19	PANORAMIC ROOF*	20 A
20	IG1 STARTER	10 A
21	IG1 ACG	10 A
22	IG2 DAYTIME LIGHT	10 A
23	USB CHARGER*	7.5 A
24	+B OPTION	5 A
25	DR DOOR LOCK	10 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
26	R SIDE DOOR UNLOCK	10 A
27	P/W RR R	20 A
28	P/W DR	20 A
29	ACCESSORY SOCKET (CARGO)	20 A
30	SMART	10 A
31	DR P/SEAT RECLINE*	20 A
32	FR HEATED SEAT*	20 A
33	DR P/SEAT SLIDE*	20 A
34	IG1 ABS/VSA	10 A
35	IG1 SRS	10 A
36	HAC OPTION	20 A
37	+B TRAILER	15 A
38	L SIDE DOOR LOCK	10 A
39	DR DOOR UNLOCK	10 A
a	PTG*	20 A
b	AUDIO AMP*	20 A
c	SUPER LOCKING*	15 A
d	SUNSHADE*	20 A
e	IMA 1	10 A
f	IGA 2	20 A
g	SBW* <sup>1</sup>	15 A
	REAR FOG LIGHT* <sup>2</sup>	10 A
h	REAR FOG LIGHT* <sup>1</sup>	10 A
	SBW* <sup>2</sup>	15 A

\*1:Right-hand drive type

\*2:Left-hand drive type

## Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
  - If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.

### Models with Fuse Box Type C

4. Check the fuse in the engine compartment fuse box type C.
  - If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.

### All models

5. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
  - If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller, and replace it with a new one.

### Inspecting and Changing Fuses

#### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.

► **Fuse Locations** P. 719, 723

There is a fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse box type A.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

## All models

### ■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

**This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

## 2WD models

### ■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

## » Emergency Towing

### NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

### NOTICE

Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

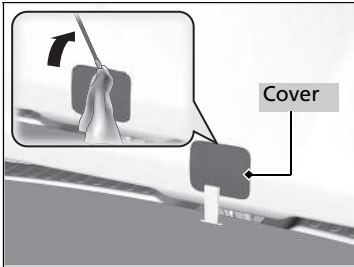
Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

### Right-hand drive type

Before towing your vehicle, deactivate the security system's tilt sensor if you have to set the system.

➤ **Security System Alarm** P. 207

## What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate



If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.

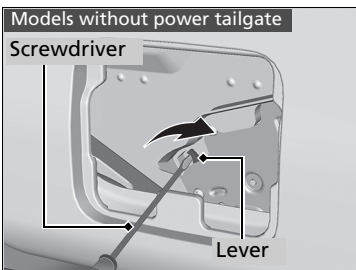
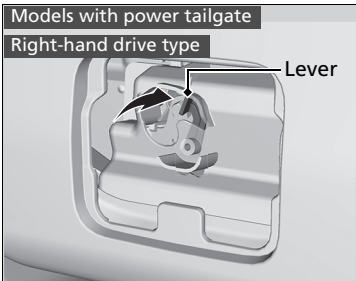
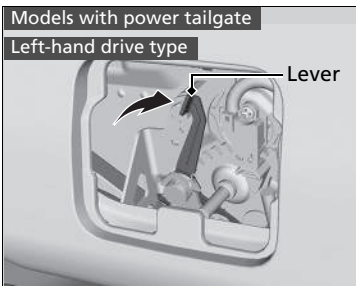
1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the inside of the tailgate.
  - ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

## What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.



2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while pushing the lever to the right.

# Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

<b>Specifications</b> .....	730
<b>Identification Numbers</b>	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number.....	733
<b>Devices that Emit Radio Waves</b> .....	734
<b>Declaration of Conformity Content Outline*</b> .....	766



## ■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	CR-V
Curb Weight	1,614-1,669 kg (3,558-3,679 lbs) <sup>*1</sup> 1,672-1,726 kg (3,686-3,805 lbs) <sup>*2</sup>
Maximum Permissible Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb <sup>*3</sup> See the certification label on the front passenger's doorjamb <sup>*4</sup>
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb <sup>*3</sup> See the certification label on the front passenger's doorjamb <sup>*4</sup>

\*1: 2WD models

\*2: AWD models

\*3: Left-hand drive type

\*4: Right-hand drive type

## ■ Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC
Bore x Stroke	81.0 x 96.7 mm (3.19 x 3.81 in)
Displacement	1,993 cm <sup>3</sup> (121.6 cu-in)
Compression Ratio	13.0 : 1
Spark Plugs	NGK ILZKAR7E11S

## ■ Fuel

Type	EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	57 L (12.5 Imp gal)

## ■ 12-V Battery

Capacity	36AH(5)/45AH(20)
----------	------------------

## ■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.5 L (2.2 Imp qt) <sup>*1</sup> 4.4 L (3.9 Imp qt) <sup>*2</sup>
---------------	--

\*1: Right-hand drive type

\*2: Left-hand drive type

## ■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	LED
Headlights (High Beam)	LED
Front Fog Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED
Daytime Running Lights/Position Lights	LED
Active Cornering Lights*	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Taillights	LED
Brake/Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	LED
Back-Up Lights	16 W
Rear Fog Light	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Front Map Light	LED
Rear Map Light	LED
Luggage Area Lights	5 W
Vanity Mirror Lights*	1.4 W
Glove Box Light*	3.4 W
Foot Lights*	LED
Door Inner Handle Lights*	LED

### ■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT3 or DOT4
-----------	-------------------------------

### ■ Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda ATF DW-1	
Capacity	Change	2.2 L (1.9 Imp qt) <sup>*1</sup>
		2.4 L (2.1 Imp qt) <sup>*2</sup>

\*1: 2WD models

\*2: AWD models

### ■ Engine Oil

Recommended	<b>European and Ukrainian models</b>		
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Honda Genuine Engine Oil Type 2.0</li> <li>•ACEA C2/C3 0W-30, 5W-30</li> </ul>		
	<b>Jordanian, Lebanese, Moroccan and Tunisian models</b>		
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Honda Genuine Engine Oil #1.0</li> <li>•Honda Genuine Green Oil</li> </ul>		
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-16, 0W-20</li> <li>•API service SM or higher grade or ACEA A5/B5 0W-16, 0W-20</li> </ul>		
	<b>Except European, Ukrainian, Jordanian, Lebanese, Moroccan and Tunisian models</b>		
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20</li> <li>•ACEA C2/C3 0W-30, 5W-30</li> </ul>		
	Capacity	Change	3.8 L (3.3 Imp qt)
		Change including filter	4.1 L (3.6 Imp qt)

### ■ Rear Differential Fluid\*

Specified	Honda DPSF-II	
Capacity	Change	1.2 L (1.1 Imp qt)

### ■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2	
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water	
Capacity		5.53 L (1.22 Imp gal)
		(change including the remaining 0.55 L (0.12 Imp gal) in the reserve tank)

### ■ Tyre

Regular	Size	235/60R18 103H
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	18 x 7 1/2J

### ■ Honda TRK Air Compressor

A weighted emission sound pressure level	81 dB (A)
A weighted sound power level	89 dB (A)

### ■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric Parking Brake

### ■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	415 - 465 g

### ■ Vehicle Dimensions

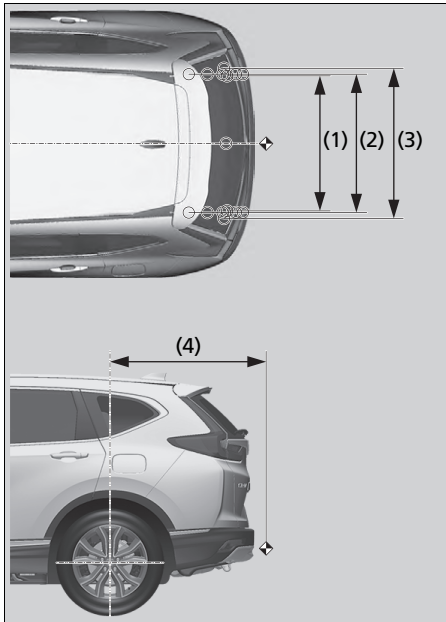
Length	4,600 mm (181.1 in)	
Width	1,855 mm (73.0 in)	
Height		1,657 mm (65.2 in) <sup>*1</sup>
		1,667 mm (65.6 in) <sup>*2</sup>
Wheelbase		2,663 mm (104.8 in) <sup>*1</sup>
		2,662 mm (104.8 in) <sup>*2</sup>
Track	Front	1,602 mm (63.1 in) <sup>*1</sup>
		1,601 mm (63.0 in) <sup>*2</sup>
	Rear	1,630 mm (64.2 in) <sup>*1</sup>
		1,629 mm (64.1 in) <sup>*2</sup>

\*1: 2WD models

\*2: AWD models

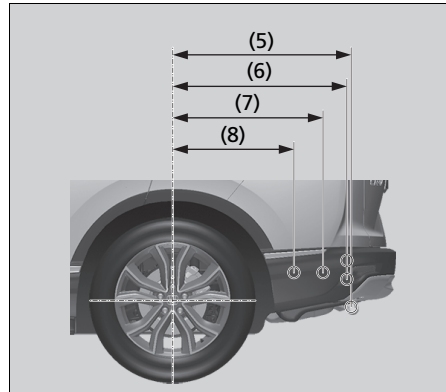
\* Not available on all models

■ The mounting point/rear over hang of coupling device



NOTE:

1. ○ marks show towbar fixing points.
2. ◈ mark shows towbar coupling point.



No.	Dimensions
(1)	958 mm (37.7 in)
(2)	963 mm (37.9 in)
(3)	1,042 mm (41.0 in)
(4)	1,091 mm (43.0 in)
(5)	807 mm (31.8 in) <sup>*1</sup> 808 mm (31.8 in) <sup>*2</sup>
(6)	784 mm (30.9 in) <sup>*1</sup> 785 mm (30.9 in) <sup>*1</sup> 785 mm (30.9 in) <sup>*2</sup> 786 mm (30.9 in) <sup>*2</sup>
(7)	677 mm (26.7 in) <sup>*1</sup> 678 mm (26.7 in) <sup>*2</sup>
(8)	547 mm (21.5 in) <sup>*1</sup> 548 mm (21.6 in) <sup>*2</sup>

\*1: 2WD models

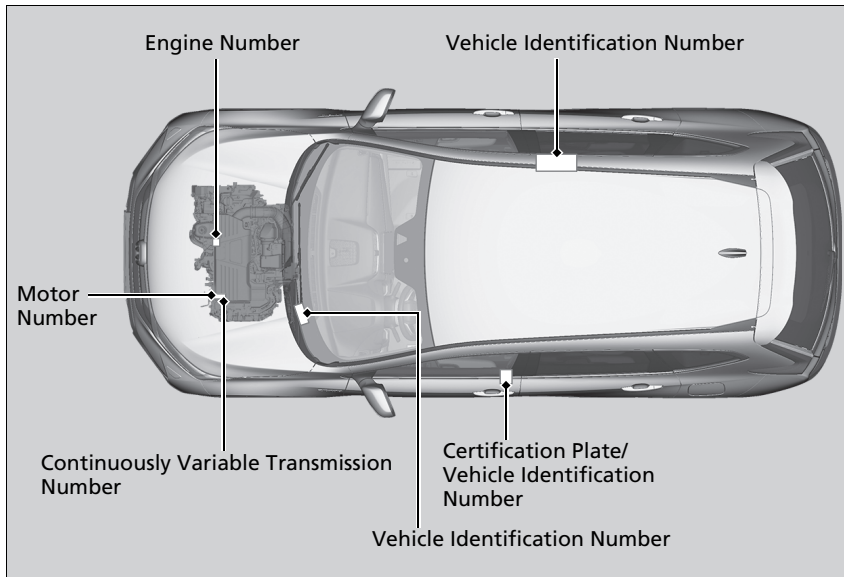
\*2: AWD models

■ Max. Towing Weight

Trailer with brakes	750 kg (1,653 lbs)
Trailer without brakes	600 kg (1,323 lbs)
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	100 kg (220 lbs)

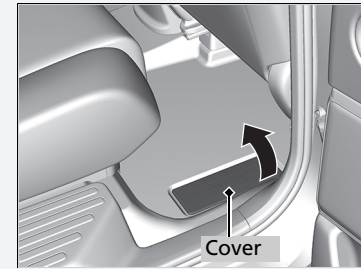
## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, motor number and transmission number are shown as follows.





### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number



The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.





# Devices that Emit Radio Waves

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.



	SMART PCU Keyless Access System*	FOB Keyless Remote*
	<a href="https://continental-homologation.com/honda">https://continental-homologation.com/honda</a>	<a href="https://continental-homologation.com/honda">https://continental-homologation.com/honda</a>
		
	<p>Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [40737300] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU.</p> <p>The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="https://continental-homologation.com/honda">https://continental-homologation.com/honda</a></p>	<p>Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [V2x/V4x] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU.</p> <p>The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="https://continental-homologation.com/honda">https://continental-homologation.com/honda</a></p>
Except British models	<p>Intended use: Body Control Module (BCM)</p> <p>Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH Operational frequency band: 125kHz +/- 3kHz Maximum Output Power: 66dBuA/m at 10m Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium</p>	<p>Intended use: Radio frequency transmitter used in vehicle locking/unlocking systems</p> <p>Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH Operational frequency band: 433.66MHz+/-16kHz 434.18MHz+/-16kHz Maximum Output Power: 0dBm Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium</p>

	Remote Transmitter*	Immobilizer System*
	<a href="http://www.hondalock.co.jp/eu_doc/hlik6-3t.pdf">http://www.hondalock.co.jp/eu_doc/hlik6-3t.pdf</a>	<a href="http://www.hondalock.co.jp/eu_doc/hlik6-1r.pdf">http://www.hondalock.co.jp/eu_doc/hlik6-1r.pdf</a>
		
	Hereby, Honda Lock Mfg. Co., Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type HLIK6-3T is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU.	Hereby, Honda Lock Mfg. Co., Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type HLIK6-1R is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU.
	The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:	The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:
	<a href="http://www.hondalock.co.jp/eu_doc/hlik6-3t.pdf">http://www.hondalock.co.jp/eu_doc/hlik6-3t.pdf</a>	<a href="http://www.hondalock.co.jp/eu_doc/hlik6-1r.pdf">http://www.hondalock.co.jp/eu_doc/hlik6-1r.pdf</a>
Except British models	Intended use: Keyless Entry device for vehicle	Intended use: Integrate Immobilizer system with RKE
	Postal address: 535-14 Oaza-Ishizue, Takanezawamachi, Shioya-Gun, Tochigi, Japan	Postal address: 535-14 Oaza-Ishizue, Takanezawamachi, Shioya-Gun, Tochigi, Japan
	Manufacturer name: Honda Lock Mfg. Co., Ltd.	Manufacturer name: Honda Lock Mfg. Co., Ltd.
	Operational frequency band: 433.87 MHz-433.97 MHz	Operational frequency band: 125 kHz
	Maximum Output Power: 10mW (e.r.p.)	Maximum Output Power: 148.8 dBμV/m@3m
	Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office	Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office
	Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium	Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

\* Not available on all models

Hands-Free Telephone System	
Colour Audio System*	Display Audio*
<p><a href="http://www.pioneer-car.eu/compliance">http://www.pioneer-car.eu/compliance</a></p> <p style="text-align: center;"></p> <p>Hereby, Pioneer declares that the radio equipment is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="http://www.pioneer-car.eu/compliance">http://www.pioneer-car.eu/compliance</a></p> <p>Intended use: Car Audio with Bluetooth</p> <p>Postal address: 28-8, Honkomagome 2-Chome, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo 113-0021, Japan</p> <p>Manufacturer name: Pioneer Corporation</p> <p>Authorised Representative: Pioneer Europe NV Haven 1087, Keetberglaan 1, 9120 Melsele, Belgium <a href="http://www.pioneer-car.eu">http://www.pioneer-car.eu</a></p> <p>Operational frequency band: 2400 - 2483.5 MHz</p> <p>Maximum Output Power: +4 dBm Max.</p> <p>Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium</p>	<p><a href="http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/re/nr-000.pdf">http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/re/nr-000.pdf</a></p> <p style="text-align: center;"></p> <p>Hereby, [MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION SANDA WORKS] declares that the radio equipment type [NR-000] is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: [<a href="http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/re/nr-000.pdf">http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/re/nr-000.pdf</a>]</p> <p>Intended use: Hands-Free Telephone System</p> <p>Postal address: 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan</p> <p>Manufacturer name: MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION SANDA WORKS</p> <p>Operational frequency band: 1574.42 MHz~1576.42 MHz 2402 MHz~2480 MHz 5180 MHz~5240 MHz 5260 MHz~5320 MHz 5500 MHz~5700 MHz 5745 MHz~5825 MHz</p> <p>Maximum Output Power: 2.4 GHz(BT): 0.01 dBm EIRP 2.4 GHz(WLAN): 12.15 dBm EIRP 5 GHz(W52, W53): 12.68 dBm EIRP 5 GHz(W56): 10.52 dBm EIRP 5 GHz(W58): 10.40 dBm EIRP</p> <p>Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium</p>

Except British models

	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*/Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*/ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	Blind spot information system*/Cross Traffic Monitor*
Except British models	<p><a href="https://eu-doc.bosch.com/">https://eu-doc.bosch.com/</a></p>  <p>Hereby, Robert Bosch GmbH declares that the radio equipment type MRRevo14F is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="https://eu-doc.bosch.com/">https://eu-doc.bosch.com/</a></p> <p>Intended use: Motion Detector for RTTT application Postal address: Daimlerstr. 6 Gebaude 107/1 71229 Leonberg Germany Manufacturer name: Robert Bosch GmbH Operational frequency band: 76.0 - 77.0 GHz Maximum Output Power: 29.05dBm Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium</p>	<p><a href="https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory">https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory</a></p>  <p>Hereby, Veoneer US, Inc. declares that the radio equipment type 6234734 NB24 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory">https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory</a></p> <p>Intended use: 24 GHz Short Range Radar Sensor Postal address: 26545 American Drive Southfield, Michigan, 48034 United States of America Manufacturer name: Veoneer US, Inc. Operational frequency band: 24.05 – 24.25 GHz Maximum Output Power: 10 dBm peak Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium</p>

\* Not available on all models



Emergency Call (eCall)\*

<https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/>



Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that the radio equipment type is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/>

Intended use: Cell phone Receiver for vehicle

Postal address:

1-1, Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661, Japan

Manufacturer name: DENSO CORPORATION

Operational frequency band:

- 1) GSM900 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz)
- 2) GSM1800 (Tx: 1710-1785 MHz, Rx: 1805-1880 MHz)
- 3) WCDMA Band1 (Tx: 1920-1980 MHz, Rx: 2110-2170 MHz)
- 4) WCDMA Band8 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz)
- 5) GPS (Rx: 1575.42 MHz)
- 6) GALILEO (Rx: 1575.42 MHz)
- 7) EGNOS (Rx: 1575.42 MHz)

Maximum Output Power:

- 1) 2 W
- 2) 1 W
- 3) 0.25 W
- 4) 0.25 W

Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office

Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

Except  
British  
models

## Remote Tuner\*

<https://service.panasonic.ua>



Hereby, Panasonic Corporation declares that the radio equipment type Listed above is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. Access to <http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/>, click "Declaration of Conformity", enter the below Keyword into the keyword search box, you can download the latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC).

Keyword: Model No.

Keyword: [CQ-TH28E0AJ]

You can see "Ref No" in unit label.

Except  
British  
models

Prin prezenta, Panasonic corporație declară că tipul de echipamente radio [CQ-TH28E0AJ] este în conformitate cu Reglementarea tehnică „Punerea la dispoziție pe piață a echipamentelor radio”.

Textul integral al declarației de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă de Internet:

<https://service.panasonic.ua>

Intended use: RADIO UNIT (Car radio tuner)

Postal address:

4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken, 224-8520, Japan

Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office

Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

	SMART PCU Keyless Access System*	FOB Keyless Remote*
	<a href="http://continental-homologation.com/honda">http://continental-homologation.com/honda</a>	<a href="http://continental-homologation.com/honda">http://continental-homologation.com/honda</a>
	<b>UK CA</b>	<b>UK CA</b>
British models	<p>Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [40737300] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Radio Equipment Regulations 2017.</p> <p>The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="http://continental-homologation.com/honda">http://continental-homologation.com/honda</a></p> <p>Intended use: Short range device for remote control</p> <p>Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH Operational frequency band: 125kHz +/- 3kHz Maximum Output Power: 66dBuA/m at 10m Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd. Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom</p>	<p>Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [V2x/V4x] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Radio Equipment Regulations 2017.</p> <p>The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="http://continental-homologation.com/honda">http://continental-homologation.com/honda</a></p> <p>Intended use: Short range device for remote control</p> <p>Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH Operational frequency band: 433.66MHz+/-16kHz 434.18MHz+/-16kHz Maximum Output Power: 0dBm Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd. Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom</p>

	Remote Transmitter*	Immobilizer System*
	<a href="http://www.hondalock.co.jp/uk_doc/hlik6-3t.pdf">www.hondalock.co.jp/uk_doc/hlik6-3t.pdf</a>	<a href="http://www.hondalock.co.jp/uk_doc/hlik6-1r.pdf">www.hondalock.co.jp/uk_doc/hlik6-1r.pdf</a>
	<b>UK CA</b>	<b>UK CA</b>
British models	<p>Hereby, Honda Lock Mfg. Co., Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type HLIK6-3T is in compliance with Radio Equipment Regulations 2017.</p> <p>The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="http://www.hondalock.co.jp/uk_doc/hlik6-3t.pdf">www.hondalock.co.jp/uk_doc/hlik6-3t.pdf</a></p> <p>Intended use: Keyless Entry device for vehicle</p> <p>Postal address: 535-14 Oaza-Ishizue, Takanezawamachi, Shioya-Gun, Tochigi, Japan</p> <p>Manufacturer name: Honda Lock Mfg. Co., Ltd.</p> <p>Operational frequency band: 433.87 MHz-433.97 MHz</p> <p>Maximum Output Power: 10mW (e.r.p.)</p> <p>Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd.</p> <p>Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom</p>	<p>Hereby, Honda Lock Mfg. Co., Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type HLIK6-1R is in compliance with Radio Equipment Regulations 2017.</p> <p>The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="http://www.hondalock.co.jp/uk_doc/hlik6-1r.pdf">www.hondalock.co.jp/uk_doc/hlik6-1r.pdf</a></p> <p>Intended use: Integrate Immobilizer system with RKE</p> <p>Postal address: 535-14 Oaza-Ishizue, Takanezawamachi, Shioya-Gun, Tochigi, Japan</p> <p>Manufacturer name: Honda Lock Mfg. Co., Ltd.</p> <p>Operational frequency band: 125 kHz</p> <p>Maximum Output Power: 148.8 dBµV/m@3m</p> <p>Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd.</p> <p>Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom</p>

\* Not available on all models

		Hands-Free Telephone System	
		Colour Audio System*	Display Audio*
British models		<p><a href="http://www.pioneer-car.eu/compliance">http://www.pioneer-car.eu/compliance</a></p> <p><b>UK CA</b></p> <p>Hereby, Pioneer declares that the radio equipment is in compliance with UK SI 2017 No. 1206. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="http://www.pioneer-car.eu/compliance">http://www.pioneer-car.eu/compliance</a></p> <p>Intended use: Car Audio with Bluetooth</p> <p>Postal address: 28-8, Honkomagome 2-Chome, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo 113-0021, Japan</p> <p>Manufacturer name: Pioneer</p> <p>Operational frequency band: 2400 - 2483.5 MHz</p> <p>Maximum Output Power: +4 dBm Max.</p> <p>Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd.</p> <p>Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom</p>	<p><a href="http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/ukgb/nr-000.pdf">http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/ukgb/nr-000.pdf</a></p> <p><b>UK CA</b></p> <p>Hereby, [MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION SANDA WORKS] declares that the radio equipment type [NR-000] is in compliance with the relevant statutory requirements. The full text of the declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: [<a href="http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/ukgb/nr-000.pdf">http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/ukgb/nr-000.pdf</a>]</p> <p>Intended use: Hands-Free Telephone System</p> <p>Postal address: 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan</p> <p>Manufacturer name: MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION SANDA WORKS</p> <p>Operational frequency band: 1575.42 MHz 2402 MHz-2480 MHz</p> <p>Maximum Output Power: 2.4 GHz(BT): 0.4 dBm EIRP 2.4 GHz(WLAN): 12.15 dBm EIRP</p> <p>Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd.</p> <p>Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom</p>

	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*/Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*/ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	Blind spot information system*/Cross Traffic Monitor*
British models	<p><a href="http://eu-doc.bosch.com">http://eu-doc.bosch.com</a> <a href="http://lita.bosch.com/radar">http://lita.bosch.com/radar</a></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>UK CA</b></p> <p>Hereby, Robert Bosch GmbH declares that the radio equipment type MRRevo14F is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="http://eu-doc.bosch.com">http://eu-doc.bosch.com</a> Intended use: Radar sensor for Automobiles Postal address: Daimlerstr. 6 Gebaude 107/1 71229 Leonberg Germany Manufacturer name: Robert Bosch GmbH Operational frequency band: 76.0 - 77.0 GHz Maximum Output Power: 29.05dBm Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd. Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom</p>	<p><a href="https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory">https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory</a></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>UK CA</b></p> <p>Hereby, Veoneer US, Inc. declares that the object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonisation legislation. <a href="https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory">https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory</a> Intended use: 24 GHz Short Range Radar Sensor Postal address: 26545 American Drive Southfield, Michigan, 48034 United States of America Manufacturer name: Veoneer US, Inc. Operational frequency band: 24.05 – 24.25 GHz Maximum Output Power: 13 dBm peak Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd. Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom</p>

Emergency Call (eCall)\*

<https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/>



Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that the radio equipment type is in compliance with the relevant statutory requirements.

The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/>

Intended use: ECALL device for vehicle

Postal address:

1-1, Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661, Japan

Manufacturer name: DENSO CORPORATION

Model: OGEY02

Operational frequency band:

- 1) GSM900 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz)
- 2) GSM1800 (Tx: 1710-1785 MHz, Rx: 1805-1880 MHz)
- 3) WCDMA Band1 (Tx: 1920-1980 MHz, Rx: 2110-2170 MHz)
- 4) WCDMA Band8 (Tx: 880-915 MHz, Rx: 925-960 MHz)
- 5) GPS (Rx: 1575.42 MHz)
- 6) GALILEO (Rx: 1575.42 MHz)
- 7) EGNOS (Rx: 1575.42 MHz)

Maximum Output Power:

- 1) 2 W
- 2) 1 W
- 3) 0.25 W
- 4) 0.25 W

Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd.

Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

British models

## Remote Tuner\*

<https://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/>

**UK  
CA**

Hereby, Panasonic Corporation declares that the radio equipment type [ \* ] is in compliance with The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017.

The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/>

enter the below Keyword into the keyword search box, you can download the latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC).

\* Keyword: [CQ-TH-----, CQ-TH28E0AJ, CQ-TH28E0BJ, CQ-TH39E1AJ, CQ-TH39E1BJ, CQ-TH39E0AJ, CQ-TH39E0BJ, CQ-TH1BE0AJ, CQ-TH1BE0BJ, CQ-TH1BE1AJ, CQ-TH1BE1BJ, CQ-TH1AE0TT, CQ-TH1AE0TS, CQ-TH2BE0AD, CQ-TH2BE0BD, CQ-THVCE0AD, CQ-THVCE0BD, CQ-TH4BE0AJ, CQ-TH4BE0BJ, CQ-THVCE1AD, CQ-THVCE1BD] You can see "Ref No" in unit label.

Intended use:

Radio unit (Car radio tuner)

Postal address:

4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken, 224-8520, Japan

Manufacturer name:

Panasonic Corporation

Importer Name:

Honda Motor Europe Ltd.

Postal address:

Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

British  
models



Serbian models

Keyless Access System



Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta "KVALITET" Niš  
Акционарско друштво за испитивање квалитета "КВАЛИТЕТ" Ниш  
Joint-stock company for quality testing "KVALITET" Niš



**POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RITTO** Broj: **P1617072200**  
*CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE* No.

**Podnositelj zahteva:** K11 te CONSULTING DOO  
*Applicant:* 11000 BEOGRAD  
MARIČKA 28/29

**Vrsta opreme:** KLJUČ ZA DALJINSKI PRISTUP VOZILU  
*Equipment category:*

**Oznaka tipa/modela:** V2x/V4  
*Equipment type/model:*

**Robna marka:** Continental  
*Equipment trademark:*

**Proizvođač:** Continental Automotive GmbH  
*Manufacturer:* Germany

**Vrednovana dokumentacija** *Evaluated documentation:*  
**Laboratorija/** Bezbednost/Safety: M.Dudde Hochfrequenz-Technik:  
**ispitni izveštaj:** 12008043, 02.11.2012./  
**Laboratory/** 12008043, 02.11.2012./  
**Test report:** EMV/EMC: M.Dudde Hochfrequenz-Technik:  
12008044, 02.11.2012./  
RITTO/R&TTE: M.Dudde Hochfrequenz-Technik:  
12008042, 02.11.2012./  
12008043, 02.11.2012./

Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahteve "Pravilnika o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi" (Sl. glasnik RS, 11/2012).

On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is found that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the "Rulebook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 11/2012).

Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim karakteristikama opreme koji utiču na usaglašenost sa navedenim Pravilnikom moraju se prijaviti "Kvalitet" u a.d. Niš.  
Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components of the design, electrical construction which may influence on conformity to the above mention Rulebook, shall be forwarded to "Kvalitet".

Prvo izdavanje Potvrde za navedenu opremu: 16.05.2018. Broj Potvrde: P1614053800

**Mesto i datum izdavanja:** **Važi do:**  
*Place and date:* *Valid until:*  
Niš, 19.05.2018. 14.06.2021.



Generelni direktor

*(Signature)*  
Vladimir Vukosavljević, dip.inž.

Ovaj dokument važi samo za proizvode koji su listovani sa proizvođača koji su bili predmet vrednovanja.  
Bu. Svetog Cara Konstantina 82-86, Niš 18000, Srbija. Tel: (018)550-766, 550-624. Fax: (018)550-636, 550-068  
e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs, http://www.kvalitet.co.rs



Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta "KVALITET" Niš  
Акционарско друштво за испитивање квалитета "КВАЛИТЕТ" Ниш  
Joint-stock company for quality testing "KVALITET" Niš



**POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RITTO** Broj: **P1618079800**  
*CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE* No.

**Podnositelj zahteva:** RTTE CONSULTING DOO  
*Applicant:* 11090 BEOGRAD-RAKOVIČA  
KNEZA VIŠESLAVA 63/2.7

**Vrsta opreme:** KONTROLNI MODUL  
*Equipment category:*

**Oznaka tipa/modela:** 4073700  
*Equipment type/model:*

**Robna marka:** Continental  
*Equipment trademark:*

**Proizvođač:** Continental Automotive GmbH  
*Manufacturer:* NEMAČKA

**Vrednovana dokumentacija** *Evaluated documentation:*  
**Laboratorija/** Bezbednost/Safety: CSA Group Bayern GmbH:  
**ispitni izveštaj:** 739321-00-00/RT, 09.03.2015. /  
**Laboratory/** EMV/EMC: CSA Group Bayern GmbH:  
**Test report:** 739321-00-01/RT, 09.03.2015. /  
RITTO/R&TTE: CSA Group Bayern GmbH:  
739321-00-00/RT, 09.03.2015. /

Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahteve "Pravilnika o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi" (Sl. glasnik RS, 11/2012).

On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is determined that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the "Rulebook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 11/2012).

Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim karakteristikama opreme koji utiču na usaglašenost sa navedenim Pravilnikom moraju se prijaviti "Kvalitet" u a.d. Niš.  
Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components of the design, electrical construction which may influence on conformity to the above mention Rulebook, shall be forwarded to "Kvalitet".

Prvo izdavanje Potvrde za navedenu opremu: 15.05.2015. Broj Potvrde: P1615061800

**Mesto i datum izdavanja:** **Važi do:**  
*Place and date:* *Valid until:*  
Niš, 11.05.2018. 10.05.2021.



Generalni direktor


*(Signature)*  
Vladimir Vukosavljević, dip.inž.

Ovaj dokument važi samo za proizvode koji su listovani sa proizvođača koji su bili predmet vrednovanja.  
Bu. Svetog Cara Konstantina 82-86, Niš 18000, Srbija. Tel: (018)550-766, 550-624. Fax: (018)550-636, 550-068  
e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs, http://www.kvalitet.co.rs

## Serbian models

## Hands-Free Telephone

**KVALITET** Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta "KVALITET" Niš  
Акционарско друштво за испитивање квалитета "КВАЛИТЕТ" Ниш  
Joint-stock company for quality testing "KVALITET" Niš

**POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RITTO** Broj: **P1618123900**  
**CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE** No. **P1618123900**

Podnositelj zahteva: RTTE CONSULTING DOO  
Applicant: RTTE CONSULTING DOO  
11090 BEOGRAD-RAKOVIČA  
KNEŽA VIŠEBSLAVA 63/2.7

Vrsta opreme: AUDIO UREĐAJ ZA AUTOMOBIL  
Equipment category: AUDIO UREĐAJ ZA AUTOMOBIL

Oznaka tipa/modela: NR-000  
Equipment type/model: NR-000

Robna marka: MITSUBISHI  
Equipment trademark: MITSUBISHI  
Proizvođač: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works  
Manufacturer: JAPAN


**Vrednovana dokumentacija Evaluated documentation:**  
Bezbednost/Safety: UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.:  
Ispitni izveštaji: 10706964H-16.06.2015. /  
Laboratory: EMK/EMC: UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.:  
Test report: 10706964H-C, 24.06.2015. /  
RITToR&TTE: UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.:  
10706964H-C, 24.06.2015. /  
10706964H-E, 24.06.2015. /  
10706964H-A, 24.06.2015. /  
10706964H-B, 24.06.2015. /  
10706964H-D, 24.06.2015. /  
10706964H-F, 24.06.2015. /

Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahtevе "Pravilnika o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi" (Sl. glasnik RS, 11/2012).  
On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is found that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the Rulebook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 11/2012).

Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim karakteristikama opreme koji utiču na usaglašenost sa navedenim Pravilnikom moraju se prijaviti "Kvalitet"-u s.d. Niš.  
Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components of the design, electrical construction which may influence on conformity to the above mention Rulebook, shall be forwarded to "Kvalitet".




Prvo izdavanje Potvrde za navedenu opremu: 11.08.2016. Broj Potvrde: P1615096100

Mesto i datum izdavanja: Niš, 08.08.2018. **Važi do:** 07.08.2021.  
Place and date: Niš, 08.08.2018. Valid until: 07.08.2021.

   
M.P. / Štamp /  
Vukobratović, dipl.inž.

Ovaj dokument važi samo za proizvode koji su izdati sa proizvođača koji su bili predmet vrednovanja.  
Bul. Svetog Cara Konstantina 82-86, Niš 18000, Srbija. Tel: (018)550-766, 550-624, Fax: (018)550-636, 550-068  
e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs, http://www.kvalitet.co.rs

**KVALITET** Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta "KVALITET" Niš  
Акционарско друштво за испитивање квалитета "КВАЛИТЕТ" Ниш  
Joint-stock company for quality testing "KVALITET" Niš

**POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RITTO** Broj: **P1617192700**  
**CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE** No. **P1617192700**

Podnositelj zahteva: RTTE CONSULTING DOO  
Applicant: RTTE CONSULTING DOO  
11090 BEOGRAD-RAKOVIČA  
KNEŽA VIŠEBSLAVA 63/2.7

Vrsta opreme: AUDIO UREĐAJ ZA AUTOMOBIL  
Equipment category: AUDIO UREĐAJ ZA AUTOMOBIL

Oznaka tipa/modela: AW1-6968ZH  
Equipment type/model: AW1-6968ZH



Robna marka: HONDA  
Equipment trademark: HONDA  
Proizvođač: PIONEER CORPORATION  
Manufacturer: JAPAN

**Vrednovana dokumentacija Evaluated documentation:**  
Bezbednost/Safety: UL Japan, Inc.:  
Ispitni izveštaji: 11933187S, 05.12.2017. /  
Laboratory: EMK/EMC: UL Japan, Inc. SHONAN EMC Lab.:  
Test report: 11933183S-B, 05.12.2017. /  
RITToR&TTE: UL Japan, Inc. SHONAN EMC Lab.:  
11933183S-A, 05.12.2017. /

Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahtevе "Pravilnika o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi" (Sl. glasnik RS, 11/2012).  
On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is found that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the Rulebook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 11/2012).

Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim karakteristikama opreme koji utiču na usaglašenost sa navedenim Pravilnikom moraju se prijaviti "Kvalitet"-u s.d. Niš.  
Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components of the design, electrical construction which may influence on conformity to the above mention Rulebook, shall be forwarded to "Kvalitet".

Mesto i datum izdavanja: Niš, 19.12.2017. **Važi do:** 18.12.2020.  
Place and date: Niš, 19.12.2017. Valid until: 18.12.2020.

   
M.P. / Štamp /  
Vukobratović, dipl.inž.

Ovaj dokument važi samo za proizvode koji su izdati sa proizvođača koji su bili predmet vrednovanja.  
Bul. Svetog Cara Konstantina 82-86, Niš 18000, Srbija. Tel: (018)550-766, 550-624, Fax: (018)550-636, 550-068  
e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs, http://www.kvalitet.co.rs

Serbian models

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)/Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)



Републички центар  
**PATEA**  
за  
proverbu, primenu i  
oblastovanje



1 01 34540 31717 3  
00029 10011 0

Број: 1-01-34540-31717-3  
Датум: 27.04.2017.  
Београд

**ПОТВРДА О УСАГЛАШЕНОСТИ**  
*Certificate of conformity*

**Број: 34540-31717-3**  
No:

**Подносилац захтева:** **FIN-LEKS d.o.o. Beograd**  
*Applicant:* 11000 Београд, Маленичка 51/29

**Врста опреме:** **Детектор кретања за примену у дружном транспорту**  
*Equipment category:* **и телематичној саобраћају**  
*Motion Detector for RTT application*

**Ознака марке/типа/модела:** **BOSCH / MRRevo14F**  
*Equipment brand/type/model designation:*

**Произвођач опреме:** **ROBERT BOSCH GmbH**  
*Equipment manufacturer:* Daimlerstrasse 6, 71229 Leinf. Germany

Достављена документација: <i>Submitted documentation:</i>	Стандарди: <i>Standards:</i>	Тести извештај, број и датум: <i>Test Report no. and date:</i>	Назив лабораторије: <i>Test laboratory:</i>
	SRPS EN 62479-2011 SRPS EN 60950-1:2010 + A11:2010 + A12:2011	1-6938/13-01-02, 09.12.2013, 21208925 001 (1-6938/13-01-05), 22.01.2014.	CETECOM ICT Services GmbH TUV Rheinland T.O.A. Product GmbH (CETECOM ICT Services GmbH)
	SRPS EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2:2012 SRPS EN 301 489-3 V1.6.1:2013	1-6938/13-01-06, 09.12.2013.	CETECOM ICT Services GmbH
	SRPS EN 301 091-2 V1.3.2:2012	1-6938/13-01-02, 09.12.2013.	CETECOM ICT Services GmbH

Прегледају достављене, горе наведене документације, утврђено је да је усаглашеност горе наведене опреме са битним захтевима из члана 4. Правилника о радио опреми и телекомуникационој терминалној опреми („Службени гласник РС“, број 11/12) правилно доказана. Пуну одговорност за горе наведену достављену документацију пружила је подносилац захтева. Ова потврда важи три године од дана издавања.

*Having considered the above mentioned submitted documentation, it has been determined that the conformity of the above mentioned equipment with the essential requirements referred to in Art. 4 of Rules on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette of RS, no. 11/12) had been duly proved. The full responsibility for the above mentioned submitted documentation shall be assumed by the applicant. The certificate shall be valid three years from the date of issuance.*

Број прилога: -  
*Appendix number:*

Важи од: 30.04.2017.  
*Valid from:*

Важи до: 30.04.2020.  
*Valid until:*



**ДИРЕКТОР СЕКТОРА  
ЕЛЕКТРОНСКЕ КОМУНИКАЦИЈЕ**  
Београд, Београдски булевар,  
Печат и потпис  
*Seal and signature*



Information

Serbian models

Blind spot information System\*/Cross Traffic Monitor\*



This product in accordance with Serbia technical regulation

Број: 1-61-34540-1705/13-3  
Датум: 18.10.2016.  
Београд

**ПОТВРДА О УСАГЛАШАВАНОСТИ**  
*Certificate of conformity*

**Број: 34540-1705/13-3**  
*No:*


<p><b>Постављач извоза:</b> <i>Exporting company:</i></p> <p><b>Бројка поручења:</b> <i>Order number:</i></p> <p><b>Службена адреса/адресе извоза:</b> <i>Official address/addresses of export:</i></p> <p><b>Промислен адрес:</b> <i>Industrial address:</i></p>	<p><b>RTT Consulting d.o.o Beograd</b> 11000 Београд, Милошeva 28/29</p> <p><b>Промислен адрес:</b> 21 GEE, Kelenyevska Street, 24000</p> <p><b>Адреса/адресе:</b> Autally 76234734</p> <p><b>Адреса RTT Inc.:</b> 36515 American Drive, Southfield, MI 48034, USA</p>
---	--

*Датум издања докaza о усаглашавању*  
*Issuance date of certificate*

Стандарти <i>Standards</i>	Технички стандарти, број и датум <i>Technical standards, number and date</i>	Имени обавештавајућег Тел. обавештавајућег <i>Company name of notifying Tel. of notifying</i>
SRPS EN 62179-20:00	463-1386/13 (13.03.2013)	Compliance Worldwize Inc.
SRPS EN 60950-1:2010 + A1:2008+A1:2010+A1:2011	14818/1701-03-B (13.09.2012)	CEC LACOM PCI Services GmbH
SRPS EN 60330-1:19:2013	14818/12-01-02 (18.07.2012)	CEC LACOM PCI Services GmbH
SRPS EN 60330-2:12:1:2012	462-1386/13 (13.03.2013)	Compliance Worldwize Inc.

Прегледавши документацију, горе наведене документације, утврђено је да је усаглашеност горе наведене опреме са техничким стандардима из члана 4. Правилника о радио опреми и телекомуникацијској опреми („Службени гласник РС”, број 11/12) извршена докazaма. Поруку о извршеној провери наведене документације достављају документацију извршену провером: *After checking the above mentioned technical documentation, it has been established that the conformity of the above mentioned equipment with the technical regulations specified in Art. 4 of Rules on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Equipment Equipment (Official Gazette of SR, no. 11/12) has been fulfilled. The following information for the above mentioned technical documentation shall be attached by the applicant: the certificate shall be issued only after the above-mentioned information.*

Број потврде: -  
Датум издања: 18.10.2016.  
Место издања: -



**Министар**  
Место и потпис  
Министар Јанковић  
Место и потпис

\*Модели који се налазе на овом листу су само за информационе сврхе и не представљају гаранцију да ће сваки од ових радио уређаја и уређаја за телекомуникације издати од стране Министарства унутрашњих послова Републике Србије. Сваки од ових радио уређаја и уређаја за телекомуникације мора бити усаглашен са техничким стандардима из члана 4. Правилника о радио опреми и телекомуникацијској опреми („Службени гласник РС”, број 11/12) извршеном провером.


Information


\* Not available on all models

Serbian models

Emergency Call (eCall)

Овиме, DENSO CORPORATION изјављује да је радио опрема тип усаглашена са Директивом 2014/53/EU. Цео текст ЕУ декларације о усаглашености доступам је на следећој интернет адреси:  
<https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/>





141 3000 120113  
000420210

Број: 1-01-34540-1292/17-3  
 Датум: 17.01.2018.  
 Београд

**ПОТВРДА О УСАГЛАШЕНОСТИ**  
*Certificate of conformity*

Број: 34540-1292/17-3  
 No:

**Подносилац захтева:**  
*Applicant:* SINIŠA ŠKRIBIĆ PR, INŽENJERSKE DELATNOSTI I TEHNIČKO SAVETOVANJE IN TECH, BORČA  
 11211 Borča, Београд, Пут за Чаву 44

**Врста опреме:**  
*Equipment category:* GSM 900/DCS1800/ UMTS 900/2100/GPS уређај за упућивање хитних позива у возилу  
 GSM 900/DCS1800/ UMTS 900/2100/GPS Unit Assy Ecall

**Ознака марке/типа/модела:**  
*Equipment brand/type/model designation:* DENSO / OGEV02

**Произвођач опреме:**  
*Equipment manufacturer:* Denso Corporation  
 1-1 Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661 Japan

**Достављена документација:**  
*Submitted documentation:*

Стандард: <i>Standard:</i>	Тестирање извештај, број и датум: <i>Test Report no. and date:</i>	Назив лабораторије: <i>Test laboratory:</i>
SRPS EN 62311:2009	RF exposure calculation of OGEV02, 13.12.2017, 11926140H-A, 07.11.2017.	Denso Corporation
SRPS EN 60950-1:2010 + A11:2010 + A1:2010 + A12:2011 + A2:2014	11926139H-C, 29.11.2017.	UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.
SRPS EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1:2017 Draft EN 301 489-19 V2.1.0 (2017-03) Draft EN 301 489-32 V1.1.0 (2016-11)	11926139H-C, 29.11.2017.	UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.
SRPS EN 301 511 V9.0.2:2012	ODE MJP_KYOCE_1702_02, 13.06.2017.	7 layers GmbH
SRPS EN 301 908-1 V11.1.1:20.7	RE170502C14A, 09.06.2017.	Bureau Veritas Consumer Product Services (H.K.) Ltd., Taoyuan Branch 7 layers GmbH
SRPS EN 301 908-2 V11.1.1:20.7	ODE MJP_KYOCE_1702_03, 16.06.2017.	7 layers GmbH
EN 303 413 V1.1.1 (2017-06)	11926139H-B, 10.11.2017.	UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.

Програмирање уређаја: 11.05.2017. / Програмирање уређаја: 11.05.2017. / Програмирање уређаја: 11.05.2017.  
 Поштомбрана 2, 11105 Београд, 010, 100000, Република Српска.  
 Контакт информације: Број: 011 3244 013  
[www.patea.rs](http://www.patea.rs)

1 / 2

## Serbian models

## Emergency Call (eCall)


Прегледом достављене, горе наведене документације, утврђено је да је усклађеност горе наведене опреме са битним захтевима из члана 4. Правилника о радио опреми и телекомуникационој терминалној опреми („Службени гласник РС“, број 11/12) правилно докљана. Пуну одговорност за горе наведену достављену документацију преузима подносилац захтева. Ова потврда важи три године од дана издавања.


*Having considered the above mentioned submitted documentation, it has been determined that the conformity of the above mentioned equipment with the essential requirements referred to in Art 4 of Rules on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette of RS, no. 11/12) had been duly proved. The full responsibility for the above mentioned submitted documentation shall be assumed by the applicant. The certificate shall be valid three years from the date of issuance.*

Број прилога: -  
Appendix number:

Важи од: 17.01.2018.  
Valid from:

Важи до: 17.01.2021.  
Valid until:

 ДИРЕКТОР СЕКТОРА  
ЕЛЕКТРОНСКЕ КОМУНИКАЦИЈЕ  
Милош Милошевић, дипл. инж.  
Бечат и потпис  
Seal and signature



Република Србија  
Телекомуникације Србије  
Београд, Београдска 11, 11000 Београд, Република Србија  
Контакт центар: +381 11 3341279  
www.rtr.rs

2/2

Serbian models

Wireless Charger\*



## Ukrainian models

Keyless Access System  
BCM

Postal address: Continental Automotive GmbH  
Siemensstrasse 12, D-93055, Regensburg, Germany  
Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH  
Operational frequency band: 125kHz  
Maximum Output Power: 19.77 dBμA/m@10m  
Importer Name: Pride Motor LLC  
Postal address: 12, Sagaydachnogo Str., Kyiv,04070, Ukraine

**ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ**

- Радіоблагодійник: *Радіоблагодійники системи доступу до автомобіля т.н. «Continental» моделі 40737300 (MY16 Body Control Module (BCM)).*
- Найменування та адреса виробника: *«Continental Automotive GmbH» (Siemensstrasse 12, D-93055, Regensburg, Germany) / «Компанія Автомобіля І.М.Б.» (Сієменсштрассе 12, Д-93055, Регенсбург, Німеччина).*
- Ця декларація відповідності видана від особистої відповідальності виробника.
- Об'єкт декларації: *Радіоблагодійники системи доступу до автомобіля т.н. «Continental» моделі 40737300 (MY16 Body Control Module (BCM)).*
- Об'єкт декларації відповідає вимогам таких технічних регламентів:
  - *Технічний регламент радіоблагодійників, затвердженого Національним Кабінетом Міністрів України від 24 травня 2017 р. №355.*
- Посилання на відповідні стандарти з перебігу національних стандартів, що були встановлені, або розроблені на його технічній специфікації, щодо яких декларується відповідність: *ДСТУ EN 60950-1:2015 (EN 60950-1:2006; A1:2009; A12:2011; A2:2011; AC:2011, IDT), ДСТУ EN 50371:2006 (EN 50371:2002, IDT), ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-1:2014 (EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1, IDT), ETSI EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1, ETSI EN 301 489-3 V2.1.1, ETSI EN 300 330 V2.1.1.*
- Призначений орган з оцінки відповідності


**ООВ «ОМЕГА» ТОВ «ВІД» «ОМЕГА» АУ АУА.ТК.109**  
*(виробник/виробничий орган/орган з оцінки відповідності/орган)*

Ця декларація відповідності та проформа повноцінного тексту (модель Р) Технічного регламенту радіоблагодійників та видає сертифікат відповідності типу: *№УА.ТК.109 Р.0602-18 від 14.11.2018 р.*

К. У відповідних випадках лише компоненти та аксесуарія, у тому числі програмного забезпечення, завдяки якому радіоблагодійник функціонує з обмеженнями і на кожне поширюється ця декларація про відповідність.


4. Додаткова інформація: *Радіоблагодійники системи доступу до автомобіля т.н. «Continental» моделі 40737300 (MY16 Body Control Module (BCM)), що виготовляються «Continental Automotive GmbH» (Siemensstrasse 12, D-93055, Regensburg, Germany) / «Компанія Автомобіля І.М.Б.» (Сієменсштрассе 12, Д-93055, Регенсбург, Німеччина) на підприємствах «Continental Automotive Guadalajara Mexico, S.A. de C.V.» (Carretera a la Tierra No. 3, Carretera Guadalajara - Km 3.5, Carretera Guadalajara Mexico Col. La Tierra C.P. 45640, Tlajomulco de Zúñiga, Jalisco, Mexico) / «Компанія Автомобіля Гуадалахара Мексика, С.А. де І.В.» (Контракт на Тієрра № 3, Каррера Гуадалахара - Км 3.5, Каррера Гуадалахара Мексика Кол. Ла Тієрра, ШІІ 45640, Тіахомулко де Зуніга, Дієго-Ігнаціо Мехіко) / «Синьчэн Автомобіля Чанчжэн Ся, І.П.» (Jingjiao Branch № 5890 Shengxin Street, 130600, Shengchen, Jilin, P. R. China) / «Компанія Автомобіля Чанчжэн Кю, Лім» (Шенгін Бранч № 5890 Шенгін Стріт, 130600, Шенчэн, Дієлі, І.Р. Кітай).*

Підписано від імені та з дозволеним виробником: *виробником/виробничим органом ТОВ «Нарконт-Україна» (адрес: 314, вул. Кірової 128, м. Мелітополь, Закарпатська обл., 75318, Україна, код ЄДРПОУ 37468168).*

м. Мелітополь,  2018 р.

Територія

І. С. С. П. Е. Т. І. Я. З. П. Р. В. Е. Д. В. У. Т. О. В. «ОМЕГА» ТОВ «ВІД» «ОМЕГА» АУ АУА.ТК.109  
Знак в розкрив від 19.11.2018  
№ АУА.ТК.109.Р. 0602-18





Ukrainian models

Keyless Access System  
FOB

Postal address: Continental Automotive GmbH  
Siemensstrasse 12, D-93055, Regensburg, Germany  
Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH  
Operational frequency band: 433MHz  
Maximum Output Power: 434.79MHz  
Importer Name: Pride Motor LLC  
Postal address: 12, Sagaydachnogo Str., Kyiv,04070, Ukraine

Information

**ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ**

1. Раціоналізаційний: Transmitter - 433 МГц (взаємостріля та радіочастотні електронні)  
(напр. тип, номер партії та серійний номер)

2. ТОВ «Нормакс-Україна» (офіс 314, вул. Кірова 139, м. Мезітиноль, Закарпатська обл., 72319, Україна, код ЄДРПОУ 27463164).  
(назва виробника або його уповноваженого представника)

3. Ця декларація відповідності видає під особистою відповідальністю виробника.

4. Об'єкт декларції:  
Назва об'єкта: модуль радіопередавача (Keyfob - Honda MV14);  
Модель: V2x, V4x;  
Торговельний марок: «Continental»;  
Адреса: «Continental Automotive Guadalajara Mexico, S.A. de C.V.» (Camino a la Tierra No. 3, Carretera Guadalajara-Morelia Km 3.5, Carretera Guadalajara-Morelia Col. La Tierra, C.P. 45640 Tlalimalco de Zúñiga, Jalisco, Mexico) / «Континентал Автомобіл Гуадалахара Мексико, С.А. де С.В.» (Каміно а ла Тієрра № 3, Каррєтєра Гуадалахара-Морєліа Км 3.5, Каррєтєра Гуадалахара-Морєліа Кол. Ла Тієрра С.п. 45640 Тталімалко де Зунїга, Халіско Мєксїко), «Continental Automotive Shanghai Co., Ltd.» (Jingyun Branch, 5800 Shengnan Street, 130000, Shanghai, Jilin P.R. China) / «Континентал Автомобіл Шангхай Ко., Лтд.» (Дістичєн Брєнч, 5800 Шєннанг Стрєт, 130000, Чанчєн, Дзєнчєн П.Р. Кїтай).  
Номер партії або серійний номер: провадєний виготовлєнням серїєю.  
(ідентифікаційний номер або його уповноваженого представника)

5. Об'єкт декларції відповідає вимогам «Технічного регламенту радіобезпечності», затвердженого постановою Кабінету Міністрів України від 24.05.2017р. № 355.  
(затвердження радиобезпечності, яка має місце здійснення його функціональності, а саме включення електронних членів апаратури у ряд потреби для ідентифікації даних щодо радіобезпечності)

6. Стандарти з переліку національних стандартів, що були затверджені, та інші стандарти і технічні специфікації, щодо яких декларується відповідність:  
1) Безпека (приведен в технічному регламенті):  
ДСТУ EN 62368-1:2015 (EN 62368-1:2014, IDT);  
з електричної сумісності (приведен в технічному регламенті):  
ДСТУ EN 301 489-1:2014 (EN 301 489-1 V19:2, IDT);  
ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-3:2009 (ETSI EN 301 489-3:2002, IDT)  
вдєленнє використаннєм радіочастотного ресурсу (приведен в технічному регламенті):  
ДСТУ ETSI EN 300 220-2:2012 (ETSI EN 300 220-2:2007, IDT);  
ETSI EN 300 220-1 V3.1.0 (2015-05);  
ETSI EN 300 220-2 V3.1.1 (2017-02).  
(із зазначенням ідентифікаційного номеру, версії та дати видання)

7. Присвоєний орган з оцінки відповідності ДОВ «Приват Сертифікаційний Центр сертифікації матеріалів та виробів» (№ UA\_PRL02)  
(назва уповноваженого органу з оцінки відповідності)

Виникає робота з оцінки відповідності за проєктом експертний типу (Модуль B)  
(назва вимоги ппн 33)

та видає сертифікат експертний типу № UA.032.СТ.0223-18 від 20 листопада 2018 р.  
(у разі заурєчєннєм присвоєного органу з оцінки відповідності)

8. Додаткова інформація

Підписано від імені та за дєкларованнєм № 20180503 від 03.05.2018 р. «Continental Automotive GmbH» (Siemensstrasse 12, D-93055 Regensburg, Germany) / «Континентал Автомобіл ГмбХ» (Сїємєнсстрассє 12, Д-93055 Рєгєнсбург, Німєччинє) уповноважєним прєдставлєнням в Українє ТОВ «Нормакс-Україна».

м. Мєзїтїноль, Україна 21 листопада 2018 р.  
(місце та дата видання)



**ТОВ «Нормакс-Україна»**  
(назва уповноваженого органу з оцінки відповідності)



**О. В. Шєлєн**  
(підпис уповноваженого)

Ванта на об'єкт  
у ДОВ ТОВ «DC «ЦСМ»»  
UA.032.D.0223-18  
дата 23.11.2018

## Ukrainian models

Hands-Free Telephone System  
Models with Display Audio

[http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/ukr/nr-000\\_ukr.pdf](http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/ukr/nr-000_ukr.pdf)

справжнім [MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION SANDA WORKS] заявляє, що тип радіобладнання [NR-000] відповідає Технічному регламенту радіобладнання;  
повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою:

[[http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/ukr/nr-000\\_ukr.pdf](http://www.mitsubishielectric.com/bu/automotive/doc/ukr/nr-000_ukr.pdf)]

Postal address: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation

2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan

Manufacturer name: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation

Operational frequency band: 1574.42 MHz - 1576.42 MHz  
2402 MHz - 2480 MHz

Maximum Output Power: 2.4 GHz: 12.15 dBm EIRP

Importer Name: Pride Motor LLC

Postal address: 12, Sagaydachnogo Str., Kyiv, 04070, Ukraine

Ukrainian models

Hands-Free Telephone System  
Models with colour audio system

<http://www.pioneer-car.eu/compliance>

[\*] AVH-5568ZH, AVH-6968ZH

справжнім Pioneer заявляє, що тип радіобладнання [\*] відповідає Технічному регламенту радіобладнання; повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на вебсайті за такою адресою:

<http://www.pioneer-car.eu/compliance>

Postal address: Pioneer Corporation

28-8, Honkomagome 2-chome, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo 113-0021, Japan

Manufacturer name: Pioneer Corporation

Operational frequency band: 2400-2483.5MHz

Maximum Output Power: +4dBm

Importer Name: Pride Motor LLC

Postal address: 12, Sagaydachnogo Str., Kyiv, 04070, Ukraine

ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ № RTS.UKR.355-81/18

1. Радіобладнання (марка, тип, номер партії чи серійний номер):  
Пристрій автомобільний мультимедійний порогової ціни HONDA моделей AVH-5568ZH, AVH-6968ZH з обладнанням радіодоступу (інтерфейс передачі даних Bluetooth) та FM-приймачем.

2. Найменування та адреса виробника або його уповноваженого представника:  
Уповноважений представник - ТОВ "Радио Тест Стандарт", Україна, код ЄДРПОУ 39205151, 03115, м.Київ, вул. Лавинська, 22-а, кв 135 (Доварність "Пайонієр Корпорейшн" ("Pioneer Corporation"), Японія, від 27.09.2018).

3. Ця декларація відповідності видана від особистої відповідальності виробника "Пайонієр Корпорейшн", 28-8, Honkomagome 2-chome, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo 113-0021, Японія ("Pioneer Corporation", Японія (28-8, Honkomagome 2-chome, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo 113-0021, Japan).

4. Об'єкт декларації (ідентифікація радіобладнання, яка дає змогу забезпечити його простоту використання; може включати кольорове чи біле зображення у разі потреби для ідентифікації зазначеного радіобладнання):  
Пристрій автомобільний мультимедійний моделей AVH-5568ZH, AVH-6968ZH з обладнанням радіодоступу (інтерфейс передачі даних Bluetooth) та FM-приймачем.

5. Об'єкт декларації відповідає вимогам таких технічних регламентів:  
Технічного регламенту радіобладнання;

6. Посилання на відповідні стандарти з переліку національних стандартів, що були затверджені, або посилання на ідентифікаційні коди, щодо яких декларується відповідність (зі зазначенням ідентифікаційного номера, версії та дати видання):

Примітка "Технічного регламенту радіобладнання"	Стандарти	Номер протоколу випробувань	Випробувальна лабораторія (назва юридичної особи та контактна інформація)
Застосовані стандарти, що не відносять до "Переліку національних стандартів, відповідність яких надає гарантію відповідності радіобладнанням суттєвих аспектів"			
n.7			
Застосовані стандарти, що не відносять до "Переліку національних стандартів, відповідність яких надає гарантію відповідності радіобладнанням суттєвих аспектів"			
n.8, абзац 1	ДСТУ ЕР 40896-1:2018 (зі змінами до пп. 1.2.3, 1.3.4, 1.7), ДСТУ ЕР 40895-2007	7416 ндп 21.08.2018	ВІС РІТ УНЦІРТ (20227)
n.8, абзац 2	ДСТУ ЕР 40896-1:2018 (зі змінами до пп. 1.2.3, 1.3.4, 1.7) (змінені версії) ДСТУ БТБ1 EN 361 489-2:2008, ДСТУ БТБ1 EN 361 489-1:2008	7416 ндп 21.08.2018	ВІС РІТ УНЦІРТ (20227)
n.7	ДСТУ БТБ1 EN 361 489-2:2008 (н. 4.4), ДСТУ БТБ1 EN 361 489-1:2008	7416 ндп 21.08.2018	ВІС РІТ УНЦІРТ (20227)

7. Призначений орган з оцінки відповідності ДЕРЖАВНОГО ПІДПРИЄМСТВА "УКРАЇНСЬКИЙ НАУКОВО-ДОСЛІДНИЙ ІНСТИТУТ РАДІО І ТЕЛЕБІОТЕХНІКИ"

Регістраційний номер: ЦА.7.07.01

(найменування, ідентифікаційний номер згідно з реєстром призначених органів)

виконавці

Олександр Володимирівич  
(повне повноімені та прізвище)



## Ukrainian models

Hands-Free Telephone System  
Models with colour audio system

то відно сертифікат експертним типу № 2089,4-СЕТ від 15.11.2018.

8. У відносіях вказаних вище компонентів та аксесуарів, у тому числі програмного забезпечення, завдяки якому радіоблагодійники функціонують за призначенням і на яке поширюється дія декларації про відповідність:

Версія ПЗ (SW/FW version), яка відповідає дотримання суттєвих вимог:	7.05;
Версія вносимої впробу (Firmware version), яка відповідає дотримання суттєвих вимог:	Ver 0.80;
Процесор, що виконує функції формування радіочастотних сигналів:	
- Випромінювач	CWX4754-A;
- FM-сприймач	TEF6688JIN;

## 9. Детальніша інформація:

Підприємство-виробник:

"Пайонієр Мануфактурінг (Таїланд) Ко., Лтд.", Роджана Індустріал Парк, 1/51 Му 5, Тамбала Кангам, Амфур У-Тай, Пратанкорнсіратотха 13210, Таїланд ("Pioneer Manufacturing (Thailand) Co., Ltd.", Rojana Industrial Park, 1/51 Moo 5, Tambol Kanham, Amphur U-Thai, Pratsankornsirotthaya 13210, Thailand, Thailand;

## Підписано від імені та за дорученням:

"Пайонієр Корпорейшн" ("Pioneer Corporation"), Японія,  
уповноваженим представником - ТОВ "Радіо Тест Стандарти", Україна.

м. Київ, "15" листопада 2018 р.  
(місце та дата підпису)

Директор  
(підпис)



*(Handwritten signature)*  
(підпис)

Д. В. Шуман  
(підпис та прізвище)

М.П.

**Ukrainian models**

**Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)/Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)**

Postal address: Robert Bosch GmbH  
 Daimlerstr. 6 Gebaude 107/1  
 71229 Leonberg Germany  
 Manufacturer name: Robert Bosch GmbH  
 Operational frequency band: 76-77 GHz  
 Maximum Output Power: 28.7 dBm  
 Importer Name: Pride Motor LLC  
 Postal address: 12, Sagaydachnogo Str., Kyiv,04070, Ukraine

Information

**ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ**

- Радіоприймач: *Пристрій автомобільної радіолокаційної т.ч. «Bosch» моделі MRRevo14F.*
- Найменування та адреса виробника: *«Robert Bosch GmbH» (Daimlerstrasse 6, 71229, Leonberg, Germany)/«Роберт Босх ГмбХ» (Даймлерштрассе 6, 71229, Леонберг, Німеччина).*
- Ця декларація відповідності видає під особисту відповідальність виробника.
- Об'єкт декларації: *Пристрій автомобільної радіолокаційної т.ч. «Bosch» моделі MRRevo14F.*
- Об'єкт декларації відповідає вимогам таких технічних регламентів:  
 - *Технічного регламенту радіовидання, затвердженого Постановою Кабінету Міністрів України від 24 травня 2017 р. №355.*
- Посилання на відповідні стандарти з параметрами національних стандартів, що були затверджені, або послані на інші технічні специфікації, щодо яких декларується відповідність:  
*EN 60950-1:2006; A11:2009; A12:2010; A12:2011;  
 ДСТУ EN 62311-2014 (EN 62311:2008, IDT);  
 ДСТУ EN 301 489-1:2014 (EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2, IDT);  
 ETSI EN 301 489-1 V2.2.0 (2015-03);  
 ETSI EN 301 489-51 V2.1.0 (2015-03);  
 ETSI EN 301 091-1 V2.1.1 (2015-01).*
- Примічений орган з оцінки відповідності:  
**ООВ «ОМЕГА» ТОВ «ВІ «ОМЕГА»» МКА.ТН.109**  
(Діяльність, ліцензійна діяльність інших органів державної служби спеціальних)

Виконав оцінку відповідності на професійну експертну роботу (зауваж В) *Технічного регламенту радіовидання* та видав сертифікат експертної типу: *МКА.ТН.109.R.1019-19 від 04.03.2019 р.*

- У відповідних випадках опис компонентів та аксесорів, у тому числі програмного забезпечення, завдяки якому радіоприймач функціонує за призначенням і на яке поширюється ця декларація про відповідність:  
 - *версія програмного забезпечення V.3.*
- Додаткова інформація: *Пристрій автомобільної радіолокаційної т.ч. «Bosch» моделі MRRevo14F, що виготовляється «Robert Bosch GmbH» (Daimlerstrasse 6, 71229, Leonberg, Germany)/«Роберт Босх ГмбХ» (Даймлерштрассе 6, 71229, Леонберг, Німеччина) на підприємствах:  
 1) «Robert Bosch GmbH» (Daimlerstrasse 6, 71229, Leonberg (Baden-Wuerttemberg), Germany)/«Роберт Босх ГмбХ» (Маркграфштрассе 66, 72770 Reutlingen (Wuerttemberg), Німеччина),  
 2) «Robert Bosch Elektronik ID» (Robert Bosch str 1, 3900 Harau, Hainburg)/«Роберт Босх Електроніка ІД» (Роберт Босх стр 1, 3900 Харань, Угорщина),  
 3) «Bosch Automotive Products (Shanghai) Co., Ltd» (Shanghai Branch, No.262 plants (No 17 Longmen Road, Hi-tech development zone, Waigao Dierick, Shanghai City, Jiangsu province, China)/«Босх Автомобілі Продуктс (Шанхай) Ко, Лтд» (Шанхайське відділення, Китай),  
 4) «Robert Bosch Sistemas Automotrices S.A de C.V» (Zoregates Plant, Av. Robert Bosch 11158, Parque Ind. Rio Bravo, Ciudad Juarez, Chihuahua, C.P. 32237, Mexico)/«Роберт Босх Системас Автомобілітрікс С.А де С.В» (Свіргатес Плант, Ав. Роберт Босх 11158, Парк Інд. Ріо Браво, Сьїудад Хуарес, Чіхуахуа, С.П. 32237, Мексика).*

Підписано від імені виробника ТОВ «ВІ «ОМЕГА»» в Україні, 05118, м.Київ, вулиця Паросовська, 19, корпус 6, офіс 3, код ЄДРПОУ 37849004.

м. Київ, Україна 04 березня 2019 р.

Директор (повноважений)

Д.С. Теренико  
(підпис та печатка)

М.П.

БЕССЕРГІЙ В. ПРОВІДЕНІЙ  
 СВІД. АНТИФАКШ (ТОВ) «ВІ «ОМЕГА»»  
 ЗНАЧ. В РОЗКРИТТІ ІНФ. ЄД. ЄДРПОУ № 37849004  
 МН УКР ТОВ Д Р. С. С. 311-19

## Ukrainian models

## Blind spot information System\*/Cross Traffic Monitor\*

<https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory>

Veoneer confirms that part 6234734 (24 GHz Narrowband) is covered under the Certificate of Conformity (CoC attached) issued in accordance with Technical Regulation (TR) Ukraine No 355. This certificate was issued June 21st, 2018 and is valid for one calendar year, until June 20th 2019. The Declaration of Conformance is required by April 1st, 2019, our application for this Declaration of Conformance under this regulation has been submitted to the relevant certification body. Part 6234734 can be marketed under the above CoC until the Declaration of Conformance is issued prior to April 1st, 2019.

Postal address: Veoneer US, Inc.  
26545 American Drive  
Southfield, Michigan, 48034

United States of America

Manufacturer name: Veoneer US, Inc.

Operational frequency band: 24.125 GHz

Maximum Output Power:

- робоча частота, ГГц 24,125;
- пікова еквівалентна ізотропно-випромінювальна потужність (e.i.r.p.) мВт (дБм) 100 (20); 180MPON;
- клас випромінювання
- ширина смуги частот випромінювання передавача на рівні мінус 30 дБ - контрольна, не більше, МГц 250;

Importer Name: Pride Motor LLC

Postal address: 12, Sagaydachnogo Str., Kyiv, 04070, Ukraine

**veoneer**

**ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ № VEONEER.UKR.385-1/18**

**1. Раціоналізаційний (клас, тип, номер партії чи серійний номер)**  
Простір безпечного перестроювання автомобільної радіокомунікаційної (24 GHz SRK Narrowband) моделі 6234734

**2. Найменування та адреса виробника або його уповноваженого представника**  
Виробник: "Veoneer ЮЕЕ, Інц.", 26545 American Drive, Southfield, Michigan 48034, США ("Veoneer US, Inc.", 26545 American Drive, Southfield, Michigan 48034, USA)

**3. Ця декларація відповідності видає під особистою відповідальністю виробника**  
"Veoneer ЮЕЕ, Інц.", 26545 American Drive, Southfield, Michigan 48034, США ("Veoneer US, Inc.", 26545 American Drive, Southfield, Michigan 48034, USA)

**4. Об'єкт декларації (ідентифікація раціоналізаційного, яка має змогу забезпечити його простоту читання; може включати кольорове зніске зображення у разі потреби для ідентифікації значення радіообладнання)**  
Простір безпечного перестроювання автомобільної радіокомунікаційної (24 GHz SRK Narrowband) моделі 6234734

**5. Об'єкт декларації відповідає вимогам таких технічних регламентів:**  
Технічного регламенту радіообладнання;

**6. Невиснажені на відповідні стандарти з переліку національних стандартів, які були застосовані, або невиснажені на інші технічні специфікації, щодо яких декларується відповідність (із зазначенням ідентифікаційного номера, версії та дати видання):**

Проекти "Технічного регламенту радіообладнання"	Стандарти	Номери протоколів випробувань	Випробувальна лабораторія (адресат акредитації) код/номер інформації
Застосовані стандарти, що не включені до "Першого національного стандарту, відповідність якого підлягає обов'язковій акредитації" радіообладнанням є наступним чином:			
п.7	-	-	-
Застосовані стандарти, що не включені до "Першого національного стандарту, відповідність якого підлягає обов'язковій акредитації" радіообладнанням є наступним чином:			
п.8, таблиця 1	ДСТУ EN 60958-1:2015 (евр. 1.3.3, 1.2.4, 1.7), ДСТУ EN 6211-2:2014	7394 від 18.06.2018	ВЦ РІТ УНДІПР (31227)
п.8, таблиця 2	ДСТУ EN 301 490-1:2014 (евр. 8.2, 9.2, 9.3) (з урахуванням ДСТУ ЕТН EN 301 490-3:2009)	7394 від 18.06.2018	ВЦ РІТ УНДІПР (31227)
	ДСТУ КТН EN 302 288-2:2015	7394 від 18.06.2018	ВЦ РІТ УНДІПР (31227)

Місцезнаходження: 12, Сгагадачнаго Стр., Київ, 04070, Україна  
Телефон: +380 (0)44 200 1020  
www.veoneer.com

Ukrainian models

Blind spot information System\*/Cross Traffic Monitor\*

7. Призначений орган з війсьної відповідності ДЕРЖАВНОГО ПІДПРИЄМСТВА  
 "УКРАЇНСЬКИЙ НАУКОВО-ДОСЛІДНИЙ ІНСТИТУТ РАДІО І ТЕЛЕБАЧЕННЯ",  
 Реєстраційний номер: НА.ТВ.092  
 (найменування, ідентифікаційний номер згідно з реєстром призначених органів)  
 виконав ЕКСПЕРТНУ ЗЕМУ  
 (дата виконання тесту днів)  
 та видав сертифікат відповідності типу № 2288.1-СЕТ від 08.02.2019

8. У відомітих випалках зник компонентів та аксесуарів, у тому числі програмного забезпечення, та/або зникла функціональна функціоналість за призначенням і на яке поширюється дія декларації про відповідність.  
 Версія випалена вербу (HW version), яка впливає на дотримання суттєвих вимог:  
 1С01;

9. Додаткова інформація -

Надано від імені та за дорученням:  
 "Бюро USec, Inc." ("Veeva US, Inc."), США

Савітлан, Мічиган (Southfield, Michigan), 19 лютого 2019 р.

(в разі та згідно вимог)

Директор  
 (позові)

*[Signature]*  
 (підпис)

Chair: O'Neill  
 (підпис на прохання)

М.П.

*[Signature]*  
 Office of the Director  
 Michigan Department of Transportation  
 192  
 2019

## Ukrainian models

## Tuner

<https://service.panasonic.ua/>

справжнім Panasonic Corporation заявляє, що тип радіобладнання CQ-TH28E0AJ, CQ-RH26R0TX відповідає Технічному регламенту радіобладнання;  
повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою:

<https://service.panasonic.ua/>

(розділ «Технічне регулювання»)

моделі; CQ-TH28E0AJ, CQ-RH26R0TX

Postal address: Panasonic Corporation

4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama City, 224-8520, Japan

Manufacturer name: Panasonic Corporation

Importer Name: Pride Motor LLC

Postal address: 12, Sagaydachnogo Str., Kyiv,04070, Ukraine



Ukrainian models

Wireless Charger\*

Postal address: OMRON Automotive Electronics, Co. Ltd.  
 6368 Nenjozaka, Okusa, Komaki, Aichi 485-0802, Japan  
 Manufacturer name: OMRON Automotive Electronics, Co. Ltd.  
 Operational frequency band: 0.111MHz, 0.114MHz  
 Maximum Output Power: 0.111MHz : 65.5dBuV/m@3m  
 0.114MHz : 62.8dBuV/m@3m  
 Importer Name: Pride Motor LLC  
 Postal address: 12, Sagaydachnogo Str., Kyiv,04070, Ukraine

**ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ № R15.UKR.355-176/19**

1. **Радиообладнання (виріб, тип, номер партії чи серійний номер):**  
 Пристрій зарядної бездротової торгової марки OMRON моделі GFM-H001.
2. **Найменування та адреса виробника або його уповноваженого представника:**  
 Уповноважений представник - ТОВ "Радіо Тест Стандарти", Україна, код ЄДРПОУ 39205151, 03115, м. Київ, вул. Львівська, 22-а, к. 135, (Довірчість "Омрон Отомоутів Електронікс Ко., Лтд., Ліс Офіс" ("OMRON Automotive Electronics Co., Ltd., Lida Office"), Японія, міст 02.08.2018).
3. **Ця декларація відповідності видана на особисту відповідальність виробника:**  
 "OMRON Аутомоутів Електронікс Ко., Лтд.", 6368 Неньюзак, Окуса, місто Комакі, префектура Аїчі, 485-0802, Японія ("OMRON Automotive Electronics Co., Ltd.", 6368 Nenjozaka, Okusa, Komaki-city, Aichi-pref. 485-0802, Japan).
4. **Об'єкт декларації (ідентифікація радиообладнання, яка дає змогу забезпечити його простежуваність; може включати кольорове чітке зображення у разі потреби для ідентифікації захищеного радиообладнання):**  
 Пристрій зарядної бездротової моделі GFM-H001.
5. **Об'єкт декларації відповідає вимогам таких технічних регламентів:**  
 Технічного регламенту радиообладнання;
6. **Посилання на відповідні стандарти з переліку національних стандартів, що були застосовані, або посилання на інші технічні специфікації, щодо яких декларується відповідність (із зазначенням ідентифікаційного номера, версії та дати видання):**

Пункт "Технічного регламенту радиообладнання"	Стандарт	Номер протоколу випробувань	Випробувальна лабораторія (інститут акредитації/посвідчення інформації)
Застосовані стандарти, що вказані до "Переліку національних стандартів, відповідність яким надає гарантію відповідності радиообладнання суттєвим аспектам"			
п.7	-	-	-
Застосовані стандарти, що не вказані до "Переліку національних стандартів, відповідність яким надає гарантію відповідності радиообладнання суттєвим аспектам"			
п.6, абзац 1	ДСТУ EN 62368-1:2017 (тільки Додаток F), ДСТУ EN 60944:2016	8355 від 24.07.2019	ВЦ РТТ УЦДПРТ (2H227)
п.6, абзац 2	ДСТУ EN 301 489-1:2014 (зм. 8.2.9.2, 9.3) (з урахуванням ДСТУ EN 301 489-3:2009)	8355 від 24.07.2019	ВЦ РТТ УЦДПРТ (2H227)
п.7	ДСТУ EN 300 336-2:2015	8355 від 24.07.2019	ВЦ РТТ УЦДПРТ (2H227)

7. **Призначений орган з оцінки відповідності ДЕРЖАВНОГО ПІДПРИЄМСТВА "УКРАЇНСЬКИЙ НАУКОВО-ДОСЛІДНИЙ ІНСТИТУТ РАДІО І ТЕЛЕБачЕННЯ",**  
 Реєстраційний номер: UA.TR.028  
 (ідентифікаційний номер згідно з реєстром призначених органів)  
 виконавця експертних типів (опис апаратури ним дано)  
 та видав сертифікат експертних типів № 2037.14-СЕТ від 08.08.2019.



Information

## Ukrainian models

## Wireless Charger\*

8. У відповідних випадках опіе компонентів та аксесуарів, у тому числі програмного забезпечення, завдяки якому радіобудинням функціонує за призначенням і на яке поширюється діє декларативті про відповідність:

Версія ПЗ (SW/FW version), яка вживає на дотримання суттєвих мисок: CPU1:000600, CPU2:010505;

Версія виконавчої версії (HW version), яка вживає на дотримання суттєвих мисок: 1.00;

Процесор, що виконує функції формування радіочастотних сигналів: WGT1001A (LQFP-chip);

**9. Додаткова інформація:**

Адреса виробництва:  
Кірібаїші, місто Пін, префектура Натахо, 399-2565, Японія  
(Kiribayashi, Iida-city, Nagano-Prefecture 399-2565 Japan).

**Підписано від імені та за дорученням:**

"Омрон Отомоутів Електронікс Ко., Лтд., Цо Офіс" ("OMRON Automotive Electronics Co., Ltd., Iida Office"), Японія, уповноваженим представником - ГОВ "Радіо Тест Стандарт".

м. Київ "08" серпня 2019 р.  
(місяць та дата виває)

Директор  
(посада)



Д.В. Пузын  
(підпис на підприємстві)

М.П.

Israeli models

Keyless Access System

לפני השייך ידאג היבואן שעל אריזה חיצונית של המוצר יודבק מדבקה, בה יהיה רשום כי:  
 א. השימוש במכשיר הינו על בסיס "משני" ופטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.  
 כלומר - לא מוגן מהפרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות הפועלות כדין.  
 ב. רק "בפעולת בזק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, הציוד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.  
 מתן "שרות בזק" לצד ג' מחייב רשיון מיוחד ממשרד התקשורת.  
 ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

Hands-Free Telephone System

א. נקודות הגישה תחיה מיועדת אך ורק לחיבור משתמש המצוי בחצרים מתוחמים (דוגמת בית, מיתעס, מתחם שדה תעופה, קמפוס אוניברסיטאי וכי  
 ב. לצורך גישה לאינטרנט, נקודת הגישה תקושר מחוץ לחצרים אך ורק אל בעל רישיון למתן שירות גישה לאינטרנט (ISP, להלן-ספק אינטרנט). הקישור לספק אינטרנט יהיה אך ורק באמצעות קו תקשורת נתונים המסופק בידי בעל רישיון למתן שירותי תקשורת  
 ג. קישור נקודת הגישה מחוץ לחצרים לצורך תקשורת נתונים ייעשה באמצעות תשתיות של בעל רישיון מתאים.  
 ד. לצורך שרות לצד ג נדרש רישיון נוסף מאגף הנדסה ורישוי (משרד התקשורת).

Blind spot information System\*/Cross Traffic Monitor\*

א. השימוש במכשיר פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי,  
 לא מוגן מהפרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות הפועלות כדין.  
 ב. רק "בפעולת בזק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, תצויד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.  
 מתן "שרות בזק" לצד ג' מחייב רשיון מיוחד ממשרד התקשורת.  
 ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)/Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

10. תסיים מיוזמים והגרת המשרד:  
 Mid range Radar sensor for vehicles (MRR)  
 לפני השייך ידאג היבואן שעל אריזה חיצונית של המוצר יודבק מדבקה, בה יהיה רשום מס.תאישור וכן:  
 א. השימוש במכשיר הינו על בסיס "משני" ופטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.  
 כלומר - לא מוגן מהפרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות הפועלות כדין.  
 ב. רק "בפעולת בזק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, הציוד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.  
 מתן "שרות בזק" לצד ג' מחייב רשיון מיוחד ממשרד התקשורת.  
 ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

Wireless Charger\*

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת מודפס תווית במכשיר.  
 אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

**Moroccan models**

Keyless Access System	
BCM	FOB
AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 10384 ANRT 2015 Date d'agrément: 14/05/2015	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 8478 ANRT 2013 Date d'agrément: 24/09/2013
Hands-Free Telephone System	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)/Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)
AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 10932 ANRT 2015 Date d'agrément: 2015/10/8	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 9126 ANRT 2014 Date d'agrément: 2014/3/26

# Declaration of Conformity Content Outline \*

EC UKCA Declaration of Conformity



1. The undersigned, Mr. Kensuke Hiraki, representing the manufacturers, herewith declares that the machinery described below fulfills all the relevant provisions of:
- The EC-directive 2006/42/EC on machinery
  - Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008

2. Description of the machinery

a) Generic denomination: Pantograph jack  
b) Function: lifting motor vehicle

c) Model	d) Type
SNB	Honda Type-A
SJD	Honda Type-B
S2A	Honda Type-G
SAH	Honda Type-D
TP6	Honda Type-G
TSA	Honda Type-I
T2V	Honda Type-J
TNY	Honda Type-K
S9A	Honda Type-L

3. Manufacturer (1) : Honda Type-A/B/C/G/I/K/L  
RIKENKAKI CO., LTD.  
5-6-12 Chiyoda Sakado-shi,  
Saitama 350-0214  
JAPAN

4. Manufacturer (2) : Honda Type-D/J  
CHANGZHOU RIKENSEIKO MACHINERY CO., LTD.  
No. 5 Xintin Road, Zhonglou Changzhou,  
Jiangsu CHINA

5. Legal person authorised to compile the technical file (1) :  
Honda Motor Europe Ltd Belgium Branch  
p/a Honda Motor Europe Ltd –Aalst Office  
Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V)  
B-3300 Aalst (Belgium)

Legal person authorised to compile the technical file (2) :  
Honda Motor Europe Ltd  
Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

6. References to harmonized standards	7. Other standards or specifications
EN1494:2000+A1:2008	-

8. Done at: Saitama, Japan  
9. Date: 1 Sep.2021

*Kensuke Hiraki*  
Kensuke Hiraki  
President of RIKENKAKI CO.,LTD.  
President of CHANGZHOU RIKENSEIKO  
MACHINERY CO.,LTD.

Note: This declaration becomes invalid, if technical or operational modifications are introduced without the manufacturers consent.

## Deutsch (German)

- EG-Konformitätserklärung  
1. Der Unterzeichner, Herr Ryoichi Hiraki, Vertreter der Hersteller, erklärt hiermit, dass die unten beschriebenen Maschinen den relevanten Bestimmungen von folgender Richtlinie entsprechen:  
•EG-Richtlinie 2006/42/EC für Maschinen  
2. Beschreibung der Maschine  
a) Allgemeine Bezeichnung : Scherenwagenheber  
b) Funktion : Anhebung des Kraftfahrzeugs  
c) Modell d) Typ  
3. Hersteller (1)  
4. Hersteller (2)  
5. Juristische Person, die bevollmächtigt ist, die technische Datei zu erstellen  
6. Bezug auf Standardübereinstimmungen  
7. Andere Standards oder Spezifikationen  
8. Ausgestellt in 9. Datum

## Français (French)

- Déclaration de conformité CE  
1. Le soussigné, M. Ryoichi Hiraki, représentant les fabricants, déclare par la présente que les machines décrites ci-dessous satisfont toutes les dispositions pertinentes de:  
•La Directive CE 2006/42/EC concernant les machines  
2. Description des machines  
a) Dénomination générique : Cric pantographe  
b) Fonction : levage de véhicule à moteur  
c) Modèle d) Type  
3. Fabricant (1)  
4. Fabricant (2)  
5. Personne morale habilitée à compiler le fichier technique  
6. Références aux normes harmonisées  
7. Autres normes ou spécifications  
8. Fait à 9. Date

## Nederland (Dutch)

- EG-conformiteitsverklaring  
1. De ondergetekende, dhr. Ryoichi Hiraki, die de fabrikanten vertegenwoordigt, verklaart hierbij dat de hieronder beschreven machine voldoet aan alle relevante voorzieningen van:  
•De EG-richtlijn 2006/42/EG voor machines  
2. Beschrijving van de machine  
a) Generieke benaming : Pantograafkrik  
b) Functie : Motorvoertuig opheffen  
c) Model d) Type  
3. Fabrikant (1)  
4. Fabrikant (2)  
5. Rechtspersoon geautoriseerd voor de samenstelling van het technische dossier  
6. Referentie geharmoniseerde normen  
7. Andere normen of specificaties  
8. Plaats 9. Datum

## Dansk (Danish)

- EF-overensstemmelseserklæring  
1. Undertegnede, hr. Ryoichi Hiraki, som repræsenterer producenterne, erklærer hermed, at de herunder beskrevne maskiner overholder alle de relevante bestemmelser i:  
•Maskindirektivet, EU-direktiv 2006/42/EF  
2. Beskrivelse af maskinerne  
a) Generisk betegnelse : Saksedonkraft  
b) Funktion : Til at løfte motor køretøj  
c) Model d) Type  
3. Producent (1)  
4. Producent (2)  
5. Juridisk person med bemyndigelse til at udarbejde den tekniske fil  
6. Referencer til harmoniserede standarder  
7. Andre standarder eller specifikationer  
8. Sted 9. Dato

<p><b>Italiano (Italian)</b> Dichiarazione CE di Conformità</p> <p>1. Il sottoscritto, Sig. Ryoichi Hiraki, rappresentante delle fabbriche, dichiara che il veicolo sotto riportato è conforme alle disposizioni pertinenti alla:</p> <p>•Direttiva 2006/42/CE relative agli autoveicoli</p> <p>2. Descrizione della vettura</p> <p>a) Denominazione generica : Martinetto a pantografo</p> <p>b) Funzione sollevamento veicolo a motore</p> <p>c) Modello d) Tipo</p> <p>3. Fabbrica (1)</p> <p>4. Fabbrica (2)</p> <p>5. Legale autorizzato a costituire il fascicolo tecnico</p> <p>6. Riferimento norme standard</p> <p>7. Altre norme e specifiche</p> <p>8. Eseguito a 9. Data</p>	<p><b>Ελληνικά (Greek)</b> Δήλωση Συμμόρφωσης ΕΚ</p> <p>1. Ο υπογεγραμμένος, κ. Ryoichi Hiraki, ως εκπρόσωπος των κατασκευαστών, δηλώνει δια του παρόντος ότι το μηχανήμα που περιγράφεται παρακάτω πληροί όλες τις σχετικές διατάξεις της:</p> <p>•Κοινοτικής Οδηγίας 2006/42/ΕΚ σχετικά με μηχανήματα</p> <p>2. Περιγραφή του μηχανήματος</p> <p>α) Συνήθής ονομασία : Γρύλος αυτοκινήτου</p> <p>β) Λειτουργία : Ανύψωση μηχανοκίνητων οχημάτων</p> <p>γ) Μοντέλο δ) Τύπος</p> <p>3. Κατασκευαστής (1)</p> <p>4. Κατασκευαστής (2)</p> <p>5. Νομικό πρόσωπο εξουσιοδοτημένο για τη σύνταξη του τεχνικού φακέλου</p> <p>6. Αναφορές στα εναρμονισμένα πρότυπα</p> <p>7. Άλλα πρότυπα ή προδιαγραφές</p> <p>8. Συντάχθηκε στη 9. Ημερομηνία</p>	<p><b>Suomi / Suomen kieli (Finnish)</b> EY Vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutus</p> <p>1. Allekirjoittanut, Mr. Ryoichi Hiraki, valmistajan edustaja, vakuuttaa täten, että alla kuvattu laite täyttää kaikki seuraavissa säännöksissä annetut asianmukaiset velvoitteet:</p> <p>•Koneita koskeva EY-direktiivi 2006/42/EC</p> <p>2. Laitteen kuvaus</p> <p>a) Yleisnimike : Saksinosturi</p> <p>b) Käyttötarkoitus : moottoriajoneuvon nostaminen</p> <p>c) Malli d) Tyyppi</p> <p>3. Valmistaja (1)</p> <p>4. Valmistaja (2)</p> <p>5. Teknisen tiedoston kokoamiseen valtuutettu oikeushenkilö</p> <p>6. Yhdenmukaistettujen standardien viitetiedot</p> <p>7. Muut standardit tai tiedot</p> <p>8. Paikka 9. Päiväys</p>	<p><b>Čeština (Czech)</b> ES - Prohlášení o shodě</p> <p>1. Já, podepsaný Ryoichi Hiraki jako zástupce výrobce, tímto prohlašuji, že uvedený strojní zařízení splňuje příslušné požadavky Směrnice evropské komise 2006/42/EC pro strojní zařízení.</p> <p>2. Popis strojního zařízení</p> <p>a) Obecný název : nůžkový zvedák</p> <p>b) Funkce : zvedání motorových vozidel</p> <p>c) Model d) Typ</p> <p>3. Výrobce (1)</p> <p>4. Výrobce (2)</p> <p>5. Právnícká osoba oprávněná k předložení technické dokumentace</p> <p>6. Odkazy na harmonizované normy</p> <p>7. Jiné normy nebo specifikace</p> <p>8. Místo 9. Datum</p>
<p><b>Português (Portuguese)</b> Declaração de Conformidade CE</p> <p>1. O abaixo-assinado, Ryoichi Hiraki, representando os fabricantes através desta, declara que a maquinaria descrita abaixo cumpre todas as disposições referentes à:</p> <p>•Directiva 2006/42/CE, sobre máquinas.</p> <p>2. Descrição da maquinaria</p> <p>a) Denominação genérica : Macaco de tesoura</p> <p>b) Função : Elevação de veículo motor</p> <p>c) Modelo d) Tipo</p> <p>3. Fabricante (1)</p> <p>4. Fabricante (2)</p> <p>5. Pessoa jurídica autorizada a compilar o processo técnico</p> <p>6. Referências às normas harmonizadas</p> <p>7. Outras normas ou especificações</p> <p>8. Elaborado em 9. Data</p>	<p><b>Svenska (Swedish)</b> EG-försäkran om överensstämmelse</p> <p>1. Undertecknad representant för tillverkaren, Mr. Ryoichi Hiraki, försäkrar härmed att den nedan beskrivna maskinutrustningen uppfyller alla tillämpliga bestämmelser i:</p> <p>•EU:s maskindirektiv 2006/42/EG</p> <p>2. Beskrivning av maskinutrustningen</p> <p>a) Generisk benämning : Saxdomkraft</p> <p>b) Funktion : Lyft av motorfordon</p> <p>c) Modell d) Typ</p> <p>3. Tillverkare (1)</p> <p>4. Tillverkare (2)</p> <p>5. Juridisk person behörig att sammanställa den tekniska dokumentationen</p> <p>6. Hänvisningar till harmoniserade normer</p> <p>7. Övriga normer eller specifikationer</p> <p>8. Utfärdad i 9. Datum</p>	<p><b>Polski (Polish)</b> Deklaracja zgodności WE</p> <p>1. Nizej podpisany, Pan Ryoichi Hiraki, reprezentujący producentów, niniejszym oświadcza, że opisane poniżej urządzenie jest zgodne z wszystkimi stosowanymi postanowieniami:</p> <p>•Dyrektywy maszynowej Wspólnoty Europejskiej 2006/42/WE</p> <p>2. Opis urządzenia</p> <p>a) Nazwa ogólna : podnośnik nożycowy</p> <p>b) Przeznaczenie : podnoszenie pojazdów silnikowych</p> <p>c) Model d) Typ</p> <p>3. Producent (1)</p> <p>4. Producent (2)</p> <p>5. Osoba prawna upoważniona do kompilacji dokumentacji technicznej</p> <p>6. Odniesienie do zharmonizowanych norm</p> <p>7. Inne normy lub specyfikacje</p> <p>8. Sporządzony w 9. Data</p>	<p><b>Slovenčina (Slovak)</b> ES vyhlásenie o zhode</p> <p>1. Podpísaný Ryoichi Hiraki, zástupca výrobcov, týmto vyhlasuje, že nižšie opísané strojové zariadenie spĺňa všetky príslušné ustanovenia tejto smernice:</p> <p>•Smernica 2006/42/ES o strojových zariadeniach</p> <p>2. Opis strojového zariadenia</p> <p>a) Generické určenie : pantografický zdvíhač</p> <p>b) Funkcia : zdvíhanie motorových vozidiel</p> <p>c) Model d) Typ</p> <p>3. Výrobca (1)</p> <p>4. Výrobca (2)</p> <p>5. Autorizovaný zástupca schopný predložiť technickú dokumentáciu</p> <p>6. Odkazy na harmonizované normy</p> <p>7. Iné normy alebo požiadavky</p> <p>8. Miesto 9. Dátum</p>



<p><b>Magyar (Hungarian)</b> EK megfélemlési nyilatkozat</p> <p>1. Alulírott, Mr. Ryoichi Hiraki, a gyártók képviselőként ezzel kijelenti, hogy az alább megnevezett gép teljesíti: •a gépekre vonatkozó 2006/42/EK irányelv összes vonatkozó előírását.</p> <p>2. A gép leírása</p> <p>a) Általános megnevezés : olajos emelő b) Rendeltetés : gépkocsiemelő c) Modell c) Model d) Típus d) Tipus</p> <p>3. Gyártó (1) 4. Gyártó (2)</p> <p>5. A műszaki dokumentáció összeállítására meghatalmazott jogi személy</p> <p>6. Harmonizált szabványhivatkozások 7. Egyéb szabványok vagy műszaki jellemzők 8. Kiállítás helye 9. Kiállítás dátuma</p>	<p><b>Eesti (Estonian)</b> EÜ vastavusdeklaratsioon</p> <p>1. Tootjate esindaja hr. Ryoichi Hiraki kinnitab käesolevaga, et allpool kirjeldatud seadmed vastavad järgmise õigusakti kõigile asjakohastele sätetele: •EÜ masinadirektiiv 2006/42/EÜ</p> <p>2. Seadmete kirjeldus</p> <p>a) Üldnimetus : käärtrundraud b) Funktsioon : mootorsõiduki tõstmine c) Mudel c) Model d) Tüüp d) Tipus</p> <p>3. Tootja (1) 4. Tootja (2)</p> <p>5. Juriidiline isik, kes on volitatud koostama tehniilist toimetust 6. Viited harmoniseeritud standarditele 7. Muud standardid ja spetsifikatsioonid 8. Koht 9. Kuupäev</p>	<p><b>Български (Bulgarian)</b> ЕС декларация за съответствие</p> <p>1. Допълнителният г-н Рьоичи Хираки, представляващ производителя, декларирам с настоящата, че машината описана по-долу напълно изпълнява всички съответни разпоредби на: •Европейската директивата 2006/42/ЕС за машиностроенето</p> <p>2. Описание на машината a) Генерично наименование : Пантографен крик b) Функция : повдигане на моторни превозни средства c) Модел d) Тип 3. Производител (1) 4. Производител (2)</p> <p>5. Юридическо лице, упълномощено да състави техническия файл 6. Препратки към хармонизирани стандарти 7. Други стандарти или спецификации 8. Изготвено в 9. Дата</p>	<p><b>Român (Romanian)</b> Declarație de conformitate CE</p> <p>1. Subsemnatul Ryoichi Hiraki, reprezentant al producătorilor, declar prin prezenta că utilajul descris mai jos respectă toate prevederile relevante ale: •Directivei CE 2006/42/CE referitoare la mașini</p> <p>2. Descrierea utilajului a) Denumire generică : Cric tip pantograf b) Funcție : ridicarea vehiculelor cu motor c) Model d) Tip 3. Producător (1) 4. Producător (2) 5. Persoana juridică autorizată să redacteze fișierul tehnic 6. Trimiteri la standarde armonizate 7. Alte standarde sau specificații 8. Intocmită în 9. Data</p>
<p><b>Latviešu (Latvian)</b> EK paziņojums par atbilstību</p> <p>1. Zemāk parakstījis Ryoichi Hiraki, kas pārstāv ražotāju, ar šo paziņo, ka zemāk aprakstītā mašīna atbilst piemērojamām šīs direktīvas prasībām: •EK Mašīnu direktīva 2006/42/EK</p> <p>2. Mašīnas apraksts</p> <p>a) Vispārīgs apzīmējums : Vitnes domkrats b) Funkcija : Spēkratu celšana c) Modelis c) Modelis d) Tips d) Tips</p> <p>3. Ražotājs (1) 4. Ražotājs (2)</p> <p>5. Juridiskā persona, kas pilnvarota apkopot tehnisko failu 6. Atsauces uz harmonizētajiem standartiem 7. Citi standarti vai specifikācijas 8. Vieta 9. Laiks</p>	<p><b>Slovensčina (Slovenian)</b> Izjava o skladnosti ES</p> <p>1. Podpisani g. Ryoichi Hiraki, ki zastopa proizvajalca, s tem izjavlja, da naprava, ki je opisana spodaj, izpolnjuje vse relevantne določbe: •Direktive o napravah 2006/42/ES</p> <p>2. Opis naprave</p> <p>a) Generično ime : Pantografski dvigalnik b) Funkcija : dvigovanje motornega vozila c) Model c) Model d) Tip d) Tip</p> <p>3. Proizvajalec (1) 4. Proizvajalec (2)</p> <p>5. Pravna oseba, ki je upravičena do sestave tehničnega dokumenta 6. Reference glede harmoniziranih standardov 7. Drugi standardi ali specifikacije 8. Ustvarjeno v 9. Datum</p>	<p><b>Türk (Turkish)</b> AT Uygunluk Beyanı</p> <p>1. Aşağıda imzası bulunan Sn. Ryoichi Hiraki, imalatçısı temsilin, tarif edilen makinenin aşağıda adı geçen yönetmeliğin ilgili hükümlerine uygun olduğunu beyan eder: •AT makine direktifi 2006/42/EC</p> <p>2. Makinenin tanımı a) Jenerik adı : Pantograf krikö b) İşlevi : motorlu taşıtları kaldırma c) Model c) Model d) Tür d) Tür</p> <p>3. İmalatçı (1) 4. İmalatçı (2)</p> <p>5. Teknik dosyayı düzenlemeye yetkili tüzel kişi 6. Uyumlştırılmış standartları atfilar 7. Diğer standartlar ya da şartnamele 8. Düzenlendiği yer 9. Tarih</p>	<p><b>Íslenska (Icelandic)</b> EB-samræmisfyrirsýsing</p> <p>1. Undirritaður, herra Ryoichi Hiraki, fulltrúi framleiðanda, lýsir yfir að vélbúnaðinum, sem lýst er hér að neðan, uppfyllir öll viðeigandi ákvæði: •EB-tilskipunarinnar 2006/42/EC um vélbúnað</p> <p>2. Lýsing á vélbúnaðinum a) Almenn heiti : Tviarma tjakkur b) Hlutverk : að lyfta vélknúnum ökutækjum c) Gerð c) Gerð d) Tegund d) Tegund</p> <p>3. Framleiðandi (1) 4. Framleiðandi (2)</p> <p>5. Logaðili sem hefur heimild að taka saman tækniskjal 6. Tilvísanir í samhæfða staðla 7. Aðrir staðlar eða tæknilysingar 8. Staður 9. Dagsetning</p>

<p><b>Español (Spanish)</b> Declaración de Conformidad CE</p> <p>1. El abajo firmante, Sr. Ryoichi Hiraki, en representación de los fabricantes, por la presente declara que la maquinaria descrita a continuación cumple con las disposiciones aplicables de: •La directiva 2006/42/CE relativa a maquinarias</p> <p>2. Descripción de la maquinaria</p> <p>a) Denominación genérica : Gato pantografico</p> <p>b) Función : Elevación de vehículo automotor</p> <p>c) Modelo d) Tipo:</p> <p>3. Fabricante (1)</p> <p>4. Fabricante (2)</p> <p>5. Persona jurídica autorizada para recopilar el archivo técnico</p> <p>6. Referencias de normas armonizadas</p> <p>7. Otras normas o especificaciones</p> <p>8. Elaborada en 9. Fecha</p>	<p><b>Norsk (Norwegian)</b> EF-samsvarserklæring</p> <p>1. Undertegnede, Ryoichi Hiraki, som representerer produsentene, erklærer herved at maskinen beskrevet nedenfor oppfyller alle relevante bestemmelser i: •EU-maskindirektiv 2006/42/EU</p> <p>2. Beskrivelse av maskineriet</p> <p>a) Generisk betegnelse : Pantografjekk (biljekk)</p> <p>b) Funksjon : løfting av motorkjøretøyer</p> <p>c) Modell d) Type</p> <p>3. Produsent (1)</p> <p>4. Produsent (2)</p> <p>5. Juridisk person med fullmakt til å utarbeide den tekniske dokumentasjonen</p> <p>6. Henvisninger til harmoniserte standarder</p> <p>7. Andre standarder eller spesifikasjoner</p> <p>8. Utarbeidet i 9. Dato</p>
<p><b>Lietuvių kalba (Lithuanian)</b> EB atitikties deklaracija</p> <p>1. Toliau pasirašęs gamintojų atstovas Ryoichi Hiraki deklaruoja, kad toliau aprašytą įrangą atitinka visas atitinkamas nuostatas, išdėstytas: •EB Direktyvoje 2006/42/EB dėl mašinų</p> <p>2. Įrangos aprašymas</p> <p>a) Bendras pavadinimas : pantografo kėliklis</p> <p>b) Funkcija : motorinės transporto priemonės kėlimas</p> <p>c) Modelis d) Tipas</p> <p>3. Gamintojas (1)</p> <p>4. Gamintojas (2)</p> <p>5. Juridinis asmuo, įgaliotas sudaryti techninę bylą</p> <p>6. Nuoroda į lygiavertius standartus</p> <p>7. Kiti standartai arba specifikacijos</p> <p>8. Atlikta 9. Data</p>	<p><b>Hrvatski (Croatian)</b> Izjava o sukladnosti EK</p> <p>1. Ja, dolje potpisani Ryoichi Hiraki, predstavnik proizvođača, ovime izjavljujem da su strojevi opisani u nastavku sukladni za bitnim odredbama: •Direktive 2006/42/EZ Europskog parlamenta i vijeća o strojevima</p> <p>2. Opis stroja</p> <p>a) Generički naziv : pantografska dizalica</p> <p>b) Funkcija : podizanje motornog vozila</p> <p>c) Model d) Tip</p> <p>3. Proizvođač (1)</p> <p>4. Proizvođač (2)</p> <p>5. Pravna osoba ovlaštena za sastavljanje tehničke dokumentacije</p> <p>6. Upućivanje na usklađene norme</p> <p>7. Ostale norme ili specifikacije</p> <p>8. Mjesto 9. Datum</p>



Compressor

EN  
UKCA declaration of conformity in accordance with The General Product Safety Regulations 2005  
We, SUMITOMO RUBBER INDUSTRIES, LTD., 6-9, 3-chome, Wakino-hama-cho, Kobe 651-0071, Japan, hereby declare that the machine described below conforms with the general health and safety requirements laid down in The General Product Safety Regulations 2005 by virtue of its design and construction and in the configuration brought to market by us. Any alterations made to the machine without our approval shall render this declaration invalid.  
Designation: We declare that the product also conforms with other applicable directives for a product of this type: Supply of Machinery Regulations 2008, Electromagnetic Compatibility Regulations 2016.  
The following harmonized standards are applied in particular: BS EN ISO 12100-2011, BS EN 62841-1: 2015, BS EN 55014-1: 2012, BS EN 55014-2: 2012.  
Kobe, June 17 2021, Yukinori Nagata (General Manager IMS Business Team)

British models

## Numbers

12-Volt Battery .....	670
Charging System Indicator .....	104, 712
Maintenance (Checking the 12-Volt Battery) .....	670
Maintenance (Replacing) .....	673
4WD .....	530

## A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) .....	601
Accessories and Modifications .....	686
Accessory Power Sockets .....	272
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System .....	515
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) .....	553
Adding	
Coolant .....	646
Engine Oil .....	645
Washer .....	653
Additives, Engine Oil .....	642
Adjustable Speed Limiter .....	516
Adjusting	
Armrest .....	257
Front Seats .....	247
Head Restraints .....	254
Mirrors .....	243
Steering Wheel .....	242
Temperature .....	150
Adjusting the Sound .....	301, 343

Agile Handling Assist .....	529
Aha™ .....	363
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) .....	279
Changing the Mode .....	281
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows .....	282
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	679
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode .....	281
Sensor .....	285
Synchronization Mode .....	284
Using Automatic Climate Control .....	279
Air Pressure .....	731
Airbags .....	61
After a Collision .....	63
Airbag Care .....	74
Event Data Recorder .....	1
Front Airbags (SRS) .....	63
Indicator .....	72, 107
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator .....	73, 107
Sensors .....	61
Side Airbag .....	68
Side Curtain Airbag .....	70
All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System .....	530
AM/FM Radio .....	303, 350
Android Auto .....	379
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	601
Indicator .....	106
Apple CarPlay .....	375
Armrest .....	257
Audio Remote Controls .....	292

Audio System .....	288, 295, 321
Adjusting the Sound .....	301, 343
Audio/Information Screen .....	297, 322
Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout ..	326
Changing the Screen Interface .....	340
Closing Apps .....	342
Customizing the Meter .....	326
Display Setup .....	302, 344
Error Messages .....	383
General Information .....	385
Home Screen .....	332
iPod .....	312, 356
Menu Customize .....	341
MP3/WMA/AAC .....	315, 364
Reactivating .....	291
Recommended Devices .....	385
Remote Controls .....	292
Security Code .....	291
Selecting an Audio Source .....	345
Status Area .....	339
Theft Protection .....	291
USB Flash Drives .....	315, 364, 385
USB Port(s) .....	289
Wallpaper Setup .....	299, 330
Audio System Basic Operation .....	295, 321
Audio/Information Screen .....	297, 322
Auto High-Beam .....	229
Indicator .....	110
Automatic Brake Hold .....	599
Indicator .....	101, 599

Automatic Folding Door Mirror	
Function.....	246
Automatic Intermittent Wipers .....	233
Automatic Lighting .....	224
Average Fuel Economy.....	149
Average Fuel Economy Records.....	151
Average Speed.....	149
AWD (All-Wheel Drive) .....	530

## B

Battery.....	12
12-Volt Battery Charging System	
Indicator .....	104, 712
High Voltage .....	12, 537
If the Battery Is Dead .....	706
Belts (Seat) .....	49
Beverage Holders.....	265
Blind spot information System .....	534
Indicator.....	122
Bluetooth® Audio .....	318, 367
Booster Seats (For Children).....	94
Brake System.....	595
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	601
Automatic Brake Hold.....	599
Brake Assist System .....	602
Fluid .....	652
Foot Brake .....	598
Indicator.....	100, 102, 714, 715
Parking Brake .....	595
Brightness Control (Head-up Display) .....	239

Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)....	238
Bulb Replacement .....	655
Active Cornering Lights .....	656
Back-Up Lights .....	657
Brake Lights .....	656
Daytime Running Lights.....	656
Front Fog Lights .....	655
Front Turn Signal Lights.....	656
Glove Box Light.....	659
Headlights.....	655
High-Mount Brake Light .....	658
Luggage Area Lights.....	659
Position Lights .....	656
Rear Fog Light .....	658
Rear Licence Plate Light .....	658
Rear Turn Signal Lights .....	656
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator	
Lights.....	656
Taillights.....	656, 657
Vanity Mirror Lights.....	659
Bulb Specifications .....	730

## C

Car Wash Mode .....	508
Carbon Monoxide Gas .....	96
Carrying Luggage.....	487, 489
Certification Label.....	733
Changing Bulbs .....	655
Child Restraint System .....	75
Booster Seats .....	94

Child Restraint System for Infants.....	78
Child Restraint System for Small Children..	80
Installing a Child Restraint System with a	
Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt .....	90
Larger Children .....	93
Rear-facing Child Restraint System .....	78
Selecting a Child Restraint System .....	81
Using Tether .....	92
Child Safety .....	75
Childproof Door Locks .....	194
Childproof Door Locks.....	194
Cleaning the Exterior.....	683
Cleaning the Interior .....	681
Climate Control System .....	279
Changing the Mode.....	279
Defrosting the Windscreen and	
Windows .....	282
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	679
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode.....	281
Sensors .....	285
Synchronization Mode .....	284
Using Automatic Climate Control.....	279
Clock .....	180
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking	
System).....	542
Coat Hook .....	267
Collision Mitigation Braking System	
(CMBS) .....	542
Continuously Variable Transmission .....	503
Controls .....	179

Coolant (Engine)	
Overheating .....	709
Cooling System .....	646
Adding to the Reserve Tank .....	646
Creeping .....	503
Cross Traffic Monitor .....	611
Customized Features .....	161, 390, 398

## D

DAB .....	309, 353
Daytime Running Lights .....	228
Dead Battery .....	706
Deceleration Paddle Selector .....	511
Indicator .....	105
Declaration of Conformity Content	
Outline .....	766
Defaulting All the Settings .....	425
Deflation Warning System .....	531
Indicator .....	109, 717
Initialisation .....	531
Defrosting the Windscreen and	
Windows .....	282
Devices that Emit Radio Waves .....	734
Dimming	
Headlights .....	223
Rearview Mirror .....	243
Dipstick (Engine Oil) .....	644
Directional Signals (Turn Signals) .....	222
Display Setup .....	302, 344
Display/Information Button .....	147, 322

Door Mirrors .....	244
Doors .....	182
Door Open Message .....	48, 123
Keys .....	182
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the	
Inside .....	192
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the	
Outside .....	185
Lockout Prevention System .....	191
Driver Information Interface .....	146
Driver's Seat Lumbar Support .....	249
Driving .....	485
Braking .....	595
Shifting Gear .....	504
Transmission .....	503

Driving Guidelines for Your Utility	
Vehicle .....	501
Driving Position Memory System .....	240
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	679

## E

eCall Indicator .....	479
Eco Assist System .....	18
Eco Drive Display .....	19, 152
ECON Mode .....	514
Elapsed Time .....	149
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	
Indicator .....	108, 716
Emergency .....	726

Emergency Call (eCall) .....	479
Automatic Emergency Call .....	479
Manual Emergency Call .....	481
Emergency Stop Signal .....	603

## Engine

If the Battery Is Dead .....	706
Number .....	733
Oil .....	642
Switch Buzzer .....	221

## Engine Coolant

Overheating .....	709
Engine Oil .....	642
Adding .....	645
Checking .....	644
Low Oil Level Symbol .....	718
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	104, 712
Recommended Engine Oil .....	642

e-pretensioners .....	54
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System .....	108
EV Button .....	15
EV Indicator .....	103
EV Mode Indicator .....	103
Exhaust Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) .....	96
Exterior Care (Cleaning) .....	683
Exterior Mirrors .....	244

## F

Features .....	287
Filter	
Dust and Pollen .....	679

Flat Tyre.....	691
<b>Fluids</b>	
Brake.....	652
Cooling System.....	646
Windscreen Washer.....	653
FM/AM Radio.....	303, 350
Folding Down the Rear Seats.....	252
Foot Brake.....	598
Four-Wheel Drive System.....	530
Front Airbags (SRS).....	63
Front Fog Light Indicator.....	111
Front Seat Heaters.....	277
Front Seats.....	247
Adjusting.....	247
Front Sensor Camera.....	592
Fuel.....	618
Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions.....	620
Gauge.....	144
Instant Fuel Economy.....	150
Low Fuel Indicator.....	106
Range.....	149
Recommendation.....	618
Refueling.....	618
Fuel Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions.....	620
Fuel Fill Cap.....	36, 619
Fuel Fill Door.....	36, 619
Fuses.....	719
Inspecting and Changing.....	725
Locations.....	719, 721, 722, 723

## G

Gauges.....	144
Glass (care).....	682, 684
Glove Box.....	261

## H

<b>Hands-Free Telephone (HFT)</b> .....	426, 447
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History.....	460
Displaying Messages.....	475
HFT Buttons.....	426, 447
HFT Menus.....	428, 450
HFT Status Display.....	427, 449
Limitations for Manual Operation.....	427, 449
Making a Call.....	442, 468
Options During a Call.....	446, 472
Phone Setup.....	432, 455
Phonebook Phonetic Modification.....	464
Receiving a Call.....	445, 471
Receiving a Text Message/E-mail.....	473
Ring Tone.....	437, 459
Selecting a Text/E-mail Message Account.....	474
Speed Dial.....	440, 461
To Set Up Text Message/E-mail Options... ..	458
<b>Hazard Warning Button</b> .....	4, 5
<b>Head Restraints</b> .....	254
<b>Headlight Washers</b> .....	235
<b>Headlights</b> .....	223
Aiming.....	655

Auto High-Beam.....	229
Automatic Operation.....	224
Dimming.....	223
Operating.....	223
<b>Head-Up Display</b> .....	172

### Head-up Display

Brightness Control.....	239
-------------------------	-----

### Heated Door Mirror Button.....

.....	236
-------	-----

### Heated Steering Wheel.....

.....	276
-------	-----

### Heated Windscreen Button.....

.....	237
-------	-----

### Heaters (Front Seat).....

.....	277
-------	-----

### Heaters (Rear Seat).....

.....	278
-------	-----

### HFT (Hands-Free Telephone).....

.....	426, 447
-------	----------

### High Beam Indicator.....

.....	111
-------	-----

### High Voltage Battery.....

.....	537
-------	-----

### Hill Start Assist System.....

.....	500
-------	-----

### Honda Sensing.....

.....	37, 539
-------	---------

### Honda TRK.....

.....	691
-------	-----

### Hybrid Vehicle

e:HEV.....	11
------------	----

## I

### Identification Numbers.....

Engine, Motor and Transmission.....	733
Vehicle Identification.....	733

### If the Battery Is Dead.....

.....	706
-------	-----

### Illumination Control.....

Knob.....	238
-----------	-----

### Immobilizer System.....

Indicator.....	206
----------------	-----

.....	112
-------	-----

<b>Indicators</b> .....	100
12-Volt Battery Charging System ....	104, 712
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Intelligent Speed Limiter Set Speed.....	113
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) .....	117, 553
Adjustable Speed Limiter.....	113
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	106
Auto High-Beam .....	110
Automatic Brake Hold.....	101, 599
Automatic Brake Hold System .....	101
Blind spot information System.....	122
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) .....	119
Deceleration Paddle Selector .....	105
ECON Mode .....	113
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System .....	108
EV.....	103
EV Mode.....	103
Front Fog Light .....	111
High Beam .....	111
Immobilizer System .....	112
Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	113
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).....	118, 572
Lights On .....	111
Low Fuel .....	106
Low Oil Pressure .....	104, 712
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System .....	109, 717
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	104, 713

Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) .....	102, 715
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red).....	100, 714, 715
Passenger Front Airbag On/Off .....	107
Power System.....	103
Ready .....	103
Rear Fog Light .....	111
Road Departure Mitigation .....	114
Seat Belt Reminder .....	51, 106
Security System Alarm .....	112
Shift Position .....	105
SPORT Mode .....	105, 510
Supplemental Restraint System .....	72, 107
System Message .....	110
Transmission System .....	105, 718
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning .....	111
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF.....	108, 528
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System.....	108
<b>Instrument Panel</b> .....	99
Brightness Control .....	238
<b>Intelligent Speed Limiter</b> .....	520
<b>Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator</b> .....	113
<b>Interior Lights</b> .....	258
<b>Interior Rearview Mirror</b> .....	243
<b>iPod</b> .....	312, 356

## J

<b>Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench)</b> .....	701, 702
--------------------------------------	----------

## K

<b>Key Number Tag</b> .....	183
<b>Keyless Lockout Prevention</b> .....	191
<b>Keys</b> .....	182
Lockout Prevention.....	191
Number Tag .....	183
Rear Door Won't Open.....	194
Remote Transmitter .....	188
Types and Functions .....	182
<b>Kickdown</b> .....	503

## L

<b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> .....	570
<b>Lights</b> .....	223, 655
Active Cornering Lights .....	227
Automatic.....	224
Bulb Replacement .....	655
Daytime Running Lights.....	228
Front Fog Lights .....	226
High Beam Indicator.....	111
Interior .....	258
Light Switches .....	223
Lights On Indicator .....	111
Luggage Area Lights.....	260
Rear Fog Light .....	226
Turn Signals .....	222
<b>Load Limits</b> .....	489
<b>Locking/Unlocking</b> .....	182
Childproof Door Locks.....	194
From Inside .....	192

- From Outside ..... 185  
 Keys ..... 182  
 Using a Key ..... 190  
**Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside** ..... 185  
**Lockout Prevention System** ..... 191  
**Low Battery Charge** ..... 712  
**Low Fuel Indicator** ..... 106  
**Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength** ..... 184  
**Low Oil Pressure Indicator** ..... 104, 712  
**Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator** ..... 109, 717  
**Lower Anchorages** ..... 86  
**Lubricant Specifications Chart** ..... 731  
**Luggage (Load Limit)** ..... 489  
**Luggage Area Cover** ..... 270  
**Luggage Hook** ..... 268  
**Lumbar Support** ..... 249
- M**
- Maintenance** ..... 621  
 12-Volt Battery ..... 670  
 Brake Fluid ..... 652  
 Cleaning ..... 681  
 Climate Control ..... 678  
 Cooling System ..... 646  
 Oil ..... 644  
 Precautions ..... 622  
 Radiator ..... 647  
 Remote Transmitter ..... 676
- Replacing Light Bulbs ..... 655  
 Safety ..... 623  
 Service Reminder System ..... 626  
 Transmission Fluid ..... 651  
 Tyres ..... 665  
 Under the Bonnet ..... 639  
**Malfunction Indicator Lamp** ..... 104, 713  
**Map Lights** ..... 259  
**Maximum Permissible Weight** ..... 489  
**Meters, Gauges** ..... 144  
**Mirrors** ..... 243  
 Adjusting ..... 243  
 Door ..... 244  
 Interior Rearview ..... 243  
**Modifications (and Accessories)** ..... 686  
**Motor** ..... 733  
 Number ..... 733  
**MP3** ..... 315, 364  
**MP4** ..... 364  
**Multi-View Rear Camera** ..... 616
- N**
- Numbers (Identification)** ..... 733
- O**
- Odometer** ..... 148  
**Off-road Guidelines** ..... 496  
**Oil (Engine)** ..... 642  
 Adding ..... 645  
 Checking ..... 644  
 Low Oil Level Symbol ..... 718  
 Low Oil Pressure Indicator ..... 104, 712  
 Recommended Engine Oil ..... 642  
 Viscosity ..... 642  
**On Board Apps** ..... 369  
**Open Source Licences** ..... 389  
**Opening/Closing** ..... 640  
 Bonnet ..... 640  
 Power Windows ..... 212  
 Tailgate ..... 195  
**Outside Temperature Display** ..... 150  
**Overheating** ..... 709
- P**
- Panoramic Roof** ..... 215  
**Parking Brake** ..... 595  
**Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)** ..... 102, 715  
**Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)** ..... 100, 714, 715  
**Parking Sensor System** ..... 606  
**Passenger Airbag Off Indicator** ..... 73, 107  
**Passing Indicators** ..... 223  
**Petrol** ..... 36, 618  
 Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions ..... 620  
 Gauge ..... 144  
 Information ..... 618  
 Instant Fuel Economy ..... 150  
 Low Fuel Indicator ..... 106

Refueling .....	618
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> Audio .....	318, 367
POWER Button .....	219
Power System	
Won't Start.....	703
Power System Indicator .....	103
Power Windows .....	212
POWER/CHARGE Gauge .....	145, 176
Precautions While Driving .....	501
Rain .....	502
Pregnant Women.....	58
Puncture (Tyre).....	691

## R

Radiator.....	647
Radio (FM/AM).....	303, 350
Radio Data System (RDS) .....	304, 352
RDS (Radio Data System).....	304, 352
Ready Indicator .....	103
Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System.....	530
Rear Fog Light Indicator.....	111
Rear Seat Heaters.....	278
Rear Seats .....	251
Rear Seats (Folding Down) .....	252
Rearview Mirror .....	243
Refueling .....	618
Fuel Gauge .....	144
Low Fuel Indicator.....	106
Petrol.....	618, 730

Regulations .....	734
Remote Transmitter .....	188
Replacement	
12-Volt Battery .....	673
Bulbs .....	655
Front Wiper Blade Rubber.....	660
Fuses.....	719, 721, 722, 723
Rear Wiper Blade Rubber.....	663
Resetting a Trip Meter .....	149
Reverse Tilt Door Mirror .....	245
Road Departure Mitigation .....	578
Road Departure Mitigation System	
On and Off.....	581

## S

Safe Driving .....	43
Safety Check .....	48
Safety Labels.....	97
Safety Message .....	0
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor .....	57
Seat Belts.....	49
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor.....	56
Checking.....	59
Detachable Anchor.....	57
e-pretensioners.....	54
Fastening.....	55
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt.....	90
Pregnant Women .....	58
Reminder.....	51

Warning Indicator .....	51, 106
Seat Heaters.....	277, 278
Seats .....	247
Adjusting .....	247
Driver's Seat Lumbar Support .....	249
Front Seat Heaters.....	277
Front Seats .....	247
Rear Seats .....	251
Seat Heaters.....	277, 278
Security System .....	206
Immobilizer System Indicator .....	112
Security System Alarm Indicator.....	112
Super Locking .....	211
Tilt Sensor .....	210
Ultrasonic Sensors .....	209
Selecting a Child Restraint System .....	81
Selector Knob (Audio).....	295
Service Reminder System .....	626
Setting the Clock .....	180
Shift Button .....	33
Shift Position Indicator .....	105, 176
Shifting (Transmission).....	504
Shoulder Anchor .....	56
Side Airbags.....	68
Side Curtain Airbag .....	70
Siri Eyes Free .....	374
Smartphone Connection.....	370
Song By Voice <sup>™</sup> (SBV).....	359
SOS Button.....	481
SOS Cancel Button.....	481
Spark Plugs .....	730



Specifications .....	730
Specified Fuel .....	618
Speed Limiter, Adjustable .....	516
Speed Limiter, Intelligent .....	520
Speedometer .....	144
SPORT Mode .....	510
SPORT Mode Indicator .....	105, 510
SRS Airbags (Airbags) .....	63
Starting the Engine	
If the Battery Is Dead .....	706
Steering Wheel .....	242
Adjusting .....	242
Stopping .....	604
Sunglasses Holder .....	269
Super Locking .....	211
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) .....	63
Switches (Around the Steering	
Wheel) .....	4, 5, 6, 219
System Message Indicator .....	110

## T

Tailgate .....	195
Unable to Open .....	727
Temperature	
Outside Temperature Display .....	150
Temperature Sensor .....	150
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) .....	691
Tie-down Anchors .....	268
Tilt Sensor .....	210
Time (Setting) .....	180

Tools .....	690
Towing a Trailer .....	490
Equipment and Accessories .....	492
Load Limits .....	490
Towing Your Vehicle	
Emergency .....	726
Traffic Sign Recognition System .....	584
Small Icons On and Off .....	591
Transmission .....	503, 504
Creeping .....	503
Fluid .....	651
Kickdown .....	503
Number .....	733
Operating the Shift Button .....	504
Operation .....	33
Shift Position Indicator .....	105
Trip Knob .....	148
Trip Meter .....	149
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) .....	691
Troubleshooting .....	689
Blown Fuse .....	719, 721, 722, 723
Brake Pedal Vibrates .....	40
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door .....	41
Emergency Towing .....	726
If the Battery Is Dead .....	706
Noise When Braking .....	42
Overheating .....	709
Power System Won't Start .....	703
Puncture/Flat Tyre .....	691
Rear Door Won't Open .....	40, 194
Warning Indicators .....	100, 712

Turn Signals .....	222
Indicators (Instrument Panel) .....	111
Turning on the Power .....	498
Does Not Activate .....	703
Tyres .....	665
Air Pressure .....	731
Checking and Maintaining .....	665
Inspection .....	665
Puncture (Flat Tyre) .....	691
Rotation .....	668
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) .....	691
Tyre Chains .....	669
Wear Indicators .....	666
Winter .....	669

## U

Ultrasonic Sensors .....	209
Unlocking the Doors .....	185
Unlocking the Front Doors from the	
Inside .....	25
USB Flash Drives .....	315, 364, 385
USB Port(s) .....	289

## V

Vanity Mirrors .....	9
Vehicle Identification Numbers .....	733
Vehicle Speed .....	176
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) .....	527
OFF Button .....	528

OFF Indicator .....	108
System Indicator .....	108
<b>Viscosity (Oil)</b> .....	642, 731
<b>Voice Control Operation</b> .....	346
Audio Commands .....	348
Climate Control Commands .....	349
General Commands .....	349
Music Search Commands .....	349
On Screen Commands .....	349
Phone Commands .....	348
Useful Commands .....	348
Voice Portal Screen .....	347
Voice Recognition .....	346
<b>VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)</b> .....	527

## W

Wallpaper .....	299, 330
Warning and Information Message .....	123
Warning Indicator On/Blinking .....	712
Warning Labels .....	97
Watts .....	730
WAV .....	315
Wear Indicators (Tyre) .....	666
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) ...	701, 702
Wi-Fi Connection .....	372
<b>Window Washers</b> .....	232
Adding/Refilling Fluid .....	653
Switch .....	232
<b>Windows (Opening and Closing)</b> .....	212
<b>Windscreen</b> .....	232
Cleaning .....	682, 684
Defrosting/Defogging .....	236, 282
Washer Fluid .....	653
Wiper Blades .....	660
Wipers and Washers .....	232
<b>Winter Tyres</b> .....	669
Tyre Chains .....	669
<b>Wipers and Washers</b> .....	232
Automatic Intermittent Wipers .....	233
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades .....	660
Front .....	232
Headlight Washers .....	235
Rear .....	234
<b>Wireless Charger</b> .....	273
<b>WMA</b> .....	315, 364
<b>Worn Tyres</b> .....	665

